CŒUR ET COURAGE FONT L'OUVRAGE.

BALCH GENEALOGICA

BY

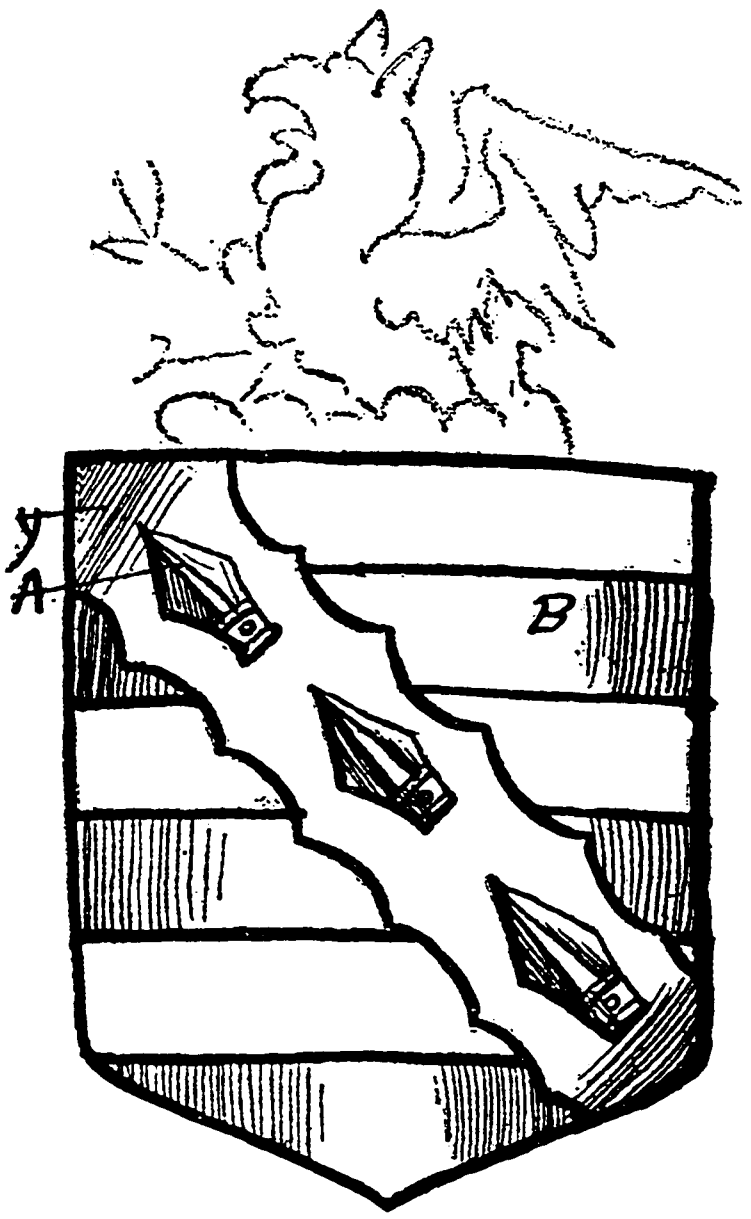
THOMAS WILLING BALCH

MEMBER OF THE PHILADELPHIA BAR
THE AMERICAN PHILOSOPHICAL SOCIETY
THE COUNCIL OF THE HISTORICAL SOCIETY OF PENNSYLVANIA

PHILADELPHIA
ALLEN, LANE AND SCOTT
1211-13 CLOVER STREET
1907

Copyright, 1907, by
THOMAS WILLING BALCH.

PRESS OF
ALLEN, LANE AND SCOTT,
PHILADELPHIA, PA.



ARMS OF BALCHE, VISITATION OF SOMERSETSHIRE, 1623.
HARLEY MANUSCRIPT 1559, FOLIO 347b (248b).
BRITISH MUSEUM.

BALCH GENEALOGICA

INTRODUCTION.

In 1845, my father, Mr. Thomas Balch, soon after his admission to the New York Bar, began to collect the information contained in this book. He never ceased in this aim until his death in 1877. After graduating at Harvard, I took up the work as he had left it and slowly added to the material in hand. In searching for facts, I often was misled into exploring a false trail. Gradually, the evidence sifted down to rock-bottom. I have taken the utmost care to verify all statements, and yet there are certainly errors in this work, for in a genealogy covering a period of more than four centuries, it is impossible to avoid them. In 1886 and 1897 I visited in Somersetshire, Bridgwater, and in 1897 Ilminster and Horton, collecting on both trips valuable information. The documents in the archives in England I have had copied by competent experts, but I could not compare them with the originals. They are here reprinted *in extenso*.

It is my hope sometime in the future to publish an *addenda* to this book, incorporating new information and corrections. And I begin at once by adding that one of the Robert Balches of Bridg-

water bought about 1682 the house of Admiral Blake, the hero of that town, and that the Balch family lived in it about sixty years. In 1777 another Robert Balch was Mayor of Bridgwater. These items are gleaned from the Rev. Dr. Powell's recent book, *The Ancient Borough of Bridgwater*. I have forgotten to state that there is a handsome steel engraving of the Rev. Dr. Stephen Bloomer Balch by John Sartain, as well as a water color painting of him, probably also by Sartain, and a miniature on ivory belonging to the Presbyterian Historical Society, Philadelphia; and that my father was elected in 1875 an honorary member of Whig Hall at Princeton. As members of the family fought on different sides during our Civil War over the slavery question—two held commissions from the Union and two from the Confederacy—so during the Civil War in England between the King and the Parliament, some supported the former and some, according to family traditions, the latter in the struggle over the form of government. In this book there is much relating to Presbyterianism, because many of the personages spoken of in the book were Calvinists. I am proud of them, especially of the old gentleman, my *bisaïeul*, who planted and then for fifty-three years preached the Gospel in the District of Columbia; but I do not wish it thought that I think the sum of righteousness is to be found in any *one* church. Others

of my ancestors were Episcopalians, Quakers, Huguenots, Catholics, Lutherans, and at least one, Major-General Thomas Harrison, an Independent. All these churches, and many others besides, it seems to me, have a *raison d' être* in the world.

The contents of this book can have an interest for only a small number of people, and that is my excuse for including in it all sorts and manner of information, and reprinting some articles that otherwise would be practically lost to that circle of readers: and I recommend this work to some future worker on the same subject, who, profiting by the discovery of new documents, especially in England, may explain points that at present are obscure. It would be of much interest to find exactly where the two emigrants were born. In all probability they were remote kinsmen. It has not been my aim to write a complete genealogy, but to publish all the information at present available of the family in England, and of the descendants of John Balch "of Maryland." I have referred also in a few pages to John Balch "of Massachusetts" and some of his descendants. As valuable and interesting family papers have twice suffered from destruction by fire in the past—first in 1831, when the house of my *bisaïeul* in Georgetown was burnt, and second in 1856, when some family letters that my father had left with the binder for mounting and binding were likewise destroyed—I have sought to place all

information in my hands, that has come either through my father, or that I have myself collected, beyond any such recurrence in the future. Finally, believing it is good to have some reverence for the experiences of the past as we prepare for the future, I have acted on the thought expressed by Charles Lamb in one of his sonnets:

> "'T is man's worst deed
> To let the 'things that have been' run to waste,
> And in the unmeaning present sink the past:
> In whose dim glass even now I faintly read
> Old buried forms, and faces long ago."

In my work in our own country, I have received assistance from many kind friends, especially Charles Penrose Keith, Esq., the Rev. Louis F. Benson, D. D., John W. Jordan, Esq., and Miss May Atherton Leach, all of Philadelphia.

T. W. B.

PHILADELPHIA, January 17th, 1907.

The Balch Family of County Somerset, England.

BALCH, the name of a family of County Somerset,[1] England, is either of Norman-French or English and not of British origin. At various times and with slightly different variations, this name is found in such far-distant countries as Baluchistan, Tibet, Afghanistan, Roumania, Russia, Servia, Germany, Flanders and Somersetshire. In Tibet there is the Balch Pass of the Balch Range of mountains.[2] In northern Afghanistan the town now standing where the ancient city of Bactra stood, is called by the Germans on their maps Balch, and by the English on their atlases Balkh.[3] In 1860 the Roumanian Minister of Foreign Affairs was Grégoire Balche.

---

[1] Somerset, the land of the *Sumorsaetan*, is one of the West-Saxon shires which grew by gradual conquest from the Welsh, as opposed to the Mercian shires which were mapped out around a town and called by its name. There has never been any central town or acknowledged capital in Somerset, though Somerton bears a name cognate with the land. Assizes, elections and like functions were held at different places at various times. The land had no distinct name before the English conquest.

See the *Encyclopedia Britannica:* New York, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1887, Volume XXII., page 259.

[2] *Geographical Journal:* London, 1900, Volume XV., page 168.

Glacières or Freezing Caverns, by Edwin Swift Balch, Philadelphia, 1900, page 263.

[3] Adolph Stieler's *Hand Atlas:* Gotha, Justus Perthes: "Iran und Turan;" Map No. 59, *Ausgabe* 1895.

The Encyclopedia Britannica: London and Edinburgh, 1903.

In 1870 Alexandre de Balch published at Odessa and Leipzig an essay entitled, *M. Renan et Arthur Schopenhauer; Essai de critique.* Among the officers on the Russian cruiser *Variag*, when she was sunk by a Japanese squadron of cruisers and destroyers off Chemulpo harbor in February, 1904, was Lieutenant Balck.[4] In Servia one of the friends of King Milan, it is said, was a Baron Balch, who, at his death, it is related, left to his sovereign a fortune of two millions of florins.[5]

In the *Nouveau Larousse Illustré, Dictionnaire Universel Encyclopédique*, at page 688, there is this statement:

"Balchides (en serbe Baochitchi), dynastie serbe qui régna en Albanie et au Monténégro au XIV^e^ et au XV^e^ siècle. Elle eut pour fondateur, d'après les écrivains slaves, un Serbe nommé Balcha, mort en 1368, tandis que Du Cange prétend que les Balchides étaient apparentés à la maison des Baux (V. ce nom)—Un, une Balchide."[6]

The name of Balck or Balcke is found in the German Provinces of Silesia, Pomerania and Westphalia:[7] Balck is known also in Mecklenburg-

---

[4] *The Public Ledger*, Philadelphia, April 2nd, 1904.

[5] *The Evening Bulletin*, Philadelphia, 1904.

[6] In *Old Provence*, by Theodore Andrea Cook, the author in speaking of the castle and Counts of Les Baux, says in a footnote: "The Latin name in the deed is 'Balcius.'" New York, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1905, Volume II., page 127.

[7] *Armorial Général Précédé d'un Dictionnaire des Termes du Blason* par J. B. Rietslap, Gouda, 1884, 2nd edition.

Supply and Expenditure of Ammunition by Captain Balck, at-

Schwerin.[8] A family of the name of van der Balcht is recorded in Brussels and Flanders.[9] The name of Balck is well known in Flanders and in Flemish means "une poutre," a "beam." Monsieur Albert Soenens, juge au Tribunal de Première Instance de Bruxelles, writes from Brussels, May 10th, 1904: "Le nom de Bal*k* ou Balc*k* (avec k) est assez répandu dans tout le pays flamand: en langue flamande cela veut dire 'poutre.'" Similarly the French word *balcon* designates a platform advancing out from a wall, and probably has the same origin as *Balck*.[10] Among the holders of land mentioned in *Domsday Book*, it is *said* occurs the name of Balchi.[11] In Norway the names Balchen and Balchens exist. In Scotland there is at the southern end of Loch Lomond the small town of Balloch and in the eastern mountains of Inverness Cairn Balloch.[12] In Alsace and Lorraine the names Belchen and Bolchen occur. In German speaking

---

tached to the Infantry Regiment, Duke William of Brunswick, and Instructor of the War School at Engers. Translated from the German by First Lieutenant Gurovits, Eleventh United States Infantry. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1898.

[8] *Almanach de Gotha, 1905.* Gotha, Justus Perthes, page 583.

[9] *Armorial Général Précédé d'un Dictionnaire des Termes du Blason* par J. B. Rietslap, Gouda, 1884, 2nd edition.

[10] In *L' Aiglon*, Rostand uses the word *baluchon* in the sense of a support. At the end of the second act, he makes Flambeau say to the Duc de Reistadt: "J'en fais un baluchon tenez, danz le mouchoir!"

[11] *British Family Names*, by Henry Barber, London, 1893, page 40.

[12] *Handy Royal Atlas of Modern Geography* by Alexander Keith Johnston, Edinburgh and London, 1881.

Lorraine, to the east of the French speaking city of Metz and close to the French speaking *pays Messin*, there is the small town of Bolchen. On the Franco-German frontier, a little north of Belfort, one of the mountains, known to the French as le Ballon d'Alsace is called by the Germans Elsasser or Wälsche Belchen.[13] In the heart of southern Alsace, near Gebweiler, there is another summit called the Gebweiler Belchen, and not far away further north another named the Kleiner Belchen.[14] Belchen in German means a "balloon." In southern Alsace there is the commune of Balschwiller, near the Sulzbach.[15]

In northeastern Somersetshire, the term Batch is applied to a steep little hill and is common in the district.[16]

The name of Balch has come to light at two different times in County Surrey, and occasionally in

[13] Handy Royal Atlas of Modern Geography, by Alexander Keith Johnston, Edinburgh and London, 1881.

Northern France, by Karl Baedeker, Leipzig, 1894, page 332.

Some Facts About Alsace and Lorraine, by Thomas Willing Balch, Philadelphia, 1895.

Frankreich in 4 Blatten von C. Vogel: Gotha, Justus Perthes.

Das Deutschtum in Elass-Lothringen, von Dr. Julius Petersen in the series *Der Kampf um Das Deutschtum;* Munich, 1902. Map at end of the monograph, *Elsass-Lothringen.*

[14] *Northern France*, by Karl Baedeker, Leipzig, 1894, page 333.

[15] *Armorial des Communes d'Alsace y compris les Pierres-Bornes avec des notices sur chaque armure* par Louis Schoenhaupt, Strasbourg, 1900, page 165.

[16] There is a hamlet called Batch in the parish of Lympsham in the Hundred of Wrington, just south of the Ax River. *The History and Antiquities of the County of Somerset* by the Reverend John Collinson, Bath, 1791, page 202.

County Dorset, close to the southern end of County Somerset.[17]

In the County of Surrey the name is met with in the reign of Henry the Third (1216–1272), in this wise:

"Newdigate, of Arbury, Warwickshire.

* * * * * * *

"'To which John, Richard the son of Roger le Balch, gave XX acres of land, in Newdigate, called Lamputts fields." * * * This John was son of Richard son of John de Newdigate, who lived in the reign of King John, whose wife was Agnes.'"[18]

And also thus:—

"Newdigate of Arbury, Warwickshire.

"This ancient family * * * doubtless derived its name from Newdigate, a town in Surrey * * * The first of any note was John de Newdigate, who lived in the reign of King John, whose wife was Agnes, by whom he had Richard, William and Robert.

"To which Richard * * * he took to wife Alice, dau. of Walter de Horten, & had issue by her John, William & Peter.

"To which John, Richard, the son of Roger le Balch, gave twenty acres of land in Newdigate called Lamputts fields."[19]

At the end of the fifteenth century an isolated

---

[17] The will of Edward Balch is found in the York Registry, January 25th, 1640: York, fol. 78, city.

[18] *The English Baronetage*, by Thomas Wotton, London, 1741, III., part 2, page 618.

[19] *The Baronetage of England*, by E. Kimber and R. Johnson, London, 1771, Volume 2, pp. 413 and 14.

group of people bearing the name of Balch is recorded in Surrey. For in 1495 the will of Richard Balch of Farnham, Surrey, was admitted to probate in the Prerogative Court of Canterbury.

In the fortieth year of the reign of Edward the Third, 1366–7, three acres of land in the district of Mortesthorne and Bremelham in Dorset were held by "Thomas Balch and Alice his wife" for life.[20] Later John Balche, of Dorset, matriculated at Oxford University, June 22nd, 1604, at the age of fifteen; "famulus Mri. Hawley principalis."[21]

Admiral Sir John Balchen, Knight, was born February 2d, 1669, but where is not known. He was captain, July 25th, 1697, of the *Virginia Prize*. There is a memorial to him in Westminster Abbey, in the north transept, a fine monument in relief by Scheemakers, representing a ship of war foundering in a storm. The inscription says, "To the memory of Sir John Balchen, Knt., Admiral of the White Squadron of his Majesty's fleet in 1744. Being sent out Commander-in-Chief of the combined fleets of England and Holland, to cruise on the enemy, was, on his return home in his Majesty's ship the *Victory*, lost in the Channel by a violent storm; from which said circumstances of his death

[20] *Dorset Records, being indexes, calendars and abstracts of records relating to the County of Dorset. Abstract of Dorset Feet of Fines, 19–40 Edward III., A. D., 1345–1366;* edited by E. A. Fray and G. S. Fray, Birmingham, pages 111–112.

[21] *Alumni Oxonienses; The Members of the University of Oxford, 1500–1714;* by Joseph Foster; Oxford, 1891.

we may learn that neither the greatest skill, judgment, or experience, joined to the most firm, unshaken resolution, can resist the fury of the winds and waves; and we are taught by the passages of his life, which were filled with great and gallant actions, but ever accompanied with adverse gales of fortune, that the brave, the worthy and the good man, meets not always his reward in this world. Fifty-eight years of faithful and painful services he had passed, when, being just retired to the government of Greenwich Hospital to wear out the remainder of his days, he was once more, and for the last time, called out by his King and country, whose interest he ever preferred to his own, and his unwearied zeal for their escape ending only in his death; which weighty misfortune to his afflicted family became heightened by many aggravating circumstances attending it; yet amidst their grief, had they the mournful consolation to find his gracious and Royal Master mixing his concern with the general lamentations of the public, for the calamitous fate of so zealous, so valiant, and so able a commander; and, as a lasting memorial of the sincere love and esteem borne by his widow to a most affectionate and worthy husband, this honorary monument was erected by her. He was born Feb. 2nd, 1669, married Susanna, daughter of Colonel Aprice, of Washingly, in the county of Huntingdon. Died Oct. 7, 1744, leaving one son and one daughter,

the former of whom, George Balchen, survived him but a short time; for being sent to the West Indies in 1745, Commander of his Majesty's ship the *Pembroke*, he died at Barbadoes, in December the same year, aged twenty-eight, having walked in the steps, and imitated the virtues and bravery of his good but unfortunate father."

As stated, the origin of the name Balch or Balche found in County Somerset, in England, is either of English or Norman-French descent. The first apparently authentic mention of the name in the County of Somerset occurs in the following references, and the first time it appears under the simple form of *Balch*.

In 1225, Edward Balch of the Hundred of Chyu [Chew], who had fled, returned and gave pledges;[22] and before 1259 Richard Balisch held three acres of meadow land near Cury [Curry].[23]

As early as the beginning of the thirteenth century the name was well scattered in the County of Somerset. In a Somerset tax list of the first year

---

[22] *Assize Roll, 9 Hen. III., No. 755, membrane 12b.* Pleas of assize taken before H. de Paterhill and others at Ivelcestre in co. Somerset, 9 Hen. 3.

Inquisition taken in co. Somerset of the chattels and fugitives and persons hanged, by the coroner and 4 knights and others thereto chosen.

Memoran' De Edwardo Balch de Hundr̄ de chyu [Chew] qui fugit ꝯ I dum̄ renen̄ ꝯ innen pleg.

[23] *Cartularies of the Benedictine Abbeys of Muchelney and Athelney*, co. *Somerset*. Somerset Record Society, Volume XIV., 1899, page 100.

of the reign of Edward the Third, 1327, four tax-payers of the name of Balch appear in places well to the north, the center and the south of the county: Willielmo Balch of Thrubbewell in the Hundred of Kaynesham [Keynsham],[24] who paid iiij s., Roberto Balch, a freeman of the manor of Wryngton [Wrington], who paid iii s. v d., Johanne Balch of Stapeltone in the Hundred of Mertok [Martock], who paid v s. iii d., and Willielmo Balch of Purye [Perry] in the Hundred of North Perton [Petherton], who paid xii d.[25]

On March 2nd, 1492, Robert Balch succeeded John Holt, who had died, as incumbent of Hazelbury, County Somerset. The patron of this church was Walter Knig[h]they, praeb. This incumbency, Robert Balch seems to have held until 1503.[26]

---

[24] Collinson says Thrubwell or Trobbewell is partly in the parish of Butcombe and partly in that of Nemnet, both in the Hundred of Hareclive and Bedminster. *The History and Antiquities of the County of Somerset*, by the Reverend John Collinson, Bath, 1791, Volume II., page 314.

[25] *Subsidy Roll* $\frac{169}{5}$ *Somerset*, 1 Edw. III. Collection of a 20th granted to King Edward the Third after the Conquest made by John de Clyvedon and John de Erle in the 1st year of the reign of the said King [A. D. 1327]. Translated from the Latin. This roll contains fifty-nine membrances written on both sides in two columns.

The History and Antiquities of the County of Somerset, by the Reverend John Collinson, Bath, 1791, *passim*.

The Rev. Dr. Powell, Vicar of Bridgwater, writes June 10th, 1906: "After thinking the matter over, it seems to me that William Balch, who paid a certain tax in 1327, and who came from Purye in the Hundred of North Perton, must have lived at Perry-Furneaux, in Wembdon. The same place, I fancy, was called Perry-Fitchet, though they may have been separate manors."

[26] *The Hugo Manuscripts*, 30, 279–280, in the British Museum.

While the origin and meaning of the name Balch as used in Somersetshire are problematical, except that it is not of British origin, but is either of Norman-French or English extraction, it is a recorded fact that William Balche of Higham, County Somerset, who died in 1532–33, was living before Columbus crossed the Atlantic to America, as his son John Balche of Horton, County Somerset, was born in 1497 in the reign of King Richard the Second.

At North Curry, which lies not far to the east of Taunton, there resided as early as 1562 Thomas Baulch or Balch, a yeoman of influence in that locality.

In July 1621, Hatton Balche was incumbent at Ling in Somersetshire, and apparently held the place for many years.[27]

On January 24th, 1642, Charles Balche de Stoke Gumber, was one of the patrons of the church at Brumpton Ralph, Somersetshire.[28]

At Wells another Thomas Balch lived in the latter part of the sixteenth century and was buried there January 27th, 1695, in the church of St. Cuthbert's. The inscription on his tombstone reads as follows: "Here lieth the body of Thomas Balch who died the 27 of Januar 1695 and also his daughter Martha died June 11th 1694."

---

[27] *Hugo Manuscripts*, 30, 279–280, in the British Museum.

[28] *Hugo Manuscripts*, 30, 279–280, in the British Museum. Brumpton Ralph lies to the northwest of Taunton.

In the sixteenth century Balches were settled in Bridgwater. On January 20th, 1570, Eleanor Balch was buried in Bridgwater; on April 19th, 1574, John Balch was married there to Avice Popham; on January 30th, 1579, Isable Balch was married there to Thomas Smyth; and on April 17th, 1585, Avice Balch was buried in Bridgwater. In the seventeenth century, two brothers, Robert and George Balch, the former of whom was born in 1631, were living in the borough of Bridgwater. This branch of the family gave two mayors to Bridgwater and three members to Parliament who sat for Bridgwater. There are also records showing that Balches lived at Ilminster during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Thus administration was granted the last of February, 1656–57, to Mary Balch, relict of Samuel Balch of Ilminster, County of Somerset, deceased. And Thomas Balch married Phœbe Savage at Ilminster on June 30th, 1731.[29]

These various groups of Balches scattered throughout Somerset were probably related and all members of one and the same family originating in the shire. After 1623, in which year their right to bear arms was confirmed by the visitation of the heralds from the College of Arms, members of the family are found in many more places in Somerset than before that date. It was descendants of

[29] *Book of Marriages*, etc., belonging to the Ilminster Royal Peculiar.

the group established in Bridgwater that, from 1764 to 1824, owned Saint Audries, in the northwestern part of the shire, close to Bridgwater Bay.

In two cases argued in the eighteenth century in the High Court of Chancery the plaintiff bore the name of Balch. In 1718 the case of Balch *versus* Westall[30] came up before Lord Chancellor Parker; and in 1728 that of Balsh *versus* Hyham[31] was argued before Lord Chancellor King.

The Balch arms—Barry of six, or and az. on a bend engrailed gules three spear heads ar.—were confirmed to George Balche of Horton in 1623 by the heralds from the College of Arms in London during their visitation of Somerset. These arms are recorded in Harley manuscripts 1141 and 1445, both in the British Museum. And in Harley manuscript 1559, also in the British Museum, folio 347[b] (248[b]) the arms are drawn in ink as described above and in addition, for crest, a demi griffin rampant is drawn in pencil. They are recorded also in the College of Arms upon the authority of the above manuscripts. These arms and crest have been used by the American branch of the family from colonial times, generally with the motto—*Cœur et courage font l'ouvrage.*

The family in Somerset would seem to divide into four groups that can be designated:

---

[30] 1 Peere Williams *Reports*, 445.
[31] 2 Peere Williams *Reports*, 453.

1. The Higham-Horton-Ilminster Group.
2. The North Curry Group.
3. The Bridgwater Group.
4. The Wells-Bruton Group.

1. THE HIGHAM–HORTON–ILMINSTER GROUP.

From present known information, the Horton group begins with (1.) William Balche of Higham (High Ham), who was living during the Wars of the Roses, as he was born before 1477. He held lands, some two hundred acres or so, in East Coker, and other places. He died March 20th, 1533.[32] He left a son.

2. John Balche.

---

[32] *Escheators Inquisitions post mortem.* Series II. File 921. n. 9. Som s

Inquisicio indentat capt apud Wellys in Com pdeo viii die Mensis Novembr Anno Regni Regis Henrici octavi vicesimo quinto coram Thoma Horner Escaetore dci dni Regis in dco Com virtute officii sui post-mortem Willi Balche p sacrm tc Qui dicunt sup-sacrm sun qd p dcus Wills Balche diu ante obetus sui fuit seisit in dnico suo ut de feod de ducentis acr pastur Centu acr tr quadragint acr p^{u}ti t trigenta acr Bosci cum suis ptin in Est Coker in Com p dco que onia t singula pastur t ceta p missa tenent^{r} de Willo Courtenay Milite ut de Manio suo de Est Coker p dict p que s'uic Jur p dci ignorant. Et sic p dcus Wills Balche seisit obiit inde seisit post cuius mortem p dict pastur tr p^{u}t t Bosc cum ptin descend Johi Balche ut filio t hered p dci Willi et valent p Annu in omibz ultra repris septem libr. Et ultius Jur p dci dicunt qd p dcus Wills Balche fuit seisit in dnico suo ut de feod de uno Mesuagio xx acr tr p^{u}t t pastur cum suis ptin in Witedecomb in dco Com Som s t sic seisit obiit seisit post cuius mortem dict Mesuagia t cela p missa cum ptin descend p fato Johi Balche ut filio t hered p dci Willi Balche qd quidem Mesuag cum ptin tenet^{r} de Robto Pike ut de Manio suo de Pykke seishe p que s uic Jur p dci penitus ignorant Et valet p Annu vlt^{u} repris xs. Et ultius Jur p dci dicunt qd p dcus Wills Balche fuit seisitus in dnico

2. John Balche, designated as of Horton in the Parish of Ilminster, which is at the southern end of Somerset, was born in 1496 or 1497 in the reign of Henry the Seventh.[33] His will was dated April first, 1536, and proved September second, 1552. It reads as follows:—[34]

T Johis Balche "In the name of god Amen. The first daie of Aprill in the yere of our Lorde god a Thousande fyve hundreth and xxxvith I John Balche of Horton in the Countie of Somersett hole of mynde and of perfytt remembrance make my testament and last will in maner and forme following (that ys to saye) ffirst I bequeathe my soule unto Almightie god, and my bodye to be buried within the parishe churche of Ilemynster at suche place as

---

suo ut de feod de Medietate unius Mesuag xx^{ti} acr pastur cum ptin in Aldon (?) t de xx^{ti} acr tr cum ptin in ffydyngton iuxta Stokegussey in dco Com t sic seisit obiit seisit post cuius mortem Medietat dci Mesuag cum p misses descend p dco Johi Balche ut filio t hered p dci Willi Balche Et tenet^{r} de Willo Carrant Milite ut de Manio suo de ffydyngton p que s'uic Jur p dci penitus ignorant Et valet p Annu in onibz ult^{u} repris xiij^{s} iiii^{d}. Et ultius Jur p dci dicunt qd p dcus Wills Balche die quo obiit nulla alid tr negz ten huit seu tenuit in Com p dco in dnico nec in suic Et p dcus Wills Balche obiit xx^{mo} die Mercii Anno regni Regis Henrici viij, xxiiij^{te} Et eciam dicunt qd dcus Johes Balche est eius filius t px heres p dci Willi Balche t est etatis xxxvj Annor$_{b}$ t amplius. In cuius tc.

To the will of John Halley, February 1st, 1527, who was to be buried in the church yard of Saint Andrews at Aller, a William Balche is a witness. 28 Porch. *Somerset Medieval Wills*, 1501–1530. Somerset Record Society, Volume XIX, 1903, page 268.

[33]In the will of Sir George Speke, Knt., September 6th, 1528, there is this item: "I will my servant John Balche be one of my nombr of my yoman servants, and have his part of my wearyng apparell. To my said servant John Balche as moch catall as cometh to the sume of 66 s. 8 d." 39 Porch. Somerset Record Society, Volume XIX., 1903, page 277. John Balsche was a witness, *ibid*, page 278. He was to be buried in the church of Est Doulishe; he held lands in Mertock, Somerset, and East and West Doulish.

[34] *Prerogative Court of Canterbury.* 24 Powell.

ILMINSTER CHURCH,

SOMERSETSHIRE.

shall please myn Executrix./ Item I bequeathe unto saynt Andrewys churche in Welle xiid./ Item I bequeathe and give unto the parishe churche of Ilemynster vis̃. viii d. And to the crosse store of the same Churche iii s. iiii d̃./ Item I give unto Sr. Poole for tithes forgotten iii s. iiii d/ Item I give and bequeathe unto my doughter Anne besides her purchase with her owne goodes xiii li. vi s. viii d. to be delyvered at her mariage/ Item I give and bequeathe unto my doughters Alice and Agnes beside their purchase and with their owne goodes, and to every of theym Tenne pounde to be delyvered at their mariage/ Item I give and bequeathe unto my sonne John beside his owne purchase and with his owne goodes Tenne poundes to be delyvered at his mariage./ Item I give and bequeathe unto my sonnes Thomas and Anthonye to euery of theym Tenne pounde./ And if it happen any of myn Elder Children to dye afore the daye of their mariage, That then I will that his parte so dyinge shall remayne unto Agnes Thomas and Anthonye/ And to the longest Lyver of theym three/ And yf it happen any of the three yonger Chyldren to dye afore their mariage that then I will his or theyr parte so dying shall remayne to myne Executrix/ and she to dispose the same as she thynkith best/ Item I give and bequeathe to my sonne George Balche myn heyre my Baye gelding in Donyett Parke/ The residue of my goodes not bequeathed my debte paide and all my will fulfillyd/ I frely give yt unto Isabell Balche my wief whome I make my whole Executrix./ And she to dispose of the same for the welth of my soule as she thynketh best And for the performance of this my will in eury poynt/ I make my ouerseers John Walys and Willyam Balche and they to do the same when nede shall requyre."

This will was thus endorsed at the time it was proved:—

"Probatum fuit sup[a] scriptu testm coram dno Cant Archiepo apud London Secundo die mens Septembris Anno dni Millimo quingentesimo quiquagesimo secundo/ Juramento Chroferi Robynson procur Executrice in hmoi testameto noiat Ac Approbatu et insinuatu. Et comissa fuit Admistraco oim bonor tc dci defuncti prefat ex[i]/ De bene et fidetir Admistrand eadem Ac de pleno Inuentario tc exhibend/ Ad sancta dei Eu[a]ngelia in debita forma Jurat."

John Balche learnt the profession of arms in the service of Sir Nicholas Wadham of Muryfield, County Somerset.[35]

In May, 1550, he was named as the first of the original seventeen trustees of the famous Ilmin-

---

[35] EXTRACT FROM THE WILL OF SIR NICHOLAS WADHAM, KNIGHT.

"25 November 1539. I, Nicholas Wadham of Muryfelde in Co. Somerset, Knight. * * * * Also I will that Roger Fauntleroy, William Beoyn, John Balche, & Anthony Bolleyn my servants have every of them £3. 6. 8 above their wages yf they contynue in my service during my lyfe. Also I will that every other gentilman being in my service the tyme of my deceas have every of them above their wages 40 s."

Proved 31 January, 1542. Prerogative Court of Canterbury, 15 Spert.

Sir Nicholas Wadham was a great grandson of Sir John Wadham, Justice of the Common Pleas in the reign of Richard the Second. In the *temps* of Henry the Eight, Sir Nicholas was an important personage. For in 1509 he was Captain of the Isle of Wight, and Vice-Admiral to Lord Surrey. In 1524 he obtained a license to make a park at Merifield of two hundred acres of pasture and forty acres of woodlands. In 1530 he was appointed a commissioner to enquire into Cardinal Woolsey's estates. He died in 1542, having married four times. His second wife was Margaret Seymour, aunt of Jane Seymour, one of the Queens of Henry the Eight. A grandson of Sir Nicholas Wadham and Margaret Seymour, Nicholas Wadham, born in 1532, and his wife, founded Wadham College, Oxford.

ILMINSTER FREE GRAMMAR SCHOOL,

SOMERSETSHIRE.

ster Free Grammar School. Consequently, he was a member of the Protestant Church of England.

"The school above alluded to," Collinson in his history of Somerset, says,[36] "was founded in the year 1550 by Humphry Walrond and Henry Greenfield of Lea in this parish, and by them endowed with certain tenement and three centelages in Ilminster, called the *Chantry-houses* (being lands formerly appropriated to the support of sundry charities in the parish church here) and also tenements called Mody's, in the tithing of Winterhay, and another called Rippe's tenement in the tithing of Horton, both within this parish. These lands and tenements being taken to the crown, King Edward VIth, in consideration of divers sums of money, did, by his letters patent bearing date April 2, 1550, grant and assign to Giles Kelway of Strowde in the county of Dorset, esq.; and William Leonard of Taunton, merchant. On the 16th of May, 1550, the said Giles Kelway and William Leonard conveyed their right in all these lands to Humphry Walrond and Henry Greenfield, of Lea aforesaid, for the sum of 126£. They, 'tendering the virtuous education of youth in literature and godly learning, whereby the same youth so brought up might the better know their duty as well to God as to the King's Majesty, and for divers other honest and godly considerations,' assigned over all the said premises in the same month of May, and in the same year, to John Balch, John Sydenham, and others (in all the number of seventeen) for the purpose of choosing a proper schoolmaster to instruct and bring up, as well in all godly learning and knowledge, as in other manner

[36] *The History and Antiquities of the County of Somerset*, by the Reverend John Collinson, F. A. S. 1791, Bath.

of learning, all such children and youth as should be brought to him, appointing the said schoolmaster a house, called the Crosshouse, for his habitation during his master-ship; and also for the choosing a bailiff of the premises, whose business was to be the collecting, the issues and profits of the lands, and the disposing of them to the payment of the schoolmaster's stipend, and other necessary expenses; the residue to be applied to the discharge of king's silvers, and to the mending and repairing the highways, bridges, water-courses, and conduits of water, wherewith the inhabitants of the said parish of Ilminster were then charged, or might be chargeable, as far as the money should extend."

The fact that John Balche was named the first among the initial trustees of the Ilminster Free Grammar School shows that he was a man of importance and influence in the locality. His wife's given name was Isabel, but her maiden name is unknown. They were married probably in the early twenties of the sixteenth century, and had in all nine children:—

3. George Balche
3. Anne Balche
3. Alice Balche
3. John Balche

} born about 1523–30.

3. Agnes Balche, born before 1536.
3. Thomas Balche, born before 1536.
3. Anthony Balche, born before 1536.
3. Joan Balche, born after 1536.
3. Hugh Balche, born after 1536.

While it is not possible to give from present knowledge the exact order of birth of the above nine children of John Balche of Horton and his wife, Isabel, yet from his will we know the order in which his sons and his daughters were born respectively, and also that Agnes, Thomas and Anthony were all younger than George, Anne, Alice and John, and that Joan and Hugh were younger than the others as they are not even mentioned in the will drawn in 1536.

3. George Balche, of Ilminster and Horton, gentleman, the eldest son and heir to John Balche of Horton, was born probably between 1523 to 1530. He was a trustee of the Ilminster Free Grammar School in the years 1563 and 1568.[37] For the muster in 1569 in County Somerset he furnished a corslet. His will, which here follows, tells us a good deal about him.

T. Georgii Balche

"In the name of god amen the xxi^{ti} day of June and in the yere of o^{r} Lorde god 1569 I George Balche[38] gentleman of the pishe of Ilmynster hole of mynde and pfecte of memory doth make my testament in manner & forme folowing/ ffirst I gyve and bequeth my soule to almightie god and my body to be buried in the south yle of Brodway churche. Item I gyve and bequeth to the same churche ii s/ Item I gyve to the churche of Ilmyster ii s. Item I gyve to Margery my wife ii fetherbedde in the plo^{r} w^{t} all their apparell and

[37] Archives of the school, Oct. 1st, 1563, March 18th, 1568.
[38] *Prerogative Court of Canterbury.* 19 Sheffield.

also two paire of shetes, Item iii potte iii pannes (the best pott and panne exceptid) half a dozen of platters and like many of pottingers and so of sawcers (six of the best platters and so pottingers and so of sawcers excepted) ii borde clothes and ii towelle (the best borde cloth and towell exceptid.) Item I gyve and bequeth to Katheryn my daughter thre score pounde of laufull money of england to be levied and paied of my lande and goode in Horton and this money to be received w^{t} in ii yeres after my death and put in to the hande of William Pynnye and John Sand'wike and to be paied unto her at her age of xxvi^{ti} yeres or elle at the day of her mariage if it be before Provided alwaies if she happen to die before her mariage or the aige of xxvi yeres that then I will that xxx^{ti} of the said money be paied to George my sonne and tenne pounde to John my sonne and the rest to Nichas my sonne Also I gyve to George my sonne tenne pounde and a dune gelding at Luppitt Item to John Balche my brother my best heifer at Luppitt. Item to my brother Hugh Balche one golde ring set w^{t} a pearle/ Item I gyve and bequeth to my servant way my seconde best crosse bowe and one heafer being w^{t} Edmund Lane at Luppitt and my blacke brache. Item I gyve and bequeth to Nichas Luffe of Asshell the best yerling in fardinge and a crosse bowe./ The residue of my goode my debte paied and legace pfourmed I gyve and bequeath to Nichas my sonne whome I ordayne appointe and make my executo^{r}/ And overseers to see the same Robert Holcombe John Balche my brother William Pynnye and John Sand'wike and my sonne Nichas to abide the order of my overseers untill my legacies be pformed witnes to theis John Poole curator of Brodway Willm Pynnye Willm Pyrie & Thom^{a}s Mighell."

At the time this will was proved it was endorsed as follows:—

"Probatum fuit testamentum suprascriptum coram magro Waltero Haddon Legum doctore Curie progatiue Cantuarien comissario apud London sexto die Augusti anno dni Millimo quingen^{mo} Sexagesimo nono Juramento Georgii Heyball procur Nichi Balche Executor in testamento hmoi noiat/ Cui cōmiss̃ fuit admistraco omiu et singlor bonor tc De bene tc Ad sancta dei Evangelia Jurat."

He married twice. His first wife was Jane Ashford, daughter of Nicholas Ashford, of Ashford, whom he married certainly as early as 1551, probably as early as 1550 and perhaps even before that date. They had five children:—

4. Nicholas Balche.
4. George Balche.
4. John Balche.
4. Maximilian Balche.
4. Katherine Balche.

4. Nicholas Balche, of Horton, was born in the early part of the year 1552. He was recognized as his father's heir, and died August 24th, 1607, seized of Horton and other lands in Martock, Cannington and Fydington.[39]

---

[39] *Chancery Inquisition post mortem.* Series II., Volume 409, N. 127.

Libata fuit Cur xxxj die Octobris Anno quarto infrascr p manus Georgii Pitt.

Inquisico Indentata Capta apud Bridgwater in Com p d decimo septimo die Septembris Anno Regni Dni nri Jacobi Dei grac Anglie **Som s**

On September 30th, 1583, he was called upon to furnish one light horseman to the military forces

ffranc t Hibnie Regis fidei defensor tc Quarto t Scotie quadragesimo Coram ffrancisco Bynforde gen Escaetor dci dni Regis Virtute officii sui post mortem Nichi Balch gen defuncti p sacrm Robti Gooding gen Willmi ffrye gen Jo: Somsi gen Robt Baker Henr Nalor Johis Coxe Robt Perry Willmi Brome Jo. Valle Jo. Otewaye Robt Oldeman Jo: Woodborne t Thome Crane.

Qui dicunt sup sacrm suu qd p^{r}dcus Nichus Balche diu ante Capcoem huius Inquisicons fuit seit in dnico suo ut de feodo de t in uno Capitat messuagio duobz aliis messuagiis duobz Curtelagus t duobz Cotagiis t sexaginta decem acr terr prati t pastur cu ptin in Horton infra pochiam de Ilemyster in Com p d. Et de t in Centu t Viginti acris terr prati t pastur bosci t Bruer cu ptin in East Coker in p dict Com. Et sic inde seit Existens idm Nichus p scriptu suu Indentat gerent dat Vicesimo secundo die Aprilis Anno Regni Dne Elizabeth nup Rne Anglie Vicesimo Quarto factm inter ipm Nichm Balche p nomen Nichi Balche de Horton infr pochiam de Ilemyster in Com Soms gen ex una pte t Johem Maye ar t Dorotheam Maye vid p noid Johis Maye de Charter house Hydon in dco Com Soms ar t Dorothee Maye vid matris p d Johis ex alter pte Juratoribz p d tempore Capcois huius Inquisicois in Evidenciis ostens p naturat r integr amore t affeccoe Que ipe idm Nichus tunc huit t ger Seat Balche tunc uxor eius ac tal exit qual ip tunc pcreavit t tunc postea pcrearet sup Corpus dce Sare t p Juncture ipius Sare Convenit t Concessit p pd [*sic*] Script p se t hered suis ad t Cu p d Johe Maye t Dorothea Maye t hered eor$_{b}$ t alter eor$_{b}$ qd ipe idem Nichus Balch t hered sui ac omes t quelibt psona t psone t hered eor$_{b}$ qui tunc seit exist aut qui post dat eiusd Script seit Existerunt ac qui tunc legittime habuer aut in futuro here poterint ullu legittimu stat Titlm aut Interesse de t in p d Capitat mess t domo mancional terr Tentis pratis pascuis pastur t al p d p^{r}miss cu ptin aut de t in ulla pte aut pcella eiusd a tempore Confeccois eiusd Scripti stabunt t seit Exister de t in p Capitat messuag t domo mancon terr tentis pratis pascuis pastur t Ceter p^{r}miss cu ptin ac de qualibt pte t pcell eiusd ad vs t intencoes in ead Indentur specificat t ad null aliu us sine intercoem, videlt ad vsum p d Nichi Balche t Sare uxor eius t hered de Corpor eor$_{b}$ legittime pcreat t pcreand Et p defectu tlis exitus ad usu Rectu hered p d Nichi Balche imppetm racoe Cuius ac virtute Actus pliament Dni Henr nup Re Anglie Octavi tent apud Westm quarto die ffebruarii Anno Regni sui Vicessimo septimo de vsibz in possessione transferend p d Nichus Balche t Sara fuer seit de Tentis p d cu ptin in dnico s ut de feod talliat viz sibi t hered de Corpor eor$_{b}$ lillime pcrcat Remaner inde p defectu tlis exitus Rectis hered ipius Nichi Balche imppetuu Et sic inde seit Existent p d Nich Balche obiit de tali

raised in Somerset against the Spanish Armada; and on March 14th, 1586, he was again summoned

stat seit p^{t} Cuius mort p d Sara se tenuit intus in Tent p d cu ptin t fuit t adhuc est de eisd tent cu ptin seit in dnico suo ut de feod talliat videlt sibi t hered p d Nichi t Sare de Corpor eor$_{b}$ littime pcreat Remaner inde in forma p d Ac Jur p d sup sacrm suu p d ulterius dicunt qd pd Nichus Balche die quo obiit fuit scisitus in dnico suo ut de feod de t in uno messuagio t trigint acr tre prati t pastur cu ptin in Martocke in Com p d Ac de t in Octo acris tre t pastur cu ptin voc Dowers iac et exist infra poch de Cannington in eod Com Ac de t in Octo aliis acr terr t pastur cu ptin voc Barrolles Downes iac et existen infra poch de ffydington in Com p d Ac ulter Jur p d dicunt sup sacrm suu p^{r}d qd omia p d messuag terr prat t pastur cu ptin in Horton infr poch de Ilemyster p^{r}d Tenentur t tempore mortis p d Nichi tenebantur de Com Herford ut de manio s de Ilemyster in Com p d p fidelit seclm Cur t Redd triu solid p ann p omibz serviciis t valent p ann in omibz exit s ultr repris Quadragint solid Et qd p d Tent cu ptin in East Coker p d Tenentur t tempore mortis p d Nichi Balche Tenebantur de Edro Phillipps milt servient Dni Re ad lege ut de manio s de Eastcoker in Com p^{r}d p fidelit t Redd septem solid t sex denar p ann t Valent p ann in Omibz Exit s ultr repris xls Et qd p d Tenta cu ptin in Martocke p^{r}d Tenentur t tempore mortis p d Nichi Balch tenebantur de Johe Every genoso ut de manio s de Witcombe in Com p^{r}d p fidelit t Redd unius denar p ann p omibz servicus t valent p ann in omibz exit s ultr repris Octo solid Et qd p d Tenta cu ptin in Cannington p d Tenentur t tempore mortis p d Nichi Tenebantur de Edro Rogers Ar ut de manio s de Canington in Com p^{r}d p fidelit t Redd xijd p ann p omibz serviciis Et valent p ann in omibz exit ultr repris Octo solid Et qd p d Tenta cu ptin in ffydington p d Tenentur t tempore mortis p d Nichi Balche Tenebantur de Dniis manu de fydington ut de manio s de ffydington in Com p d p fidelit t Reddit duor$_{b}$ solid p ann p omibz serviciis Et valent p ann in omibz Exit s ultr repris ijs. viijd. Et Insup Jur p d dicunt sup sacrm suu p d qd p d Nicus Balch die quo obiit nulla al sine plur tras seu Tenta huit sine tenuit de dco dno Rege nec de aliqua al sine de aliquibz aliis psonis in dnico servic negz in us in Com p d Et qd ipe idm Nichus obiit Vicessimo-sexto die Augusti ultimo pterit ante Capcoem huius Inquisicois Et qd Geo: Balch gen est eius fillius t her ppinquior t fuit etatis tempore mortis p d Nichi Balch Viginti t Triu annor$_{b}$ t amplius. In cuius Rei Testimoniu tm Escaetor q^{n}m Jur p d p sentibz sigilla sua alternatim apposuer die Anno t loco supra dcis

JOHN SOMERSETT ROBERT BAKER
HENRYE NEWTON.
ffra Bynforde Esceator.

to supply one "light horse." [40] He was a trustee of the Ilminster Free Grammar School in 1600 and 1604.[41] He married Sarah May, daughter of Robert May of Charter House, Horton, Somerset. She was living in 1620 when she was assessed at Ilminster, as Sarah Balch, widow. They had three sons and two daughters as follows, except that it is not known in what order the daughters were born:—

5. George Balche.
5. William Balche.
5. Nicholas Balche.
5. Elizabeth Balch (*sic*).
5. —— Balch (*sic*).

5. George Balche of Horton, gentleman, the heir of Nicholas, was born in 1584. He was a man of substantial wealth in those times, for he was possessed in fee of several valuable tracts of land. During the visitation of Somerset in 1623 by the heralds of the College of Arms in London, he was summoned, as head of the family, to prove the right of the family to bear arms. On that visitation the right of the family to blazon on their shields "barry of six, or. and az. on a bend en-

---

[40] *The Preparations in Somerset against the Spanish Armada*, by Samuel Green, London, 1888, pages 26 and 70, 71.

[41] Archives of the school, Oct. 17th and 18th, 1600, and Oct. 6th, 1604.

THE BALCH HOUSE, HORTON,

SOMERSETSHIRE.

grailed gu., three spear heads ar.," and to carry for crest a demi griflin rampant, was confirmed.[42]

He lived in a house built in the Tudor style that is to-day approached by an avenue of trees and is now known as "The Firs." Its embattled porch, ancient oak beams, quaint back stairs, and other features show its age.[43]

He was one of the trustees of the Ilminster Free Grammar School in 1600, 1605, 1606, 1607, 1633, 1635, 1637, 1639, 1642, 1645, 1647, 1648, 1650, 1651, 1655, and 1656, and very likely in the intervening years.[44] At the annual meeting of the trustees on the first Sunday of October, 1635, a time when the question of Sunday sports was a burning subject, George Balche was one of the feoffees who voted to adjourn over until the following Tuesday:—

"It is now the Sabbath day and wanting time to fynishe our account it is agreed by those whose names are under written to meete again on Tuesday. G. Speke, George Balche, Rd. Webbe," and others.

---

[42] Harley Manuscripts, Nos. 1141, 1445 and 1559 (British Museum).

[43] In 1651 in the rate book of Ilminster Parish this entry occurs: "late George Balch £. 1. 1. 0." In 1652 the name drops out and that of Henry Warre takes its place. Later occurs the name of Mr. Portman; in 1726 that of Henry Portman; and about 1864 the late Lord Portman sold it to Samuel Palmer, whose executors sold it in 1888 to Mr. Baker.

[44] Archives of the school. In 1655 in the Court of Common Bench at Westminster: case relating to lands in Aishill, Ilminster, Crickett, and the forest of Roch, otherwise Neroche. The trustees, including George Balche, plaintiffs *versus* Humfrey Walrond, Esq., Grace his wife and George Walrond deforcients. Result: the plaintiffs were ordered or agreed to pay the debts, the sum of eighteen pounds sterling.

This George Balche of Horton, like his forefathers for at least three generations before him, belonged to the English Protestant Church. During the Civil War between the King and the Parliament, he was loyal to the former, and exercised under the authority of King Charles the office of coroner in the County Court in Somerset, when the Royal forces held possession of the shire. This entry of his services as coroner under the authority of the King has come down: "Mr. George Balch, the coroner his fee concerning Coles that destroyed himself, 13s, 4d." For thus adhering to the side of the Cavaliers, George Balche, after the Round Heads had finally won under the able leadership of Oliver Cromwell, was forced to pay a large fine, two hundred and twenty-one pounds sterling and seven shillings, one sixth of the value of his estates, to the Parliamentary authorities, in order to retain his landed estates. The papers in this compounding by George Balche for his estate, the originals of which are in the Royalist Composition Papers, are as follows:—

George Balché of Horton in the
County of Somersett gent. [45]

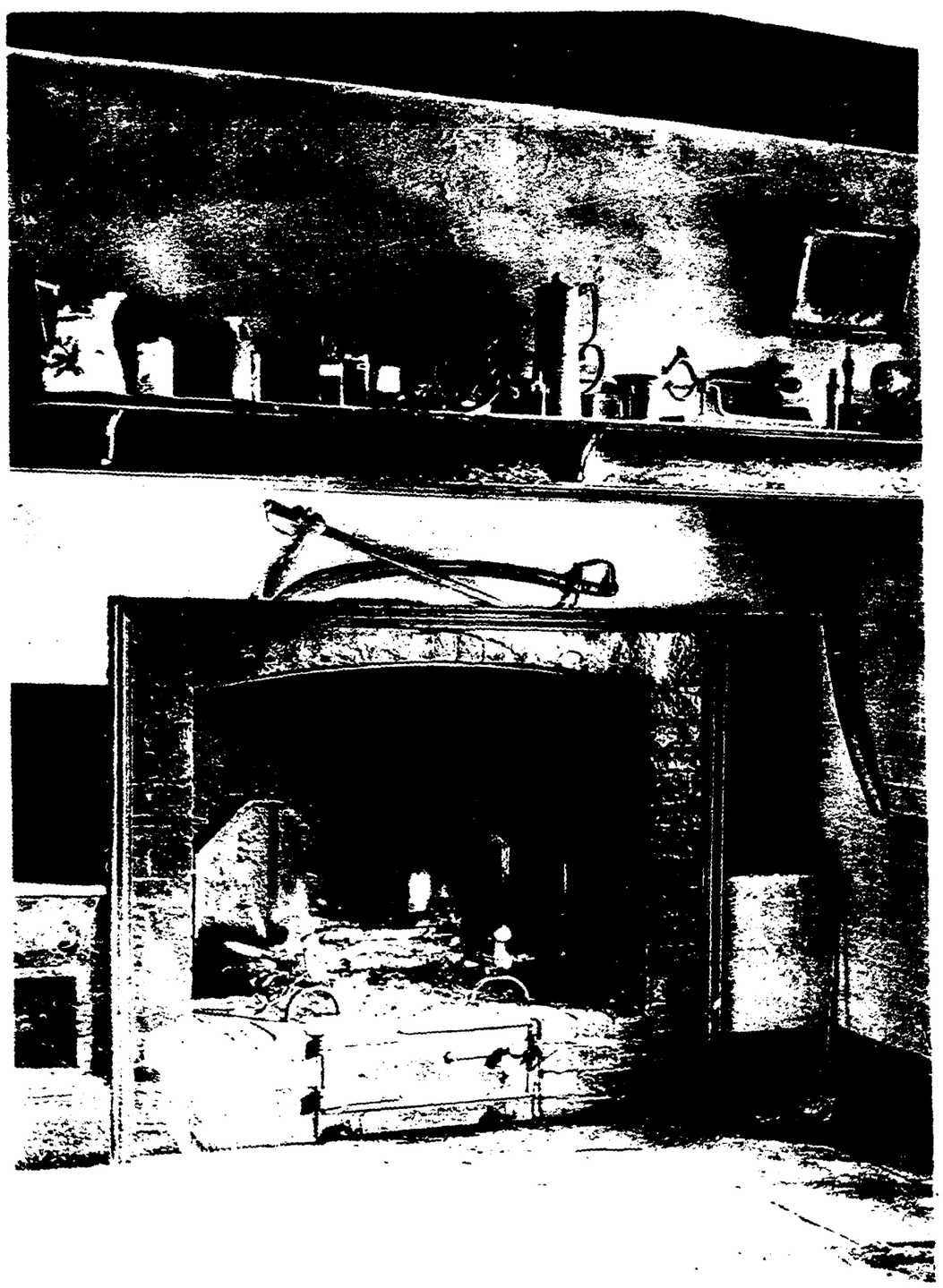
His delinquency that he adheared unto the forces raised ag^{t}. the pliament.

He peticoned here the 11th of January *1648*.

Its deposed by Henry Warr gent. that the Compounder

---

[45] *State Papers Domestic. Interregnum.* Volume G. 208. fo. 10.



FIREPLACE OF THE BALCH HOUSE, HORTON,
SOMERSETSHIRE.

tooke the Naconall Covenant before the Comittee of Somersett in Decemb *1648*. But was omitted by mistake of the Clarke of that Comittee to be inserted in their Certificate sent up of the 23 of the same Decemb. But it is Certified by that Comittee that he tooke ye Negative oath before them the 9th of Decemb. *1648*.

He Compounds upon a Certificate retourned out of ye Country, & upon a Particular delivered in under his owne hand By w^ch^ he doth submitt to such ffine &c. And by w^ch^ it doth appear.

That he is seised in ffee to him & his heires in possession of & in certaine Lands and Tenements lyeing in the parish of Ilminster in the said County of Somersett of the yearly value before these troubles 40^l^. 40 l.

That he is seised of a like estate of an in certaine old Rents or Rents of Assize lyeing in Coker and other places in ye said County of the yearly value before these troubles 7^l^. 11^s^. 2^d^. Old Rts. l 7 s 11 d 2

Due to him by bond from M^r^. Cannicott of Ilebrewers 200^l^.

13 Jan. 1648.

D. WATKINS.

Jo: BRADINGE.

fine at a sixt 221^l^ 7^s^.

To the right hono.^ble^ the Comissioners for Composicons sitting at Goldsmiths hall.

The humble Peticon of George Balch of Horton in the County of Somersett gent.

Sheweth

That yo^r^ peticoner haveing adhered to the fforces raysed against the Parliament was sequestred for that his delinquency, which still Continues under-sequestracon.

He therefore humbly prays to be admitted to a favourable Composicon for his said delinquency, and for his estate menconed in the annexed pticuler.

And yo^{r} pet.^{r} shall pray &c

GEORGE BALCHE.

Rec. 11 Jan. 1648 & referred to the subcomittee

JO: LEECH.

A Particular of the estate of George Balch of Horton in the County of Somersett gent. ffor which he desires to Compound.

He is seized in ffee to him and his heires, of and in Certaine Lands and Tenem^{ts} lyeing and being in the pish of Ilmister in the County of Somsett of the yearely value before these troubles of.....	40^{l}. 0^{s}. 0^{d}.
He is seized of a like estate of and in Certaine old Rents or Rents of Assize, lyeing and being in Coker and other places in the said County of ye yearely value before these troubles of.....	7^{l}. 11^{s}. 2^{d}.
There is oweing to him by Bond from M^{r}. Cannicott of Ilebrewers a debt of...	200^{l}

This is a true pticuler of all my estate reall & psonall, for w^{ch} I desire to Compound, to free my estate from sequestracon; And I doe submitt unto, & undertake to satisfie and pay such ffine as shal be imposed on me by this hono^{ble}: Comittee for the same, in order to ye freedome & discharge of my pson & estate; And I doe affirme that I was never member of this present pliam^{t} nor Councellor at Lawe, nor Advocate, nor Proctor nor Attorney, nor any wayes towards ye lawe Comon or Civill.

GEORGE BALCHE.

Right hono[ble]

Att the instance of George Balch of Horton in this County Gen[t]. we doe certifie that he sate as a Coroner at the County Court in the tyme when the Kings Army had the power of this County and executed his office there as a Coroner in giveing Judgm[t] upon severall Exig[ts]. of High Treason preferred by the King's pty ag[t]. Parliam[t] men and others well affected to the Parliam[t] for their service done to and for the same. He tooke the Negative oathe the 9.[th] of December last. The Estimate of his Estate is here enclosed presented you, all which we leave to yo[r] Hono.[rs] Jedgm.[ts] and subscribe o.[r] selves.

Right Hono.[ble]

Yo[r] humble and faithfull servants

JONAT. PITT

RI: TREVILLIAN

EDW. CEELY CHR. PITTARD. ROB. MORGAN

Tanton this 23[th]
of December
1648.

[Addressed] To the Right Hono.[ble] the Comission.[rs]
For Compounding with Delinquents
At Goldsmiths Hall these
present
London

[*Endorsed*] Geo. Balch
15 Jan. 1648
Report past Octob. 25°. 1649
ffyne 221[1]

George Balche died in 1658. An admonition was granted to his niece, Dorothy Warre, July 13th, 1658.

5. William Balche: of him nothing further is known.

5. Nicholas Balche, died in 1658. An admonition was granted to his niece, Dorothy Warre, June 3d, 1658. This grant was revoked and another was made December 9th, 1658, to his sister, Elizabeth Royon. Other grants were made January 14th and February 14th, 1658–9.

Of the two daughters of Nicholas Balche of Horton (see *ante* page 24), nothing more is known than has already been stated.

Of the other children of (3.) George Balche the first, of Horton, (see *ante* page 21) and his wife, Jane Ashford, brothers and sister of Nicholas Balche of Horton, all that is known is that George Balche was living in 1597, as he was assessed at Ilminster in that year, and that George, John and Maximilian, all died without issue.

Of (4.) Katherine Balche nothing is known.

3. George Balche of Ilminster and Horton, (see *ante* page 21) married for his second wife, about 1557 to 1560, Margery Berry, daughter of —— Berry of Berry Narbor, County Devon. They had one son.

4. Walter Balche, of Tavistock, County Devon, who was born of course as early as 1569, probably about 1560. This Walter Balche in turn had two sons:—

5. George Balche, eldest son.

5. William Balche.

3. George Balche of Ilminster and Horton (see *ante* page 19), like his father, belonged to the Protestant Church of England, and from his will we learn that he was one of the local gentry. He held lands in Horton, East Coker, Martock and Cannington. He died and was buried about the middle of the year 1569, probably in the month of July.

---

[46]*Chancery Inquisitions post mortem*, Series II., Volume 152, n. 129. Som s

Inquisicio indentat Capt apud Yevell in Com pred vicesimo quinto die Octobr Anno regni Elizabeth dei grd Anglie ffranc et Hibnie Regine fidei defensor tc. vndecimo Coram Stepho Brent Armigo Escaetore dce dne Regine virtute bris eiusdem dne Regine de diem Clausit extremu eidem Escaetori post mortem Georgii Blache direct t huic inquisicioni annex p Sacrm Johis Jenes gen. Johnis Boyes gen Johis Hacker sen gen Egidii Hayne, gen Willmi Colmer gen Johis Vyrgyn gen Egidii Barnard gen Johis Phelps gen Willmi Jenes gen Robti Jenes gen Johnis fforde gen Willmi Stone gen Willmi Jennynge gen t Thome Williams gen Qui dicunt sup sacrm suu p d qd dcus Georgius Balche in dco bri noiat diu ante Capcoem huius Inquisicionis fuit seisit in dnico suo ut de feod de uno Capitli messuagio ac de t in duobus tenement t tribus Curtillagus cu sexagint septem acr terre prati et pastur in Horton infrd pochiam de Ilmyster in Com p dco Et sic inde seisitus obiit inde seisitus

Et ultius Jur p dci p sacrm suu p d dicunt qd p dcus Georgius Balche in dco bri noiat fuit seisitus in dnico suo ut de feod die quo obiit de t in Cent et vigint acr terr prat pastur bosci t bruer in Est Coker in Com p dco Et sic seisitus existens obiit inde seisit

Et ultius Jur p dci dicunt sup sacrm suu p d qd p dcus Georgius Balche in dco bri noiat fuit seisitus in dnico suo ut de feod die quo obiit de t in vno Tento et Triginta acr terr prat et pastur in Martocke in Com p dco Et sic inde seisitus existens obiit inde seisitus Et qd dcus Georgius Balche in dco bri noiat fuit seisitus in dnico suo ut de feod de t in vno messuagio t viginti acr terr prat et pastur in Cannyngton in Com p dco Et sic inde seisitus obiit inde seisit. Et ultius Jur p dci dicut sup Sacrm suu p d qd oia p d mesuag tenta Curtillag terr prat et pastur in Horton infrd pochiam de Ilmyster p d tenent[r] de Edwards Seymer milite vic Beachampe et Comit Heref p suic militar ut de manio suo de Ilmyster p d p quadragesimam ptem unius feod milit Et valent p annu in oibus suis exit ultra repris xl s. Et qd oia tenement Curtillag terr prat pastur bosc et bruer in Estcoker p d tenent[r] de Johne Zouche mi[te] in iure

Most of the younger children of John Balche of Horton (see *ante* page 18)—Anne Balche, Alice Balche, John Balche, Agnes Balche, Thomas Balche and Anthony Balche,—were all born before the year 1536, when they are mentioned in their father's will. The other two children, Joan Balche and Hugh Balche, were both born subsequent to that date. Of all these nothing more is known, except of Thomas, Joan, and Hugh.

3. Thomas Balche was born probably about the year 1534. He lived at Cote in the parish of Martock, which lies to the east of that of Ilminster, and died there in 1594. In the muster in Somersetshire in 1569 he was one of the archers that appeared. He was buried at Cote April 19th, 1594.

Catherine uxoris sue ut de man io suo de Estcoker in Com p d sed p que s uitcd Jurat ignorant Et valent p annu in oibus suis exit ultra repris—vii li x s. Et ultius Jur p d sup sacrm suu p d dicunt qd oia tent terr prat et pastur in Martocke p d tenent^{r} de Willmo Stanley mil dno Mountegle ut de huner suo de Martocke sed p que s uic Jur p d penitus ignorant Et valent p annu in oibus suis exit ultra repris—xxxij s. Et qd mesuag terr prat et pastur in Cannyngton pd tenent^{r} de Georgio Rogers Ar ut de manio suo de Cannyngton p d sed p que s uic Jur p d penitus ignorant Et valent p annu in oibus suis exit ultra repris—viij s. Et insuper dicunt Jur p d. qd dcus Georgius Balche in dco bri noiatus nulla alia sine plura terr negz tent in dnico negz in s uicio tenuit de dca dna Regina negz de aliquo alio in Com p d die quo obiit Et dicunt Jurat p d qd dcus Georgius Balche in dco bri noiatus obiit xxiij^{cio} die Junii ultimo p lerit Et qd Nichus Balche est eius filius et heres ppinquior et est etatis tempore mortis p dci Georgii Balche septemdecem annor$_{b}$ et ampluis In Cuius rei testimoniu tam p dcus Escaetor q^{u}m Jur p d pntibus Sigilla sua altnatim apposuer Dat die Anno t loco primo sup^{a} dcis.

p me

STEPHANU BRENT JOHN BOYS GYLES HAYNE JOHES VIRGYN
WILLIAM JENYS WILLM JENYNGE

Escaetorem Com p d

He was a man of some means, for he left to his five children, after directing three shillings and four pence should be given to the church of Martock, and to the poor of the parish a like sum, a total sum of one hundred and forty pounds sterling, and the remainder of the estate to his wife, Avis Balche, whom he named his executrix. His will is as follows:—

T Thome Balche

In the name of god amen The xviiith Daye of Aprill in the yeare of our Lorde god one thousand ffive hundreth Ninety ffower I Thomas Balche[47] Thelder of Cote wth in the parrishe of Martocke being of good and perfecte remembrance Lawde and praise be given to Almighty god Doe make and ordayne this my Last will and testament in manner and forme following that is to saye ffirst I give and bequeathe my Sowle unto Almighty god my maker And to his Sonne Jesus Christ my Savyour and Redemer And my Bodye to the earthe. Item I give unto the Churche of Martocke aforesaide three shillings foure pence/ Item I give unto the poore people of the same parrishe three shillinge foure pence. Item I give unto my sonne Thomas Balche forty pounde to be paide as followeth that is to saye Tenne Poundes presently after my Decease And the Rest Tenne pounde a yeare within three yeares then next following the first payment/ Provided that if the saide Thomas Balche my sonne happen to marrye before the money be all paide Then he to have it all together towarde his marriage and well doing/ Also I give unto the saide Thomas Balche my sonne all suche

[47] Prerogative Court of Canterbury. 51 Dixy.

debte as are due unto me by Hughe Palmer and William Allen./ Item I give unto Roberte Balche my sonne fforty pounde. Item I give unto Marye Balche my Daughter twenty pounde and one hawked heffer and her Calfe. Item I give unto Anne Balche my Daughter twenty pounde/ Item I give unto ffraunce Balche my Daughter Twenty pounde/ Item I give unto Avis Balche my Daughter Twenty pounde. Item my will is that this money shal be paide to my yonger Children when they come to full age/ And if any of them happen to dye before they come to full age Then theire porcons to remaine amongest the Rest. The Rest of all my goode and Chattelle not given nor bequeathed I doe give and bequeathe unto Avis my wyfe whome I doe make my full and wholle Executor/ These being Wittnesses Hughe Balche Thomas Dolyn Christofer Laver Nicholas Luffe and Henry Newton with others."

At the time of proving this will was thus endorsed:—

"Probatum fuit Testamentum Suprascriptum apud London Coram Venerabili viro mro Willmo Lewyn Legum Doctore Curie Prerogative Cant Magro Custode sine Commissario Ltime deputato vicesimo secundo die mens Junii Anno Dni Millimo Quingentesimo Nonagesimo Quarto Juramento mri ffrancisci Clerk notarii publici procuratoris Avicie Balche Relicte dict defuncti et executricis in hmoi — Testamento nominat Cui commissa fuit administraco etc De bene et fideliter administrand etc Ad sancta dei Evangelia Jurat."

3. Thomas Balche of Cote in Martock and his wife Avis, had a number of children:—[48]

4. Thomas Balche, baptized Oct. 7th, 1559.

[48] Thomas Balche's will. The registers of the parish of Martock.

4. Robert Balche.[49]
4. Mary Balche, baptized Jan. 7th, 1565–6.
4. Johana (?) Balche, baptized March 4th, 1576.
4. Mary (?) Balche, baptized July 13th, 1576.

} Twins (?)

4. Francis Balche, baptized Jan. 7th, 1589.
4. Alice (?) Balche, baptized March 7th, 1591.
4. Avis Balche, baptized Jan. 30th, 1591–2.

The following marriages recorded in the Martock registers show that other Balches besides Thomas Balche, who died in 1594 and his children, lived at Martock and the immediate neighborhood:—

Apr. 6th, 1572, Alice Balche–John Moore.
Sept. 8th, 1589, Henrie Balche–Marye Gould.
Nov. 22nd, 1589, William Balche–Alice Moore.
Apr. 7th, 1594, Gyles Balche–Agnes Perryn.
Jan. 22nd, 1598, Robert Balch–Eliz. Ffrench.
Oct. 4th, 1604, Ursula Balch–John Hulkyns.
April 7th, 1605, Edyth Balch–Zeiles Bacon.
Nov. 10th, 1606, Joane Balch–John Hylborne,
Jan. 17th, 1607, Henry Balch–Julian Parker.
Oct. 10th, 1612, Francis Balch-Alexander Hutchins.
May 18th, 1614, Edyth Balch–John Bradford.
Jan. 26th, 1614, Hester Balch–Thomas Becke.

---

[49] From the present available authorities it is not known in what year this Robert was born, but his father's will shows that he was younger than Thomas; and perhaps he was younger than some of his sisters.

Jan. 17th, 1617, Henry Balch–Margaret Geise.
June 3rd, 1630, Gregory Balch–Repentance Patch.

3. Joan Balche, according to the Herald's visitation of Somerset in 1573, married Robert Hyett of Street, Somerset, son of Philip Hyett of Michelney, Somerset.

3. Hugh Balche, of Ilminster, gentleman, was born subsequently to 1536. He was a trustee of the Ilminster Free Grammar School in 1600, 1604, 1605, 1607, 1608, 1611, and 1612, and probably in the intervening years. He was bayliff for the school in 1611, and handed in his account in October 1612. For some time it was the custom for one of the trustees to hold this position for one year; after 1620 it became apparently a life appointment. He died in 1615 or 1616. His will is as follows:[50]

T Hugonis Balche.

"Hugh Balche of Ilmister in the Countie of Somersett gent beinge sicke of bodie but of perfect remembrance thanckes be to god The seavententhe daie of ffebruarie in the yeare of our Lorde god one thowsand six hundred and fyfteene did in the presence of John Membrie of Ilmister aforesaide Clothier, William Hunte of the same Butcher and Robert Crokeham of Ilmister aforesaide Shomaker make his laste will and Testament Nuncupative in manner and forme followinge ffyrste he gave to his sonne William Balche his Gunne and moulde. Itm he gave to five Children which he had by his former wife Tenne shillinges a peece. Item

[50] *Prerogative Court of Canterbury.* 52 Cope.

he gave to the poore of the Parrishe of Ilmister Tenne shillinges All the reste of his goodes and Chattels he gave unto Elizabeth his wife. Signu Johannis Membrie Signum Willmi Hunte Signum Roberti Crokeham. He gave further in the presence of John Membrie presentlie after the making of his former will to the Churche of Ilmister five shillinges Signum Johis Membry."

This will at the time it was proved was thus endorsed:—

"Vicesimo quinto die mensis Maij Anno Domini Millesimo Sexcentesimo decimo sexto emanavit Comissio Elizabethe Balche relce dicti defuncti Ad administrand bona iura et credita dicti defuncti iuxta tenorem testamenti hmoi eo quod nallum omnino in eodem nominaverit executorem De bene tc. vigore Comissionis tc Jurat."

We thus learn from Hugh Balche's will which he made when almost at the point of death, that he was twice married. By his first wife, whose name is unknown, he had five children as follows:—

4. Thomas Balchè.
4. George Balche, named in his brother's will.
4. John Balche, married and had issue born before 1658 and living at that time.
4. Mary Balche, married —— Gaird.
4. Susan Balche, married —— Beck.

4. Thomas Balch, a citizen of London, died in 1658. He married Elizabeth ——. In his will he mentions his cousins Woodrosse and Daniel Bell. His will reads thus:

Thomas Balch

In the name of God Amen the first day of September One Thousand Six hundred fiftie and eight 1658 I Thomas Balch[51] Cittizen and Clothworker of London being sicke and weake in Bodie but of perfect minde and memorie thankes be therefore given unto Almightie God And knowing nothing is more certaine then death and nothing more uncertaine then the hower thereof doe therefore make and declare this my last will and Testament (that is to say) First I commend my Soule into the hands of the Almightie God Father Sonne and Holy Ghost trusting faythfullie and believing through the only meritts death and resurrection of Jesus Christ my Saviour to obtaine remission of all my sinns and to raign with him in his most blessed Kingdome My bodie to be decently buried att the dis-cretion of my Executrix hereafter named And for such Worldly Estate as it hath pleased God to indowe me with I give and dispose in manner and forme following (that is to say) I give and bequeath unto my Cozin Margarett Wood-rosse now with mee Five hundred pounds after the death of my Wife Elizabeth Balch whoe I make my sole Executrix Item I give unto my Bro. George Balch Fortie shillings. Item I give unto my Bro. John Balch: Children each of them fortie shillings a peece Item I give unto Mary Geird my sister five pounds Item I give unto my sister Susan Beck Twentie shillings for to buy her a Ring Item I given unto David Wood-rosse and Robert Woodrosse and Sarah Carwarthine and Elizabeth Woodrosse and Mary Woodrosse and Judith Woodrosse each of them Twentie shillings a peece Item I give unto William Powell Twentie shillings to buy a Ring. Item I give unto my Cozin Daniell

[51] Prerogative Court of Canterbury, Wotton folio 524.

Belt Fortie shillings to buy a Ring And doe further desire my said Cosin Daniell Belt to be aiding and assisting unto my said Wife for the disposing and ordering of the said Legacies hereby bequeathed And I make Elizabeth my said wife sole Executrix of this my last Will and Testament Item I give alsoe unto Elizabeth my Wife all and singular my household goods plate juells and moveables in and aboute my dwelling house att the time of my decease Item I give and desire that Fifty pounds may be expended upon my Funerall. In witness whereof I the said Thomas Balch to this last will and Testament of myne have sett my hand and seale Given the day and yeare first above written Before this was sealed I give unto my Cosin Ann Belt Twentie shillings to buy a Ring Thomas Balch.

Signed Sealed and delivered in the presence of Henry Farewell John Smith Daniell Belt William Power.

This Will was proved att London ye two and Twentith day of the Moneth of September in the yeare of our Lord God one Thousand six hundred Fiftie and Eight before the Judges for probate of Wills and granting Administrations lawfully authorized by the oath of Elizabeth Balch the Relict and sole and only Executrix named in the above written Will To whome Administration of all and singular the Goods Chattels and debts of the said deceased was graunted and committed she being first legallie sworne truly and faythfullie to administer the same.

3. Hugh Balche (see *ante* page 37), by his second wife, Elizabeth ——, had one son:—

4. William Balche.

George Balch of Winterhay in the parish of Ilminster, was assessed at Ilminster in 1641, as of Winterhay, and was buried at Ilminster, May 3rd, 1672. He was a trustee of the Ilminster Free Grammar School in 1639, 1642, 1647, 1650, 1653, 1660, 1664, and 1666 and most likely for the intervening years.[52] It would seem to be reasonably certain that he was related to the Horton Balches. He married Margaret ——, who was buried at Ilminster, Nov. 15th, 1682, adn.[n] June 14th following. His will was dated March 29th, 1672, and proved at Wells, June 16th, 1682. They had,

Philippa Balch, 1672, unmarried.

Margaret Balch, wife in 1672, of William Strowde.

Anne Balch, unmarried in 1672, married before 1682 to James Bright of Ilminster, tanner.

It is evident from the known records that William Balche, of Higham (see *ante* page 13), who was born before 1477 and died in 1533, either had other sons besides John Balche of Horton, or else he had brothers or first cousins. For there is a grant dated in 1528 by the Abbot of Mauchelney, of Rippe's Mill, in Horton, Ilminster, to Sir Henry Daubeney, John Balche, George Balche, and thir-

---

[52] Archives of the schools, Oct. 16th, 1639, Oct. 4th, 1642, Oct. 5th and Oct. 20th, 1647, Oct. 1st, 1650, Nov. 21st, 1653, Oct. 6th, 1664, March 18th, 1666.

teen other knights and gentlemen in trust for a chantry priest in the "church of Ilemyster." When translated the grant, the original of which is in the Ilminster Grammar School, runs thus:—[53]

"All those messuages, lands, tenements, meadows, pasture, and feed, with their appurtenances in the tithing of Winterhay in the parish of Ilmyster called Modies tenement, by John Sherbourne, Abbot formerly of the Monastery of Muchelney aforesaid, and the convent of the same place, leased to farm to Henry Dawbeny, Kt. lord de Dawbeney, Thomas Speke, Hugh Paulet, Nicholas Wadham, junr., esquire, John Poole, Thomas Michell and John Baltyn, clerk, John Bonoyle, John Balche, George Balche, John Chyke of Horton, senr.

---

[53] Grant of Rippe's Mill, in Horton, Ilminster.

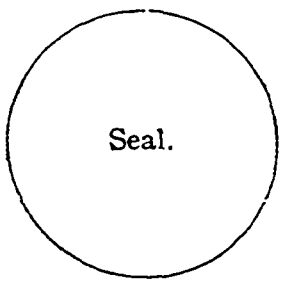
(OMNIBUS XPD FIDELBS (fidelibus) ad quos presens s-criptu p venit Johes Shirborne Abbas monastri beatori aplosi Petri vPauli de Muchelney in com. Some s.t vi emsen loci convent saltem in dno sempitern. Nonite nos psat abbem v convent triduum assensu v consensu uris tradidisse dimisisse v hoc psent script. uri confirmasse Henrico Dawbeney milit. dno De Dawbeney [Lord Daubeney] Thome Speke Hugon Paulett Nicho Wadhm Jun armigris Johi Pole Thome Radberd Thome Michell vi Johi Batten clici Johis Bonvile Johi Balche Johi Barfote Georgio Balche Johi Chike de Horton Johi Chike filio suo Thome Hawker v Johi Spicer omnia illa mes. Terro Tent. prat. past. vi pasturo ad suos ptnd in Horton in parochie de Ilemyst quo omnia sunt Johes Rippe clericus ibm quondam tnuit hendi v tenendi omnia v suigla pmifs ad suis ptndi pset Henrico Dawbeney etc., etc. v assign suis ad tri ducent annos xx sequem v plenari complendi post dat psenm. Reddo inde ante nobis psat Abbi v convent v success uris quatuor solidi sex denaro ad quatuor anni tnnos ibm usuat ac duos solidi ante ad festu sa Martini in jeme necnon quatuor solidi ante ad festu de Thome apli v sex denari ante ad gulam augusti p omibs officis sinvis v ali demandi satu sine rexat vi vire eccliast durant tnuo pdco et si contingat pdict. reddit seu aliqua ut psent pmiss parcellam aretro fore in parte vel in toto post aliquae tnu timore pdico qui solui debeat per vim mensem sidebit modo petat non solut ad tunc bene licebit nobis psat abb v

John Chike, his son, Thomas Hawker, John Barfote John Spicer and Thomas Redbere clerk, by deed of the same Abbot and convent given in their chapter house under the seal of the convent aforesaid the third day of November A. D. 1528, to have and to hold all and singular the premises with their appurtenances to the aforesaid Henry Dawbeney and the others aforenamed and their assigns for the term of a hundred and eighty years next following immediately after the death surrender or forfeiture of Agnes wife of John Wilmote junr., who holds the same premises for the term of her life, Rendering therefor annually to the said Abbot and convent

---

convent v success uris in omnibus pmiss ad suis ptnd intrare vi distringere ac distrucon sic capt. inde abducere affugare apportare vi penes nos retinere quonsque de predict reddit sic aretro existen vuaco Imprimis expen. causa emse hici nobis plenarie fuit satisfact et psolut Et pdico Henricus Dawbeny etc. etc. omniae pdict ures ve eta pmis ad suis ptn len vi compitent reparabunt v maintenebunt sumptribs corj ppis ve eppen durant tnio pdco et ad fine tm supaao [supra?] dabunt duo den success suis tres solidi v quattuor denar nove hicet et nonite insup nos psat abbem v convent attornasse v loco uro posuisse dilcos nobis in xpo Thomae Rose v Thorn *Dunster* sen uros heres v legittios attorn convict v dimr ad intrand viae v nos uris in ombs pmiss ad suis ptn ac ad omes v suiglat persones inde expellend v amovendi ac deinde plenat v pacificit possessione v seisinet psat Henrico Dawbeney etc. etc. assign suis deliband heredi eis ad usu v manutentia pmi suior ut agend in ecclesia de Ilemyster sed in vim formae v essend huic psent script uro.

In ems rei testiom huic psent script sigilii urm appossuum Dat in domo ura capitbus tertio die mensis Novembre anno Dini millimo quinquentesimo vicessimo octavo et anno regni Rex Henrico Octam vicesimo et anno supra Johis Shirbone abbis septimo.



and their successors vijs. vijd. at the usual annual terms, with divers other covenants as in the said deed specified, and rendering per annum beyond the aforesaid rent of vijs. vijd. reserved—iiij li. vjs. vd."

That this John Balche and George Balche were named in 1528 trustees of an ecclesiastical benefit points to the probability that they were at the time of the grant, men of mature years, and consequently more probably brothers than sons of William Balche of Higham, who died in 1533. And the fact that they are named trustees in the grant shows that the family at the beginning of the sixteenth century had risen into prominence in and about the neighborhood of Ilminster.

Returning to the records of Higham (High Ham), we find in the will of John Dier, rector of the parish church of Higham in the diocese of Bath and Wells, who died September 10th, 1499, this item: "To John Balshe, my godson, one silver spoon."[54] It is known that another William Balche lived at Higham about the years 1550 to 1560, and that his son of the same name was also living at that place in 1599. For the Rev. Adrian Schaell, Rector, in the oldest parish register of High Ham, dating from 1569, wrote on a few stray leaves in 1599 that the "chap-

[54] 7 Moone folio 49. John Dier (Dyer), A. B., was instituted rector of High Ham, June 12th, 1457.

Was this John Balch the same individual who was designated as of Horton and was born in 1496 or 1497, and died in 1552? Or did this John Balch belong to an earlier generation?

ple at Beare was destroyed within these fifty years." This chapel was dedicated to Saint John the Baptist. The rector's entry then continues: "One William Balch, a gentleman (by whose appointment I know not pulled down the same small chapple) of Beare in High Ham, and with the rubble stones and timber thereof builded to himself a faire howse, wherein his sonne of the same name, William, dwelleth."

The senior of these two William Balches was very possibly the William Balche who in September, 1560, was a captain in the military forces raised in Somersetshire to repel the Spanish Armada.[55]

It is very possible that the William Balch who pulled down the chapel at Beare to build himself a house was either a son or a nephew of the William Balche of Higham, who died in 1533. Consequently it may be inferred that the Balches were living at Higham long before the year 1500.

On January 25th, 1607, another William Balche,

---

[55] In September 1560, the "mowster mayster [muster master] of Somerset was held. There were twenty-one "captaynes" of the "abell" men of Somerset, and each captain had 300 men, except William Balche, who had 200 only, the total available being 6,939." *The Preparations in Somerset against the Armada* by Samuel Green, F. S. A.; London, 1888.

One of the corporals of "shott" in the district of Langport, Muchelney and Pytney (Pitney) in the military forces trained at Bridgwater in October, 1586, by Sir John Stawell against the Spanish invasion was a William Balch.—*Ibid.*, pages 87, 90.

probably a son of William living in 1599, was married at Higham. On November 9th of the same year Elizabeth Balche was married at the same place. On June 25th, 1618, another Elizabeth Balche was married there also. On June 19th, 1619, William Balche, senior, of Higham was married; this was probably the William Balche who was married in January 1607. And the same entry shows that in 1619 there was probably yet another William Balche living at Higham. It was probably the "Senior" whose will was proved at the Probate Registry of Wills on August 3rd, 1630. This will of William Balch of Beare in Higham is dated November 9th, 1629. After providing for his burial in the churchyard of Higham, the testator leaves everything to his son, Samuel Balch. On March 1st, 1630, Samuel Balche, brother of the second Elizabeth Balche above mentioned, was married also at Higham. And this Samuel was living in 1637. On January 19th, 1655–6, Samuel Balch, son of Samuel Balch, and Mary his wife, was baptized. Six days later, that is, January 25th, 1655–6, William Balch, a child, was buried. The next year, Nov. 21st, 1656, Samuel Balch, *generosus*, was buried, and on February 7th, 1681–2, Mary Baulch was also interred. Thus members of the family are recorded as living at Higham during all of the sixteenth and most of the seventeenth centuries.

2. THE NORTH CURRY GROUP.

In the Parish of North Curry, which is situated close to and westward of that of Higham (High Ham) on the other side of the River Parret, a prosperous yeoman family bearing the surname of Balch was firmly established in the middle of the sixteenth century. That this family was living there at a much earlier date is probable, for in the Cartulary of Muchelney Abbey, it is mentioned that in 1259, Richard Balsich held three acres of meadow land at Cury, which may mean North Curry The North Curry Register, which begins in 1539,[56] is in a good state of preservation, and it shows that as early as 1562 at least, (1.) Thomas Baulch or Balch,[57] a prosperous yeoman, who must have been born before 1542, was established, with his wife, Agnes, at North Curry. She died and was buried there April 3d, 1585. He outlived his wife fifteen years and was buried at North Curry March 30th, 1600. His will, the date of which is lost except that he executed it in the month of October, probably on the 20th, was proved in the Probate Register of Wells, July 17th, 1600. It read thus:—

---

[56] On June fifteenth, 1572, Margaret Baulche was married at North Curry to John Dore, but no mention occurs in the North Curry register of any Baulche who could have been her parent.

[57] Among the light horsemen from the Hundred of Somerton in 1586 in the military forces drilled in Somerset to repel the Spanish Armada was Thomas Balch.—*The Preparations in Somerset against the Spanish Armada*, by Samuel Green, London, 1888, page 44.

" * * * day of October in the * * * the grace of God * * * faith I Thomas Balch of the p'ish of North Curry * * * to mynd the instability of this mortal life and advised * * * to bestowe * * * all in order and dyspose myselfe towards Almyghtie god and my goods and chattells towards the world whence by his bountiful grace and goodness I receaved the same * * doe by these presents make pronounce and declare this my last will and testament in * * * and forme followynge

That is to say I surrende my soule into the handes of almig * * * god beseechynge him of his infinite mercy and for the * * * and passion of his son * * * Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour to recave the same into the everlasting fellowship of God * * * blessed presence whensoever it shall please his * * * eternytie to * * * my * * * bodye from this transitorie life and my bodye to be buried in the church yarde of the psh church of North Curry aforesaid Itm. I give to the pish church of North Curry 10d Itm I give to the Almshouse at Taunton 3d Itm I gyve to the almshouse at Langport 6d Itm I give to each of my godchildren 3d Itm I give to each of the two maydens now in my house 12d Itm I give to syx of John Maller als Brodforde his children six chilver lambs the said six lambs to be delivered at midsomer next insuing the date hereof Itm. I gyve to the same John Maller als Brodforde two bushells of wheat and two bushells of barley and my Hutt ? * * * and one pigg * * * shall please my son John Balch to bestowe upon him Itm. I * * * all my lease house grounds which have yet to run in ye Burgage and grounds and tenements situate lying and being in Newport and Wrauntadge unto John Balch my

son and to the issue of his bodye lawfully to be begotten and in defaulte of such issue of the bodye of my son John Balch lawfully to be begotten the remainder to John Maller als. Brodforde and after him the said John Maller the remainder to Richard Maller als. Brodforde son of the said John Maller and in default of issue of the body of the said Richard Maller als Broforde the remainder thereof to Thomas Maller als. Brodforde and his heirs and assigns during the said term yet to come and unexpired. Itm. all the residue of my goods heretofore not given or bequeathed unto John Balch my son whom I ordain and make my full and whole executor in witness hereunto Robert Crouch and William Foster with others."

Thomas Balch and his wife, Agnes, had two children:—

2. I. Joan Balch.
2. II. John Balch.

2. I. Joan Balch was baptized at North Curry November 2d, 1562, and died young.

2. II. John Balch was baptized at North Curry August 6th, 1564, and buried there May 20th, 1639. In October, 1586, he was one of the "pyckes" of the Hundred of North Curry who were trained by Sir John Stawell, at Bridgwater to help repel the expected Spanish Armada.[58] He married at North

---

[58] "The names of the ccc shott and pyckes trayned by Sir John Stawell, Knight, at Bridgwater the viiith day of October in the xxviiith year of her maties Raigne Anno Domini 1586." *The Preparations in Somerset against the Spanish Armada* by Samuel Green, F. S. A.; London, 1888, pages 87, 90.

Curry February 23d, 1595, Eleanor Halsey. They had four children:—

3. I. Thomas Balch.
3. II. John Balch.
3. III. Joan Balch.
3. IV. Robert Balch.

3. I. Thomas Balch was baptized at North Curry June 6th, 1602. He went to Wadham College, Oxford, where he received the B. A. degree June 27th, (*sic*) 1626, and the M. A. July 9th, 1630.[59] He was a Deacon, September 22d, 1627, of Bristol Cathedral; for a time he was schoolmaster at Tavistock, Devon, and June 21st, 1643, he was inducted as Vicar of Dulverton, Somerset, where he was buried July 23d, 1648. During the Civil War he seems to have favored King Charles's cause. By his will which here follows, he divided his estate equally between his wife and sons.

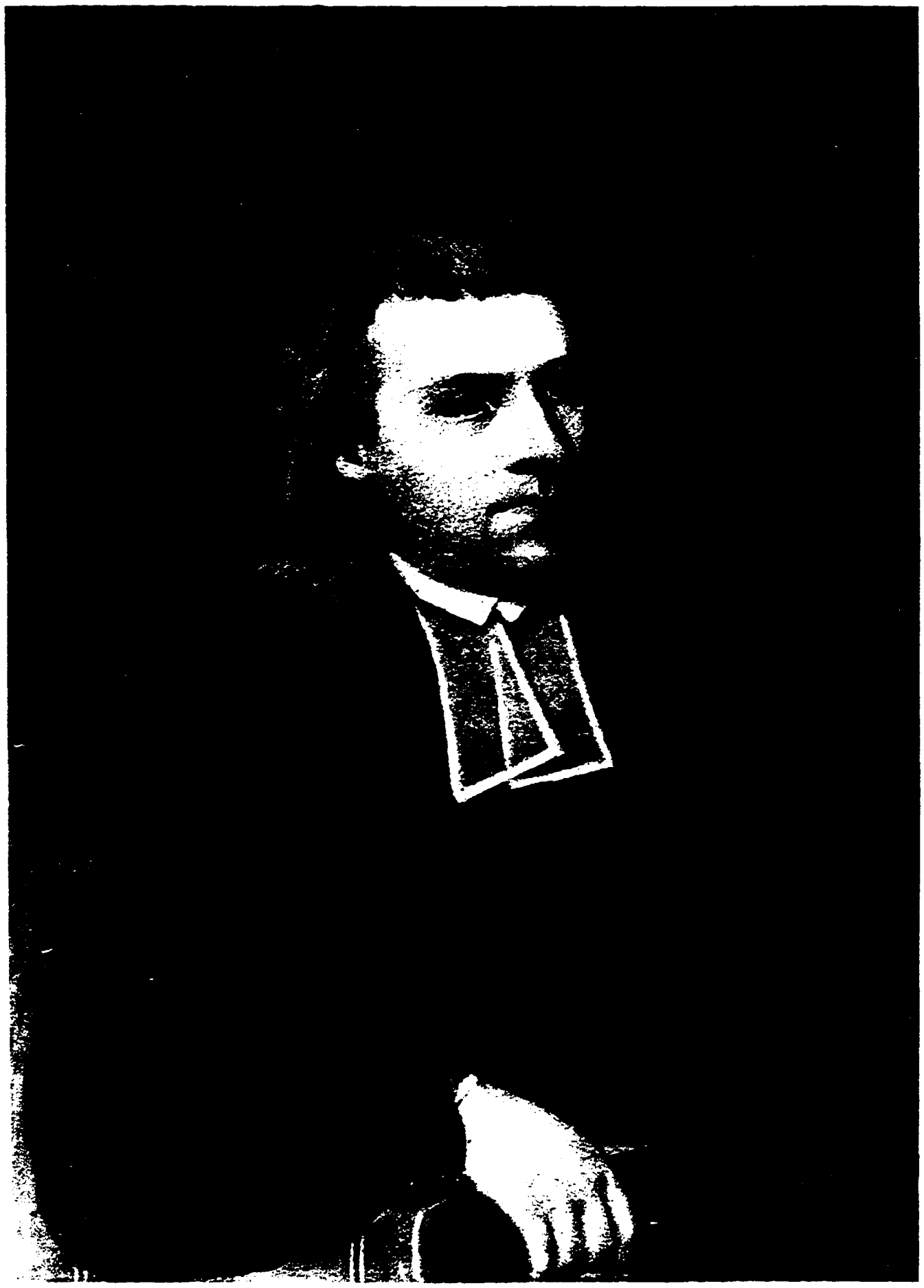
"In the name of God Amen The tenth day of July in the yeare of our Lord God one thousand six hundred forty and eight I Thomas Balch[60] Vicar of Dulverton in the County of Somersett being weake of body but of pfect memory and understanding doe make and ordayne this my last Will and Testament in manner and forme following. Inprimis I Comend my sould to Allmighty God who made it and in Christ redeemed it. And my body to Christian buriell in an assured hope of a

Tm Thome Balch

[59] *Alumni Oxonienses: The Members of the University of Oxford, 1500–1714;* by Joseph Foster, Parker and Co., Broad Street, Oxford, 1891.

[60] *Prerogative Court of Canterbury.* 130 Essex.

joyfull and glorious resurrection. Item I give unto the poore of Dulverton aforesaid one pound to be distributed the day of my funerall Item I give unto my daughter Elianor thirty pounds unto the fifty pound which M^{r}. Cruso gave unto her and I have receaved for her, soe that her porcon in all is eighty pound. Item I give unto my brother Robert Balche all my sermons and manuscripts Item I give unto my brother John Balch the money which Robert Perry doth owe and all the money which he himselfe doth owe me, excepting one bond of tenn pounds which money my will is he shall keepe four yeares longer soe that he give in new security to my Executo^{rs} hereafter menconed for the true payment of it at the times. Item I give unto Elianor the daughter of my brother John Balch one pound. Item I give unto my brother Edward Halsey one pound. Item I give unto Phillipp Perry tenn-shillings, to George Hill one pound, to Elizabeth Taramy tenn shillings. Item I give unto my Sisters Sarah and Anne Byom one pound a peece. Item I give unto my sonne ffrancis Balch tenn pounds over and above his portion hereafter menconed. Item my Will is that all the rest of my goods and Chattells (debts and legacies being paid) be duely estimated and sold by my said Executo^{rs} and devided into five equall parts whereof I give one part to Elizabeth my wife and the other four parts to my four sonns ffrancis, John Thomas and Robert. Item my will is that my said Executo^{rs} shall have power to take the said portions given to my saide children or any part or porcon of them and shall disburse in the purchase of some living or lease for lives or yeares, for the lives of ffrancis John and Thomas my sonns, And my will is that such living soe purchased shall be



THE REV. THOMAS BALCH,

VICAR OF DULVERTON, SOMERSETSHIRE.

imployed partly for the maintenance and education of the said children, and partly for the raysing up of the porcons laid out in the purchase. And for the remaynder of the said estate I leave itt to the discretion of my said Executors to leave it to which of the children they shall thincke most fitt. Item if I in my life time shall purchase any such estate, my will is, that my said Executors shall have power to pay out of the said porcons such somes as shall be left unpaid at the time of my death for and toward the use aforesaid. Item my will is that my said Executo[rs] shall have power to imploye the said porcons of my said children or any part of them for the placing of them in schooles of learning or bindinge them out Apprentices as they shall see fittest for them. Item my will is that if any of my children die before they come to the age of one and twenty yeares, that then their whole porcons or what shall remayne not disposed of shall be equally devided and given to the surviving children. Lastly I doe ordaine and constitute Elizabeth my wife M[r]. John Byon my father in lawe M[r]. Samuell Periam my brother in lawe M[r]. Robert Balch my brother to be Executors in trust of this my last Will and Testament, and for their paynes I give unto each of them twentie shillings to buy a ringe, and satisfaction out of my estate for what expense they shall be at in pformance of this said trust. In Wittness whereof I have sett my hand and Seale the day and yeare above written. Thomas Balch./ Sealed published and delivered in the presence of Ro: Sydenhm George Peppin, John Grase."

At the time this will was proved it was endorsed as follows:—

"Probatum fuit Testamentum suprascriptum apud London Coram venli viro dno Nathanaele Brent milite legum dcore Curie Prerogativæ Mro sive Custode ltime constitut Undecimo die Mensis Septembris Anno Dni Millmo Sexcenmo Quadragesimo Octavo Jurament Elizabethæ Balch relce dci def et unius Execut in hmoi testamento noiat Cui Comissa fuit Administraco oium et singulorum bonorum jurium et creditorum dci def de bene et fidelr administrand eadem Ad sca Dei Evangelia Vigore Comissionis in ea parte emanat jurat. Reservata ptate similem Comissionem faciend Johanni Byam Samueli Perriam et Robto Balch Executor fiduciar in testamento pred etiam noiat cum venerint seu eorum alter venerit eand petitur."

The Rev. Thomas Balch married Elizabeth Byam, daughter of the Rev. John Byam, whose estate divers inhabitants of Dulverton sought to have sequestrated because, as they alleged, the Rev. John Byam had adhered during the Civil War to the King's side. But the commissioners appointed by Parliament to pass judgment upon cases of sequestration confirmed the Rev. John Byam in his estate as his accusers failed to make good their charges.

To the honorable the Commissioners for Compounding with Delinquents The humble petition of the parisoners of Dulverton in ye County of Summerset.[61]
Sheweth

That whereas the parsonage of Dulverton in the County of Summersett being lyable to sequestration,

[61] *State Papers Domestic Interregnum.* Volume G. 81 fo. 317.

as part of the estate of one John Byam of the said County a sequestred delinquent, being granted unto him by the deane and Chapter of Wells by their Indenture bearing date the thirteenth of September, in the fiveteenth yeere of the late King ffor three lives all which lives are yet in being, and whereas the said Byam hath prevented sequestration therof, by pretense of a lease made by him ye said Byam (before Cause of sequestration) unto one Thomas Balch late of the said Dulverton deceased, which said Balch did often say as by the oaths of severall inhabitants of ye said Dulverton can bee proved that hee had noe interrest in the said parsonage notwithstanding ye said pretended lease, but that hee did receave the profitts thereof only as a servant to the said Byam: and whereas one George Pippin of ye said Dulverton successor of the said Balch was aboute nine months since questioned by the Commissioners of sequestrations upon the said pretended lease: and had by them given him a months tyme to prove the same and upon his desire two months more, and upon his further desire three months longer and yet in all this tyme hath not proved the same but only seekes delayes to the prejudice of ye Commonwealth.

Most Humbly therfore prayes your Honors that an order may bee granted to the Commissioners of the said County forthwith to sequester the said parsonage. And your petitioners shall pray etc.

HENRY SEYMOUR. ALDRED CREWES.

Endorsed] Ye petition of ye Inhabitants of Dulverton in ye County of Summersett.
17 Dec., 1651.

Byam ye def. to shew cause to us within 14 dayes after notice why it should not be seq^{d}.

To the Honorable the Commissioners for Compounding with Delinquents.[62]

The humble petition of Diverse of the Inhabitants of Dulverton in the County of Summersett.

Sheweth

That upon our petition presented unto your honors aboute five weekes since Shewing that the parsonage of Dulverton being lyable to sequestration as part of the Estate of one John Byam a sequestred delinquent, which by fradulent means & false pretenses of the said Byam, hath bin diverse yeeres kept ffrom sequestration to the prejudice of the Commonwealth upon reading of which petition itt was ordered that the said Byam should shew cause within 14 dayes after notice why the said parsonage should not bee sequestred otherwise an order to issue out to sequester the same: since which tyme the sayd Byam hath shewed noe Cause more than his petition putt in to make longer delayes and to abuse & delude your Honors with all being as full of falsehood as words: as by the originall orders of the Committee by which ye said Byam was sequestred in June, 1646 doth appeare, & where as hee sayeth in his petition that hee conveyed away the said parsonage unto Thomas Balch in ye yeere 1649, wee know to bee noe lesse false then ye Rest of his petition, ffor to our knowledg the said Thomas Balch was Buried the twenty third day of July, 1648.

Your petitioners therfore Humbly pray that acording to your fformer order an order may issue out forthwith to sequester the said parsonage that the Commonwealth

---

[62] *State Papers Domestic Interregnum.* Volume G. 81 fo. 319.

may bee noe longer prejudiced by such false and fraudulent pretenses & your petitioners shall pray.

HENRY SEYMOUR
ALDRED CRUSE.

[*Endorsed*] Dulverton Inhabitants
rec[d] 14 Feb., 1651.

By the Commissioners ffor Compounding with Delinquents, 17 December, 1651.[63]

Upon the petition of the parishoners of Dulverton in the County of Summersett alledging that the parsonage of Dulverton which is lyable to sequestration ffor the delinquency of John Byam of ye said County is kept ffrom sequestration upon pretence of a lease made by him to one Thomas Balch who is since dead, and his pretended right Claymed by one George Pippin who as is alledged hath had severall months given him to make out his title and hath not don the same itt is therfore ordered that the said John Byam doe within foureteene dayes after notice heereof shew cause to us why the said parsonage should not bee sequestred otherwise an order to issue out to sequester the same.

SAMUELL MOYER, EDWARD WINSLOW.
WILLIAM MOLLINGS
RICHARD MOORE.

To the Hono[ble] ye Com[rs] for Compounding w[th] Delinq.[ts] The Humble peticon of John Byam of Clatworthy in ye County of Somersett, Clerke.[64]

Sheweth

That by peticon presented to yo[r] hono.[rs] by some of the parishoners of Dulverton in the said County of Somsett

[63] *State Papers Domestic Interregnum.* Volume G. 81, fo. 321.
[64] *State Papers Domestic Interregnum.* Volume G. 81 fo. 323.

yo^{r} pet^{r} was required by yo^{r} Order beareing date ye 17th of Dec^{r} last hereunto annexed to shew Cause why the psonage of Dulverton aforesaid should not be seq.^{d} for his delinq.^{cy} and that he should shew Cause to ye Contrary thereof w^{ch} yo^{r} pet^{r} is able sufficiently to doe, for he never adhered to or any way assisted ag^{t} the pliam^{t} or did any Act w^{ch} may bring him wth in the Compasse of Seq.^{con} And besides in ye year 1649 for valuable Consideracon he Conveyed away the said psonage to Thomas Balch who since sold the same to Thomas Pippin as by severall Deeds of Purchase ready to be produced will appeare as alsoe by the peticoner his just manifestacon concerning ye same under his hand hereunto annexed w^{ch} he is ready further to make appeare by oath to yo^{r} Com.^{rs} in the Cuntrey being aged about 70 yeares and not able to travile.

Yo.^{r} pet.^{r} therefore humbly praies y^{t} the said Purchasors may quietly enjoy ye said Parsonage of Dulverton and that yo^{r} pet^{r} & them may bee dismissed from farther trouble & attendance concerning the same.

And he shall pray &c.

JOHN BYAM.

By the Com.^{rs} for Compounding &c.

28° Januarii *1651*.[65]

Upon the peticon of John Byam of Clatworthy in the County of Somersett Clerke (a Coppie whereof is hereunto annexed & attested by our Reg.^{r}) And upon perusall of our order of ye 17th of Decemb last grounded upon a peticon presented in ye name of ye pishoners of Dulverton in ye said County of Somset whereby wee

---

[65] *State Papers Domestic Interregnum*. Volume G. 81 fo. 325. (In Volume G. 15 pages 140 and 228 there are copies of the above.)

ordered y^{t} ye said John Byam should within fourteen daies after notice shew cause to us why ye psonage of Dulverton should not be seq.^{d} otherwise an order to issue forth to seq.^{r} the same. Now for y^{t} he hath accordingly fyled his peticon herenow read sheweing cause why ye same should not be seq.^{d}, And not any pson appeareing to make good w^{t} is alleadged in ye said peticon of y^{e} pishon^{rs} of Dulverton. It is therefore Ordered y^{t} ye peticoner be discharged & ye purchasers of ye said psonage pmitted to enjoy ye same wthout interrupcon if ye Com^{rs} for seq^{cons} in ye said County of Somsett can say nothing against it whereof they are to take notice & all other psons whom it concernes.

14 March. 51
judgem.^{t} being given in the Case
already the Com.^{rs} can do nothing
further in the Case.

To the Honorable Commissioners for Compounding &c.[66]

In obedience to yo^{r} order, & to give you satisfacon touching the peticon of some few of the pishioners of Dulverton (To omitte my p^{r}tended delinquency) w^{ch} all the world canot prove against mee, & the sequestracon wthout cause w^{ch} I feele to sensibly in mee & mine, & the implacable hatred of those Informers against mee for Sixteene yeares & more through my opposinge theire pretended customes, & overthrowing them in Chancery & Comon Law, when I was somtimes Viccar theire, & the joyninge of one Henry Seamo^{r} now Viccar of the saide Dulverton with them against mee, for no other cause but for reproving his idle & evill courses, (to omitt

[66] *State Papers Domestic Interregnum.* Volume G. 68, fo. 695.

all this) though all this bee moste true) as lookeing or hoping for no advantage att all by thease things: (I say) where as yt is aleaged that the psonage of Dulverton is kept from sequestracon under pretence of a Lease made by mee unto Tho: Balch deceased, That the saide Tho: Balch had a real lease by the advise of Counsell learned in the Law, made over unto him by myself under my hand & seale, & delivered as my act & deede for divers causes & consideracons theire in expressed, bearing date 1639; the w^{ch} he convaied being doubtfull of his life, having beene long sicke of a dropsy, unto his brother in Law George Pippin, after he had 8 yeares or there aboutes, quietly enjoyed the same, since w^{ch} time by the mallice of the foresaid pishioners, he hath been questioned before the Comittee, & since before the Comissioners for this County of Somersett, for the saide Lease, where in he hath given such satisfacon as the Com (as I am informed) doe rest contented & have accepted at his hands, untyll yt shall otherwise appeare unto them: And this is enough (as I conceive) & as much as can & may be said herein, though I believe my neglect in answering if theire had been any, would not bee cause to sequester another mans knowne right. This is as much as I can say, & unto this I will depose; And I beseech yo^{r} Hono^{rs} not to finde fault with my answere for want of forme, for I am a poore man, & canot pay a Counselor or Advocate to draw yt up as you may expect, but I know how to sett forth the truth in plaine words, w^{ch} I doubt not but you will favorably receive att the hands of

yo^{r} humble servant

JOHN BYAM.

[*Endorsed*] John Byam's Pet.
rec.^{d} 20 Jan. 1651 (2)
28 Jan. 1651.

The Rev. Thomas Balch and his wife, Elizabeth Byam, had several children as follows:—

4. I. Francis Balch, baptized at Tavistock, Devon, May 19th, 1641.[67] He matriculated at Oxford University, Magdelen Hall, July 12th, 1661.[68]

4. II. John Balch, baptized at Tavistock, May 22d, 1642.[69] He lived at first at Spitalfields, County Middlesex, and afterwards at Stephney in the same county. His will was proved in 1682. He married Katherine Wheeler, who died August 30th, 1769. They had a daughter, Elizabeth Balch.

4. III. Thomas Balch, baptized at Dulverton, July 9th, 1646; he was living in 1648.

4. IV. Robert Balch, "gent.," matriculated at Oxford University, St. Alban Hall, June 3rd, 1668.[70]

3. II. John Balch was baptized at North Curry September 23rd, 1604; his will was proved at Wells,

[67] "1641, May 19, Francis the sonne of Mr. Thomas Balch, schoolmaster of this town was baptized." Parish of Tavistock, County Devon, *Register of Baptisms*. Letter of the Rev. Henry G. Le Neven, Rector of Tavistock, November 23rd, 1904.

[68] *Alumni Oxonienses: The Members of the University of Oxford, 1500–1714*, by Joseph Foster, Oxford, 1891.

[69] "1642, May 22, John the sonne of Mr. Thomas Balch, schoolmaster baptized." Parish of Tavistock, County Devon, *Register of Baptisms*. Letter of the Rev. Henry E. Le Neven, Rector of Tavistock, November 23rd, 1904.

[70] *Alumni Oxonienses: The Members of the University of Oxford, 1500–1714*, by Joseph Foster, Oxford, 1891.

1671, by his wife Margaret Balch. He married first at North Curry, November 26th, 1632, Joan Browne, and secondly Margaret ——. By his first wife he had seven children:—

4. I. John Balch, baptized at North Curry in 1643 and died in the same year.

4. II. Eleanor Balch, baptized in 1633 and living in 1671.

4. III. Thomasine Balch, baptized in 1636.

4. IV. Joan Balch, baptized in 1638, died 1639.

4. V. John Balch, died 1652.

4. VI. Amy Balch, named in her father's will, 1671.

3. III. Joan Balch, born and died at North Curry in 1609.

3. IV. Robert Balch, third son and youngest child of John Balch of North Curry, yeoman, was baptized there March 29th, 1607. He studied at Merton College,[71] Oxford, where he received the B. A. degree June 21st, 1632, and the M. A. in 1635. From 1641 to Christmas, 1653, he was head master of Sherborne Grammar School; he served as rector of Bleadon, Somerset. His will is dated 1655. He married Frances ——, who in 1658 was recorded as widow and executrix. They had four children:—

---

[71] *Alumni Oxonienses: The Members of the University of Oxford, 1500–1714;* by Joseph Foster, Oxford, 1891.

4. I. Robert Balch, born *circa* 1654, studied at Wadham College, Oxford, where he received the B. A. degree in 1673 and the M. A. in 1676. He was a fellow of the University in 1676, a proctor in 1680 and subwarden in 1685.[72]

4. II. Katherine Balch,
4. III. Elizabeth Balch,
4. IV. Joan Balch,

} All three minors in 1655: Two married before 1682, one a Merriman, one a Vining, and all three were living in 1682.

3. THE BRIDGWATER GROUP.

This group, which was probably settled at Bridgwater before Elizabeth began to reign in 1558, was connected, doubtless, with William Balch who was living in 1327 not far from Bridgwater at Purye in the Hundred of North Perton or Pertherton. The records of the church of Saint Mary the Virgin at Bridgwater tell us that Eleanor Balch was buried there on January 20th, 1570, John Balch was married to Avice Popham April 19th, 1574, Isable Balch was married to Thomas Smyth January 30th, 1579, and Avice Balch was buried April 17th, 1585. The early entries are not complete. But about the

[72] *Alumni Oxonienses: The Members of the University of Oxford, 1500–1714;* by Joseph Foster, Oxford, 1891.

middle of the seventeenth century two brothers (1. A) Robert Balch and (1. B) George Balch were living at Bridgwater.[73]

1. A. Robert Balch, who was born in 1631, married three times; first he married at Bridgwater, Mary Tuck, September 18th, 1660, she died January 28th, 1672—secondly, he married Susanna ——, her will is dated at Taunton in 1677, and she died March 22, 1677—and third he married Elizabeth Everard, who was living in 1704 at the time of his death. Robert Balch was Mayor of Bridgwater in 1689 and 1696, and his name is among the names of Mayors painted in the Town Hall; he represented the Borough in Parliament in 1691–2.[74] He died in April, 1705, and was buried on the 20th of the month in the seventy-fifth year of his age. He, like many of his family, is buried at Bridgwater in the church of Saint Mary the Virgin, and like the Horton, North Curry and Higham Balches, was a member of the English Protestant Church. Robert Balch by his first wife had seven children, and by his second wife one child that was living March 26th, 1677. The seven children of Robert Balch and his first wife, Mary Tuck, were:—

---

[73] The facts and information about this "group" were furnished in part by the Rev. Dr. Arthur H. Powell, Vicar of Bridgwater and Rural Dean, and the Rev. W. M. K. Warren, curate of Bridgwater, from the Bridgwater registers. The known records do not show which, Robert or George Balch, was the older.

[74] *Members of Parliament: Ordered by the House of Commons to be printed, 1 March 1878*, Part I., page 568.

SAINT MARY THE VIRGIN,

BRIDGWATER, SOMERSETSHIRE.

2. I. Robert Balch, baptized at Bridgwater September 8th, 1661, and died June 13th, 1682.

2. II. Mary Balch, baptized at Bridgwater July 14th, 1663. She married on April 14th, 1685, John Harvey at Chilton Trinity. She was living a widow in January 1736.

2. III. George Balch.

2. IV. Elizabeth Balch, baptized September 27th, 1665.

2. V. John Balch, died May 2nd, 1673.

2. VI. Ann Balch, married Bartholomew Parr.

2. VII. Hannah Balch, died September 28th, 1676.

2. III. George Balch was baptized at Bridgwater November 16th, 1667. He was Mayor of the town in 1699 and 1709, and his name appears among the list of the Mayors whose names are painted in the Town Hall. He represented the Borough in Parliament from 1700 to 1708.[75] He was buried in January, 1738. He married Susanna Everard. They had eleven children in all:—

3. I. John Balch, born 1697.

3. II. Elizabeth Balch, baptized March 14th, 1698.

---

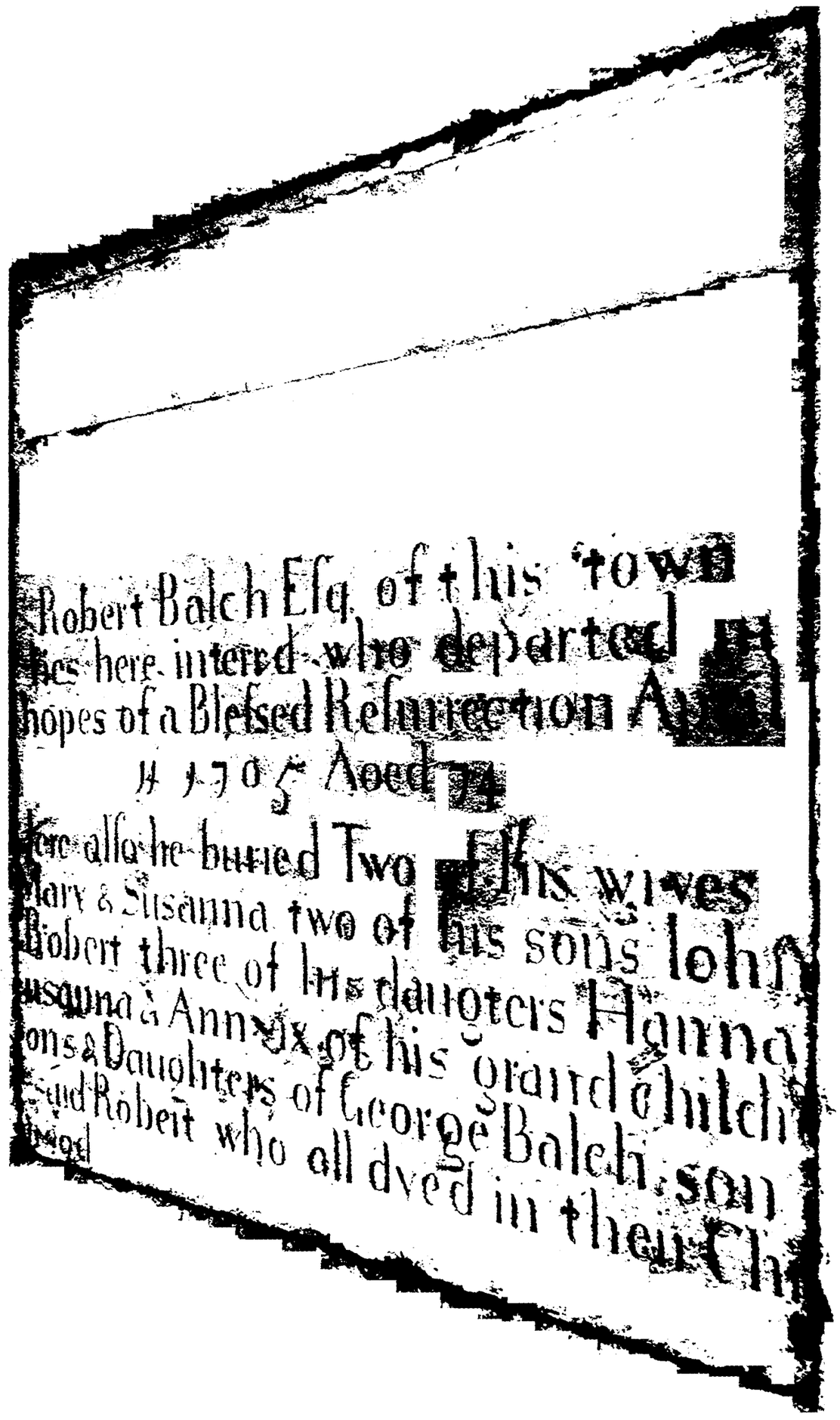
[75] *Members of Parliament: Ordered by the House of Commons to be printed, 1 March 1878,* Part I., page 603, Part II., page 5.

3. III. Henry Balch, baptized June 5th, 1701.
3. IV. Robert Balch.
3. V. George Balch, baptized at Bridgwater March 14th, 1700.
3. VI–XI. Six children who died infants among whom were Robert Balch, buried June 17th, 1682, and John Balch, died April 4th, buried April 9th, 1696.

3. I. John Balch was born at Bridgwater and baptized April 18th, 1697. He was buried November 14th, 1732. He married on October 14th, 1723, in Wells Cathedral, Amy Bart. They had:—

4. I. Robert Balch, born 1724–25.
4. II. Amy Balch, born in 1725, and died April 18th, 1726.
4. III. Elizabeth Balch, born in 1726, and died July 22nd, 1729.
4. IV. Amy Balch, born in 1727–8, and died April 6th, 1728.

4. I. Robert Balch was born January 3rd, 1724, and died on April 15th, 1779. He was elected to represent the Borough in Parliament in 1753. In 1764 he bought the landed estate of Saint Audries in northwestern Somersetshire. In the *Diary* of George Bubb Dodington, Baron of Melcombe Regis, dated from 1749 to 1761, there are references to this member of the Balch family à propos of an electoral dispute in which Dodington was concerned.



TOMBSTONE IN THE CLOSE OF SAINT MARY THE VIRGIN

BRIDGWATER, SOMERSETSHIRE.

EXTRACT

"From the Diary of the late George Bubb Dodington Baron of Melcombe Regis: From March 8, 1749, to February 6, 1761." London 8ᵒᵛ 1785.

"I received an account from Bridgewater that, at the Mayor's feast, Mr. Balch, who was present, was declared candidate to succeed Mr. Poulett. I sent an abstract of the letter, with one of my own, to Mr. Pelham." **Oct. 11, 1752.**

"Saw Mr. Pelham, and spoke to him about this sudden event at Bridgewater. He agreed that it was wholly Earl Poulett's fault, in not determining and recommending somebody sooner. He seemed to be well enough satisfied, from the character I had given him of Mr. Balch." **Oct. 13, 1752.**

"Came on the election, which I lost by the injustice of the Returning Officer. The numbers were, for Lord Egmont 119, for Mr. Balch 114, for me 105. Of my good votes, 15 were rejected: 8 bad votes for Lord Egmont were received." **April 17, 1754.**

"At home I found a letter from Mr. Balch, acquainting me that he had brought Mr. Burroughs with him, to lay the Bridgewater business before the Ministry." **May 29, 1754.**

"We went to town before dinner. I told Messrs. Balch and Burroughs, that having laid the whole affair before the Duke of Newcastle upon my arrival, and he having assured me, that he would appoint a time to go through and settle it, which he had neglected to do, I would not go to him: but I advised them to wait on him, **May 30, 1754.**

and that I thought the best way would be, that Mr. Balch should write a note to acquaint his Grace, that he had brought Mr. Burroughs with him, who, in conjunction with himself, was best able to give him an account of the injustice the whole party laboured under, who thought themselves well entitled to his Grace's protection, in obtaining that justice, which they were determined to prosecute; therefore desired to know when they might wait on him, to lay that whole transaction before him."

June 1, 1754. "Waited on the Duke of Dorset. Mr. Balch resolved to write the note I advised (of which I gave him a draught) and send it that night."

June 3, 1754. "Went to the Duke of Dorset's, and acquainted him with my situation with the Ministry. Went to the House. Mr. West desired to speak with me—said that Mr. Balch had written to the Duke of Newcastle (which letter he shewed me) who had appointed to see him on Thursday; but the Duke desired to see me first. I told him, that I would go to him to-morrow."

June 4, 1754. "Went early to the Duke of Newcastle's. He told me that he had received a letter from Mr. Balch, but desired to advise with me, before he saw him: that nothing was settled, or he should have sent to me long before: that he was against multiplying petitions, for reasons obvious to me: that he knew nothing of Lord Egmont; but had heard that he sometimes talked as if he was willing to battle it: that if it should be made a point, he did not know, if we were certain of carrying it: that Lord Egmont would make a party: that possibly, the Princess might wish he should be let alone, or at

least, that those of the late Prince's servants might be for him. I said, that I had laid this affair before him already; that he knew, I had pushed it in the country with such an expence and trouble, and so absolutely, considering it a service which the King (as his brother told me) wished: that it had cost me 3,400£ that I was fairly chosen, nor would the Returning Officer have dared not to return me, had he not been encouraged by the servants of the administration: that the borough was lost solely by a Lord of the Bedchamber and the Custom-house Officers: that they might retrieve it, or not, just as they pleased; leave it in Tory hands, or recover it, get rid of Lord Egmont, as an opponent, or keep him in, as a friend, I should neither be satisfied or dissatisfied with it, I should not be obliged by the one, or disobliged by the other. I dealt clearly with him, and desired to be understood without any ambiguity: I had told him this before, and my opinion and resolution was the same. He said, he acknowledged it, and desired me to advise what was to be done. I told him, I could not advise, because I did not know the truth of my own situation; it was time to come to a full explanation upon that head, for it must come to a decision: that I had done all the services in my power, and spent very great sums, of all which they, now, had the benefit; that I had made no bantering bargains, but had done it frankly, with a plain, avowed, and accepted intention to take off the edge of the King's ill-grounded resentment, and prove my attachment to his Grace; to shew myself his immediate friend. * * * A few lines were in this place torn, by an accident, from the Manuscript. * * * I replied, it must come to a conclusion, one way or another: after ac-

cepting both offer and execution of all I could do, I was to remain under an absolute proscription, and exclusion from all favour, that every other subject of my rank might justly expect, I must do as I could, but it must be explained and fully. He said, he himself liked to deal explicitly, and to understand clearly what was expected: that he had laid my services before the King in the best manner he could; though some people (of whom he would inform me afterwards) had endeavored to insinuate to his Majesty, that I had not the power I pretended to at Weymouth. I asked him, if he himself did not tell me in that room, that he had declared to the King, that the borough was redelivered into my hands, on the express condition to take his election of two, for that time only? * * * this being the opposite side of the leaf, which was mentioned before to have been torn, a few lines are also here wanting. * * * he would do it in the best manner he was able: that it had been insinuated, and he had not said, expressly, that he would; but had not said, he would not: that if I had my view upon any particular thing, or office, he would move it, and try to get it, in the most cordial manner. I said, as to going to the King, I would pospone that consideration for a minute: that, as to the last, he well knew I never thought of making bargains, that I left that matter totally to him. He said, that there were few things that a man of my rank coud accept, and that none of them were vacant: I said, it was true, but I did not impute that to him. that as he was at the head of the Treasury, I should chuse a seat there, if it was vacant, sooner than any thing, but I could not take that; at the same time I begged he would observe, that I did not expect to be

Privy Seal, if Lord Gower should die; that I did not come to make bargains for this, or that thing, or time; he had forced me, before I went into the West to say, that Sir Thomas Robinson's office, or my own again (both which were then vacant) I should like very well; he gave them away without considering me. I desired nobody to be removed, much less to die. He must think that 2000£ a year would not make my fortune, with one foot in the grave: that as to rank, I had heard that the King was odd about titles: that I had as much respect for the Peerage as any man, but he could not but see, that, in my situation, without succession or collateral, a Peerage to me, was not worth the expence of new painting my coach: that I desired to pass my life as his attached friend and servant, persuaded that he would, as such, do me favourable justice the first opportunity that offered. He said, that he understood me very well: that I could have no competitor in the House of Commons; I expected then any employment that I could take, which should first fall; and added, I suppose you will be disobliged, if you have not the very first that falls. I demurred a little at the oddness and bluntness of the proposition, and did not well conceive the intention of it, but after a little pause, said,—that is a hard word, my Lord, I do not absolutely say that. There may be, possibly, reasons that my real friendship for him might make me acquiesce in; I will not say so hard a word at once; the case will speak itself, but it must come to a positive issue—and now, my Lord, I must resume the offer your Grace made of going immediately to the King, to demand a categorical answer, whether he be determined, after all I have done and spent for his service (of which he now reaps

the utility) to suffer no return to be made me, when opportunity throws it in the way, but to exclude me from all the advantages I am entitled to, in common with the rest of his subjects, both of my rank and my services? As to his resolution, it must be known, but as you profess your sincere desire, that I should be properly considered, it lies upon you to do it in the best manner, and at the properest time: I do not prescribe to morrow or the next day, this week or the next; but as this is the only obstacle, it must be known, absolutely, and in a reasonable time: if I am proscribed from amongst all my fellow-subjects, I must, and shall submit to the King's pleasure with all possible respect: but as your Grace has re-assured me, that you have represented what I have done, fairly and favourable to him; till I know it from your Grace, I cannot believe that so just and generous a Prince would accept a poor subject's offers of service, and suffer him to carry them into execution, at so great an expence, with a resolution absolutely to exclude him from all sorts of common favour. I thought it would be what never happened before, or to me only. He said, he would do everything in his power, and did not imagine it could end so. I told him, that I heartily wished it might not, but it must end one way or another, it must not remain as it was; for I was determined to make some sort of figure in life: I earnestly wished it might be under his protection, but if that could not be, I must make some figure; what it would be, I could not determine yet; I must look around me a little, and consult my friends, but some figure I was resolved to make. He said, he would do his best to settle it to my satisfaction; he did not think it could end in a proscription. I said, I ought to hope

so, for my own sake; but if he should not be able to obtain common indulgence for a friend, whom he favoured and thought useful, and who had given such convincing proofs of his utility, I should be sorry for myself indeed, but I should also be sorry for him too; it was being upon a very indiferent footing indeed, I should therefore be very sorry for it, upon his account, as well as my own. He said, he would do his utmost to prevent it from coming to that, for, now, he understood me thoroughly. He then desired that we might advise together about the Bridgewater affair. I said, I thought that all attempts to quiet the Whig party there would be vain, without beginning to turn out the officers. He seemed very unwilling to go so far; and at last said, that he knew I was a man of honour, and he would trust me with a secret, which I must never reveal, not even to the Duke of Dorset; and then, after a multitude of precautions, and exacting engagements of honour from me not to divulge it: he told me, that the truth was, that he had a mind that this petition should not go on; and if I could assist him in bringing it about, he should be much obliged to me:—but if it should be known, it would be reported and believed that he had made up with Lord Egmont, which was by no means true; for, upon his honour, he had neither spoken to him, or seen him, or had any negociation with him; for he knew very well, that if the King was informed that the town was resolved to petition, and there were the least grounds to throw out Lord Egmont, he would order him to push it with the utmost vehemence. I said, I had often told him it was no cause of mine; be it how it should, I should not take it as a matter of payment or dissatisfaction: that I would certainly keep

his secret, which, however, every body would see through, if no justice was done: that I would do all I could with Mr. Balch and the town, to quiet them; but that, without punishing the officers, I feared he would find it impracticable, which he would better judge of when he saw Messrs. Balch and Burroughs on Thursday. What, if he offered the alternative, and tried to make the giving up the officers, the price of dropping all farther proceedings? He said, it was a good thought, and he must scramble off as well as he could. So we parted, with usual protestations."

June 6, 1754. "I saw Messrs. Balch and Burroughs, who had been at the Duke of Newcastle's. His Grace had talked them over, but nothing positive, not so much as punishing the offenders, but he told Mr. Balch that he would send Lord Dupplin to him—While they were with me, Lord Dupplin was at Mr. Balch's, and soon after they met, talked very amicable, and agreed to meet here on Teusday. This haste to see Mr. Balch, was in order to learn all he could, that he might talk it over with the Duke at Clermont, between Saturday and Teusday."

June 13. "I saw Messrs. Balch and Burroughs, who had been with the Duke of Newcastle, and were promised by him, in the strongest terms, that our party should be supported."

Robert Balch married Susanna Everard, who was born in 1724 and died in 1767. They had nine children:—

5. I. Robert Everard Balch, born in 1745, died young.

5. II. Robert Everard Balch, born 1746, died young.
5. III. Robert Everard Balch, of Saint Audries.
5. IV. Susanna Balch, died young.
5. V. Susanna Balch, died in 1767.
5. VI. Elizabeth Balch married the Rev. R. Chambre of Thornton, County Chester.
5. VII. Frances Amy Balch, married G. Ward of New Castle-upon-Tyne.
5. VIII. Christina Balch, born in 1759, and died unmarried at Saint Audries in 1824.
5. IX. George Balch of Saint Audries.

5. III. Robert Everard Balch, of Saint Audries, was born in 1754 and died in 1799.[76] He was named July 17th, 1787, a Justice for Somerset, and he was also a Major of the Somerset militia and one of the subscribers to Collinson's *History of Somerset*, published at Bath in 1791.

5. IX. George Balch of Saint Audries was born November 18th, 1762, and died in 1814,[77] and was buried at Bridgwater January 14th. Like his brother Robert, he subscribed for Collinson's *History of*

---

[76] *Gentleman's Magazine*, 1799, Volume LXIX., page 622.
[77] *Gentleman's Magazine*, March, 1814, Volume LXXXIV., page 304.

Somerset. In 1805 he had some correspondence with the Rev. Dr. S. B. Balch of Georgetown, D. C.[78]

Sir Alexander Acland Hood, Bart., M. P., the present owner of Saint Audries, writes:

"JANUARY 7, 1904.

"St. Audries, Bridgwater.

"MY DEAR SIR:—I am afraid I have not a great deal of information here about the Balch Family.

"This estate was bought in 1764 by Mr. George Balch of Bridgwater, who was succeeded by his son Robert Evered, who died 1799, and was succeeded by his brother George, who died 1810, who was succeeded by his sister Christiana, who died in 1824, leaving the estate to her heir-at-law, Robert Harvey, who sold it to my Grandfather, Sir Peregrine Acland. I wish I could tell you more. When I was a boy many old people here remembered Miss Christiana Balch well, and spoke of her with great affection and regard.

"The proper place for your Book is the County Museum at the Castle, Taunton, where I am sure your Book would be much valued, especially as, curiously enough, it occupies the Hall in which Judge Jeffreys held the 'Bloody Assize' after Monmouth's Rebellion.

"Yours very truly,

"A. ACLAND HOOD.

"*T. W. Balch, Esq.*

"The address is

'Hon. Secretary

Somerset Archæological Society

The Castle, Taunton.'"

---

[78] These letters were burnt in the fire that destroyed Dr. Balch's house in 1831.

TOMBSTONE ON THE FLOOR OF SAINT MARY THE VIRGIN.

BRIDGWATER, SOMERSETSHIRE.

Returning to (1. B) George Balch, who with his brother Robert (see page 62) was living in Bridgwater about the middle of the seventeenth century, it is known he was buried there in the church of Saint Mary the Virgin on March 26th, 1678. His will and the inventory of his estate, which follow, show that he was a leading merchant of Bridgwater.

Bridgwater Testum Georgii Balch

In the name of God Amen I George Balch of Bridgwater in the County of Somersett Mercer being weak of Body but of perfect mind & memory do (revoking all others) make & ordain this my Last Will & Testament in Manner and form following Imprimis I committ my Soul to Almighty God my Maker hopeing for the pardon of all my Sins through the Merritt & mediation of Jesus Christ my Saviour & Redeemer & my Body to Christian buriall hopeing for a Joyfull resurrection at the last & great day Item I give & bequeath unto Ann my Wife all that estate term or terms of years that I now have for or by reason of my intermarriage with her and that I injoyed in right of her my wife Item I give & bequeath to the said Ann my wife my now dwelling house with the appurtenances for & during the term of fourteen years to commence from the day of my decease; if the right title & interest in the said house with the appurtenances I now have do so long continue) in consideracon of a Sufficient Maintenance & schooling of George Balch my son for & during the aforesaid term. And after the expiracon of the aforesaid fourteen years I give & bequeath the aforementioned house with its appurtenances unto the said George my son for & during the full term & time that shall be then to come & unexpired And also I do

hereby desire and impower my Trusty and well beloved Brother & friends hereafter menconed to bargain for & buy my said Sons life into the aforementioned dwelling house I give & bequeath all my household stuff Plate and utensills belonging to housekeeping to my wife & Children now born or to be born equally to be divided between them & the Severall parts & proportion of each child to be delivered to him or her as he or they shall attaine the age of one & Twenty or Marry which shall first happen Item All the Rest of my Goods Chattalls & Creditts (my debts being paid & my funerall charges defrayed) I give and bequeath unto George my Son, Mary & Ann my Daughters now alive & to the Child or Children (my Wife may now go withall &) yet unborn equally to be divided between them only my Will further is that the cost of the life of my Son George to be bought into the aforemenconed house be allowed out of his proportion mencconed aforesaid And if either of my aforesaid Children now alive & yet unborn shall happen to dye before either of them attain the age of one & Twenty or Marry that then each of their said proporcons so dying be equally divided & remain to the Survivor or Survivors of them And further my Will is that if it shall happen that my said Son George Balch shall dye before the fourteen years above mentioned be expired that then the Income of the said dwelling house for the residue and remainder of years then to come & unexpired be equally divided (after the aforemenconed fourteen years be expired) between my Wife & Surviving child or children And lastly I do request–desire & hereby impower constitute & appoint my Trusty & well beloved Brother Robert Balch & my Trusty & well beloved friends

Mr. John Gardner Senior & Roger Hoar Senior to be my Executors in Trust for my aforesaid Wife & Children & and see this my Will faithfully performed giving them or either of them power on the death of either of them to chose another In Witness hereof I have hereunto sett my hand & Seal this Seventeenth day of March in the year of our Lord God according to the computacon of the Church of England One thousand Six hundred Seventy Seven.

GEORGE BALCH

Signed & Published in the
presence of
FFRANCIS TUTHILL
EDW. WHITEHEAD
NATHANIEL BLINMAN.

SEAL.
A skeleton standing on withering grass with a dart pointed downwards in the right hand and holding an hour glass with the left.

[Indorsement] Bridgwater T.
GEORGE BALCH.

Vicesimo quarto die mens Martii Anno Dni (Styl Angl) 1678° Ad ^{to} omnin et singulorum bonorum &c. dicti defti cum Testo suo hmoi annex duran monor cetatibus Georgii Balch Mariae Balch et Annae Balch Legatarioru priulium atranoinatoru et ad aorum usum &c. concessa fuit p discretum virum Mgrum Jacobum Douch Clicum Artium Bacchum Surrum Venlis Viri Guilielmi Peirs sacrae Theo.^{æ} Dris Archini Taunton Quibusdam Roberto Balch et Rogero Hoare Execubus ffidejussor intranoinalis durand minor aetatibus dcrum Minorum et Legatarioru de bene et laudabilit^{r} tuend et-educando dcos Minores et Legatarios durantibus eorum Minobis aetatibus ac de bene et fidlr adjuado bona &c. dicti defti duran: minor aetabus dcrum Minorum et Legatarioru et ad eorum usum &c. dqz Compto &c. jurat &c. salvo jura Cigus canqz.

A true and perfect Inventory of all the Goods Chattells & Creditts of George Balch late of Bridgwater deceased taken and apprized by William Methwyn & William Cooper this one & Twentyeth day of February $167\frac{8}{9}$.

	l.	s.	d.
Imp^{r}. mis His wearing Apparrell.....	0010	00	00
In the Little Parlour			
5 Lether Chaires, 1 Matted Chair & a Side Table	0001	02	00
In the Celler under ye Parlour			
6 half hh Tuninger 2 little Barrells one great Stoole... one Beer horse.....	0001	06	08
In the Little Buttery			
2 Barrells, a little stool & a horse	0000	06	08
In the Kitchen			
1 Table Board, one Presse one Skreen & Settle..... 2 low lether Chaires 2 Matted Chaires 1 childs chair ..... Two p^{r}. of fire grates 1 p^{r} of Andirons, 2 joynt stooles.. a p^{r}. of Tongues, 2 fire panns, 2 frying panns, 1 Jack..... 3 Spitts, 1 fire fork, 1 Tosting Iron & other things.....	006	00	00
Item in Bookes.....	0005	00	00

	l.	s.	d.
In the Great Buttery			
1 Table board, 1 dresser, 1 Iron Dripping pan and other Small things	0000	06	08
Item 4 Potts con: 8^{t}_{4} at 6^{d} ..... 02 02 00 73^{t} of Brasse at 12^{d}. 03 13 00 1130^{t} of Pewter at 8^{d}. 04 06 08	0010	01	08
193 of Plate at 5s	0048	05	00
In the Several Chambers			
$6^{1}07$ of ffether Beds & Bolsters & pillows at 8^{d}.	0020	04	08
1 fflock Bed con. 37^{l}	0000	12	00
In the great Parlour			
18 Lether Chaires one double Table Board, one Side Table one pair of Doggs one fire pan & tongues, 2 Carpetts 4 Mapps & 4 Stooles.....	0006	07	04
In the Parlour Chamber.			
7 Lether chaires, one Side board, one Presse, 2 Looking Glasse, 1 p^{r} of Andirons 1 p^{r}. of curtains & valance, 1 Rugg, 1 p^{r} of Blanketts 1 chest of Drawers & 1 Window Curtain	0007	06	08
In the Passages			
6 Lether chairs 1 great timber chair two side Tables, one Chest, 1 Presse.....	0002	02	06

	l.	s.	d.
In the Swan Chamber			
4 Lether chairs 1 Stoole 1 Side Table 1 chest of drawers 2 p^{r}. of Andirons 1 pr of Bellows 1 Standing Bedstead 1 Trundle Bedstead 1 p^{r}. of curtains & valance, 3 Ruggs 2 p^{r} & half of Blanketts 2 Window curtains & 1 Small looking Glasse....	0006	17	00
Item a p^{r}. of Blew Curtains & valance	0001	10	00
In the Middle Chamber			
1 Presse 1 livery Cupboard 1 Side Board 1 Box 3 Trunks 1 chair & 1 looking Glasse.	0003	18	08
	0131	07	06
In the Forechamber			
12 Learge chairs & Stooles, 1 Couch of ye Same 1 Chest of Drawers, 1 Side Table 1 Stand one Standing Bedstead, 6 Cushions 1 Cage & Glasses 1 p^{r} of Searge curtains & vallens wth. Silk fringe 1 Rugg, 1 p^{r}. of Blanketts 2 looking Glasses, 2 p^{r}. Andirons, 1 p^{r}. of Brass fire pan & tongues.....	0014	03	04
In the Kitchen Chamber			
1 p^{r} of curtains 1 Side board 3 chairs one Box & 1 p^{r}. of fire Doggs	0000	13	04

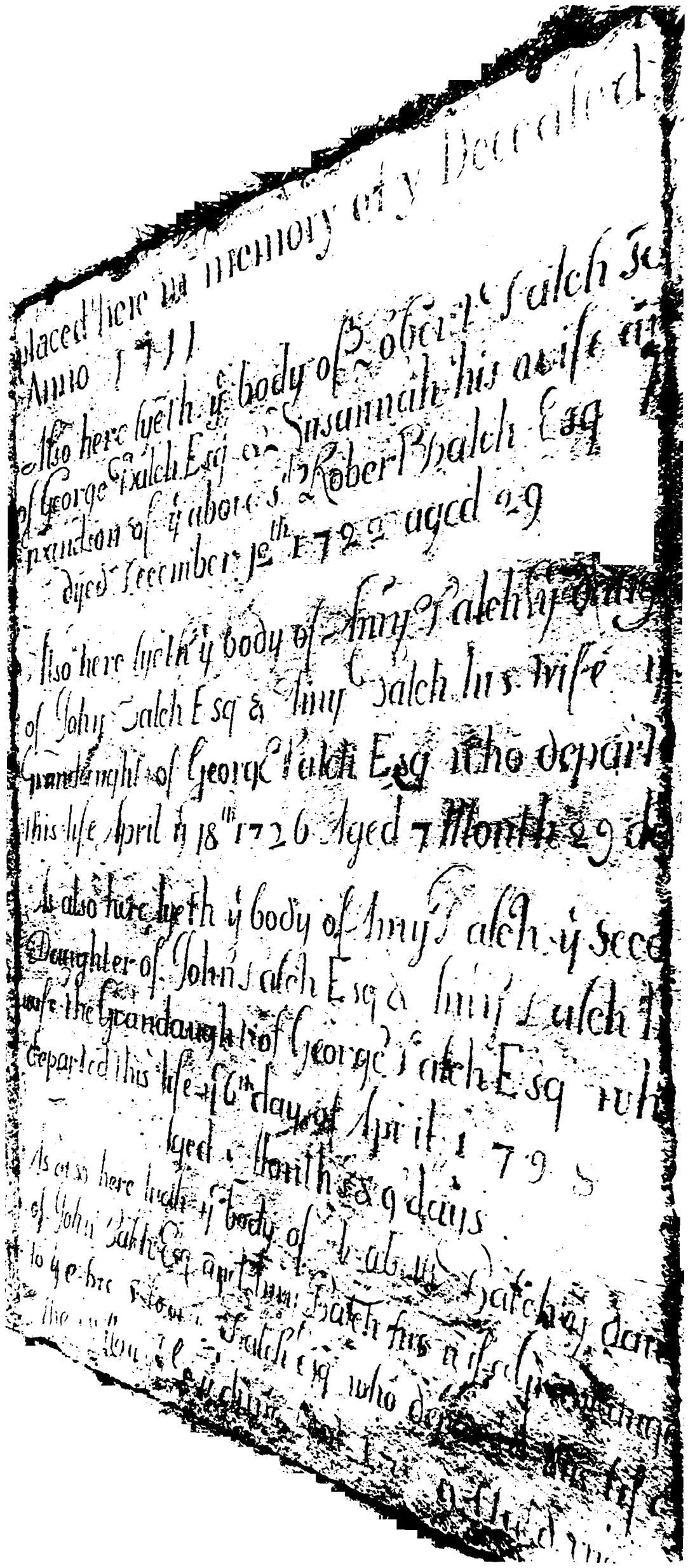
	l.	s.	d.
In the Swan Garratt			
2 Standing Bedsteads, 2 p^{r} of curtains and vallens 3 Chests 1 form 4 Blanketts and 2 Carpetts.....	0003	08	04
Item In Several Sorts of Linnen & a Suit of white Curtains.....	0014	10	00
In the Fore Garratt			
2 half headed bedsteads 2 Chests 1 Side table 1 Rugg, 1 p^{r}. Curtains & vallens and 1 p^{r}. Blanketts.....	0001	10	00
In the Closett			
5 Chaires & a Side Table...	0000	13	04
Item in money in Purse	0074	11	00
Item in debts Sperate	0878	13	02
Item in desperate debts.....	0409	12	06
Item one Chattall Lease for 2 lives after 14 years.....	020	00	00
In the Brew House			
A furnace in the Wall, a Coop and Severall Brewing vessells.....	0006	00	00
In the Passage below			
a Clock & Case	0003	00	00
In the Bolting house			
a Cheese Rack a Meal Tubb, a Salter & one other Small Tubb with other Lumber..	0000	10	00

	l.	s.	d.
In the Wood house & Stable			
1 Corn Chest 6 Planks, one Gray Mare ffurniture for horses and other Lumber .	0012	03	00
In the Warehouses			
In Severall Presses, Engines Tubbs, Boxes & other things belonging to the cutting of Tobacco	0028	07	06
In the Shopp			
In Severall Sorts of cutt Leaf & Role tobacco with other shopp goods	0381	01	07
Item Things forgotten	0000	10	00
	1849	07	01
the other side	0131	07	06
Sum Totall	1980	14	07

WILLIAM METHWYN
WILLIAM CUPER

George Balch married Ann Pearce. They had five children:—

2. I. George Balch.
2. II. George Balch.
2. III. George Balch, baptized October 7th, 1672, and buried at Bridgwater October 1st, 1695.
2. IV. Mary Balch, married July 9th, 1696, S. Codrington, of the city of Bristol.
2. V. Ann Balch, baptized May 5th, 1668, and living in 1677.


placed here in memory of y Deceased

Anno 1711

Also here lyeth y body of Robert Balch Jun

of George Balch Esq & Susannah his wife

grandson of y above s.d Robert Balch Esq

dyed December 15th 1729 aged 29

Also here lyeth y body of Amy Balch y dau

of John Balch Esq & Amy Balch his wife

Granddaught of George Balch Esq who depart

this life April y 18th 1726 Aged 7 Months 29 d

Also here lyeth y body of Amy Balch y Sec

Daughter of John Balch Esq & Amy Balch

wife the Granddaughter of George Balch Esq

departed this life 26th day of April 1795

aged 4 months 29 days

Also here lyeth y body of Isabella Balch dau

of John Balch Esq & Amy Balch his wife

Granddaught of George Balch Esq who depart

this life April 18th 1726 Aged 7 Months 29 d

TOMBSTONE IN THE CLOSE OF SAINT MARY THE VIRGIN,

BRIDGWATER, SOMERSETSHIRE.

4. THE WELLS-BRUTON GROUP.

This group would seem to begin with a Thomas Balch who was living at Wells in the latter part of the sixteenth century, and was buried there in the church of Saint Cuthbert's, January 27th, 1695. The inscription on his tombstone reads as follows: "Here lieth the body of Thomas Balch, who died the 27 of Januar 1695 and also his daughter Martha died June 11th 1694." Traditions say that he or his father was born in Bridgwater.

Individuals bearing the name of Balch are recorded in many places in Somerset, but without any other apparent connection with the foregoing four groups except the similarity of the name. Of such individuals there lived at West Chinnock, in the southern part of the county, in 1569, Robert Balche, and in the early part of the seventeenth century William Balch, a yeoman. In his will, dated December 7th, 1611, the latter says:—[79]

T Willm Bawlch

"In the name of God amen the seaventh day of December Anno Domini one thousand sixe hundred and eleaven I William Bawlche of West Chinnock in the countie of Somerset husbandman do make my last will and testament in mann' and forme following: First I bequeathe my Soul to God and my bodye to the Earthe. Itm I give to the parishe churche of Chesselborowe twoe shillings six pence. Item I give to the poore of West

[79] Prerogative Court of Canterbury, Fenner folio 32.

Chinnocke twoe shillings six pence. Item I give unto Azarias Bawlche twelve pence. Item I give unto Johane Bawlch daughter of Hughe Bawlch twelve pence. Item my will is that my sonne Peter Bawlch shall have twentie poundes And to be put to use for hym untill he come to age of one and twentie yeres. And all my houshould stuffe to remayne unto hym after my wyves decease And my wife to keepe the Boye and to bring him up to her charage as long as he will be governed by her. Item I give unto Hughe Bawlche and unto Thomas Mudford fyve shillinges a piece to the end that they shalbe overseers to see this my last will and Testament performed. The residue of all my goodes chattels and debtes not given nor bequeathed I give and bequeathe to Ellinor my wife whome I make my Executrix of this my last will and testament. Witnesses hereunto Thomas Mudford and Robert Butler.

" Probatum fuit Testamentum suprascriptum apud London coram venerabili viro Dno Johanne Benet milite legum doctore Curie Prerogative Cantuarienss, Magistro Custode sive Commissario legitime constituto vicesimo septimo die Mensis Maii Anno Domini millesimo Sexcentesimo Duodecimo Juramento Elianore Bawlche Relicte dicti defuncti et Executricis in eodem testaments nominat. Cui commissa fuit Administraco bonorum Jurium et Creditorum dicti defuncti de bene et fideliter administrand &c. ad sancta Dei Evangelia vigore Commissionis in ea parte als Emanat Jurat. ex^{r}."

Is the Hughe Bawlch referred to in the above will the Hugh Balche of Ilminster, (see *ante* page 36), who died in 1615 or 1616?

In the Archdeacon's Court at Taunton, the wills of the following individuals are recorded: Robert

Balch, Crewkerne, 1662 ; Robert Balch, Crewkerne, 1663 ; Thomas Balch, Broadway, 1670; Henry Balch, Curland, 1675; Roger Balch, Hatch Beauchamp, 1677; James Balch, Durston, 1681; and Mary Balch, Beer Crocomb, 1702.

The Balch Family of America.

During the seventeenth century *two emigrants* bearing the surname of Balch, settled in the British North American colonies,—John Balch, who immigrated to Massachusetts in 1623, and John Balch, who came over to Maryland in 1658. No connection has been found between these two emigrants, John Balch "of Maryland" and John Balch "of Massachusetts" but inasmuch as they both came from County Somerset, and that several groups of individuals bearing the same surname of Balch were living in several parts of that shire at the dates that these two John Balches came across the Atlantic to settle in two of the English colonies, it is reasonable to suppose that they were kinsmen, though probably remote ones.

JOHN BALCH "OF MASSACHUSETTS."

The first emigrant, John Balch "of Massachusetts," who came from Somersetshire to America, accompanied Captain Robert Gorges in his voyage, 1623, to New England. John Balch "of Massachusetts" was born probably before 1600.[80] Apparently he was originally a member of the Church of England, but after he settled in Massachusetts, he gave up Episcopacy and joined the local church.[81] He settled at Salem, in the field that was soon called the "old Planter's marsh." He was among the original members of the First Church of Salem, was made a freeman of that town in May, 1631, and was one of the five set-

---

[80] In *A History of the Balche Family*, compiled by William F. Balch, of New York, printed in *The New England Historical and Genealogical Register* for the year 1855 (Boston 1855, Volume IX., pages 233–238), it is stated that a George Balche was born in Somersetshire in 1536, and that he had two sons, George Balch born in 1577 and John Balch, born in 1579. The latter it is stated in this article was probably the John Balch who came to Massachusetts in 1623, and that the former was the ancestor of the Balches of Saint Audries. From all the records at present known, it is quite clear that the Balches of Saint Audries were not descended from the George Balch said to have been born in 1577, and a careful search of the records of Somerset have so far failed to reveal any record of George Balch said to have been born in 1536 or of his two sons. (In a letter dated at Bridgwater, February 14th, 1905, the Rev. Dr. Arthur H. Powell, Vicar of Bridgwater, says: "Concerning John Balch, said to have been born 1579; his brother in 1577; and their father in 1536, we have no evidence.") The Balches of Saint Audries seem to have descended from Robert Balch who was born in 1631, was married in Bridgwater in 1660, and was buried there in 1705. (See *ante*, page 62.)

[81] *Historical Collections of the Essex Institute*, Salem, Mass., 1859, Vol. I., pages 109–10.

tlers to each of whom a farm of two hundred acres was granted January 25th, 1635–6, at the head of Bass River. Three years later he removed to his farm, and lived here until his death in May, 1648.[82] He married first Margary ———, and second, Agnes Patch. By his first wife he had three sons:

I. Benjamin Balch, born during the winter of 1628–9, died after January 31st, 1714–15.

II. John Balch, born about 1630, died June 16th, 1662.

III. Freeborn Balch, born about 1631, died about 1658.

From the eldest son, Benjamin, a large and numerous family has sprung that has spread over the New England and the Northern States to the Pacific coast.[83]

To this family belonged the Rev. William Balch, who was born at Beverly, Mass., September 30th, 1704. He graduated at Harvard College in 1724, and was pastor of the new church at Bradford, New Groveland, from 1727 for a period of over sixty years. He died January, 1792. Among his printed works there are these two sermons:

---

[82] *Historical Collections of the Essex Institute*, Salem, 1857, Vol. I., page 151.

[83] An exhaustive and good account of the Massachusetts family is given in *Genealogies of the Balch Families in America*, by Galusha B. Balch, M. D.; Salem, Mass., 1897 ; but the account of the Maryland family given in that book is not accurate.

Concerning the Massachusetts family, see also, *First Reunion and Organization of the Balch Family Association, by the descendants of John Balch, one of the "Old Planters" of Naumkeag, now Salem, Beverly, and North Beverly, Massachusetts;* 1905.

"Mr. Balch's Sermon at the Ordination of Mr. Benjamin Parker. The Duty of Ministers to aim at *promoting*, and *being Partakers* of the Gospel. A Sermon Preach'd at the Ordination of Mr. *Benjamin Parker* To the Pastoral Care of a Church in *Haverhill, November 28, 1744.* Made publick at the Desire of the venerable *Council* (consisting of Eleven Churches) conven'd on that Occasion, and a considerable Number of other Ministers and Gentlemen. By William Balch, A. M., Pastor of a Church in *Bradford.* 'He stood in too much Awe of his great Master, to fear or know any Man, [in the Discharge of his duty] or to be sway'd by any worldly Considerations. He believ'd firmly, that he must render an Account of his Conduct at the Day of Judgment, and wisely resolv'd to act, as that he might do it with rejoicing.' *Life of* Dr. Gale. *Boston:* Printed by Rogers and Fowle, for J. Edwards in Cornhill. 1744." The text of the sermon was: "I Cor. IX. 23. *And this I do for the Gospel's Sake, that I might be Partaker thereof with you.*"

"Mr. *Balch's* Sermon Before the Convention, *May 29, 1760.* Simplicity and godly Sincerity, in a Christian Minister, the sure Way to Happiness. A Sermon preached before the *annual* Convention of Ministers, in Boston, N. E., May 29, 1760. By William Balch, A. M., Minister of the second Church in Bradford. Boston N. E. *Printed by* B. Macom, *at the* New Printing-Office, *near the* Town-House, MDCCLX." The text of the sermon was; "*II Cor. I. 12. For our rejoicing is this, the Testimony of our Conscience, that in Simplicity and godly Sincerity, not with fleshly Wisdom, but by the Grace of God, we have had our Conversation in the World, and more abundantly to you-wards.*"

Among the descendants of John Balch "of Massachusetts" was the Rev. Thomas Balch, who was born in Charlestown, Mass., October 17th, 1711. After graduating at Harvard College in 1733, he prepared for the ministry of the Congregational Church, and was ordained at South Dedham, June 30th, 1736. In 1744 he was a Chaplain in the expedition against Cape Breton. The following account that he wrote of that expedition is in the records of the South Parish at Dedham.

"Having an Inclination and being desired by the Committee of War to attend the Army as one of the Chaplains in the Expedition against Cape Breton, I accordingly obtained consent of my People on March 11, 1744–5 and on the 13, took my leave of my family and People. Arrived in Safety & Health at Canso on the 2nd of April. Sailed from Canso to Cape Breton on April 29, entered Chappeaurouge Bay the next morning, and soon after went on Shore. The seige of Louesborg continued until June 17. On which Day we entered and took possession of that Strong & important place, upon Terms of Capitulation. Sailed from Louisborg for New England, July 11, arrived in Safety at Boston on the 27 of 3rd month, 1745, Laus Deo."

He published: *Preaching the Gospel*, sermon, Edgertown, July 29th, 1747, at the ordination of D. Newman, Boston, 1747;—*Christ present with his ministers and churches*, sermon, October 9th, Boston, 1748;—*A Sermon* (on Dan. IV. 35) *preached to the Ancient and Honorable Artillery Company* at Bos-

ton, *June 6th, 1763, Being the Anniversary of their Election of Officers.* Boston, Mass., 1763; *A Sermon* (on Luke XI. 28) *preached at the ordination of Mr. B.* (enjamin) *Balch;* Providence, 1769.

The Rev. Thomas Balch married Mary Sumner, left a number of children, and died at South Dedham, January 8th, 1774.

Another descendant of John Balch "of Massachusetts" was the late F. H. Balch, who lived on the Pacific Coast, and wrote *The Bridge of the Gods: A Romance of Indian Oregon.*[84] First published in 1890, by 1902 it had reached a seventh edition. It is a description of the Indians of our north west Pacific Coast. The story begins in New England towards the end of the seventeenth century, where a young Puritan clergyman, the Reverend Cecil Gray, decides to carry the Gospel to the Indians of the Far West. Then the scene changes to the valley of the Columbia River in Oregon. There the warlike Willamettes, with their war chief, Multnomah, head a powerful confederacy of the tribes. The story is wrapped around the legends of the great natural bridge,—The Bridge of the Gods—that two hundred years ago, according to Indian traditions, that have come down in several languages, spanned the mighty Columbia River, where

---

[84] *The Bridge of the Gods: A Romance of Indian Oregon*, by F. H. Balch. Chicago, A. C. McClurg and Company, 1902. Seventh Edition. The preface is dated at Oakland, California, September, 1890.

to-day are the rapids. With the fall of the bridge, falls the power of the Willamettes and passes to the "palefaces." The book is well written and interesting.

To the Massachusetts family belonged also the late Francis Vergnies Balch, an eminent member of the Boston Bar. He was born in 1839, and graduated at Harvard with the class of 1859, "of which he was both the first scholar and class orator." In January, 1893, he was elected a member of the Colonial Society of Massachusetts.

At a largely attended Bar Meeting, held in the Supreme Judicial Court Room, at Boston, March 26th, 1898, in memory of his career as a member of the Bar, appropriate resolutions were adopted and entered upon the record of the Court.[85] John C. Gray, Esq., Alexander S. Wheeler, Esq., Felix Rackemann, Esq., and other members of the Boston Bar spoke. Upon the presentation of the resolutions to the Court, Mr. Justice Barker made a speech of acceptance and ordered that they should be placed upon the records of the Court, which then adjourned.

---

[85] *Proceedings at Bar Meeting held at Boston March 26, 1898, upon the death of Francis Vergnies Balch.*

JOHN BALCH "OF MARYLAND."

The second emigrant, John Balch "of Maryland," who came from County Somerset, crossed over to Maryland in 1658,[86] not to escape political or religious persecution but to improve his fortune. According to family traditions his immediate relations supported the Parliament during the Civil War, while more remote kinsmen fought for King Charles.[87] The 30th of December, 1663, he assigned his right to fifty acres, to which he was entitled from the Province for having paid his own transportation to Maryland, to John Floyde. To that instrument John Balch made his mark, being sick at the time, like Colonel Ninian Beall when he made his

---

[86] The original entry is in *Liber 6, folio 89,* in the Maryland Land Office at Annapolis, and is as follows:

"John Baltch enters his own right transported in the year 1658 the which he assignies to John Floyde in the words,

" 'I John Baltch do assign over unto John Floyde all my Title and Interest of one Right due unto me for my transportacon in this province as Witness my hand this 30th day of December, 1663.

"Witness The mark of X John Baltche.'

" 'DANL. JERRIFER.' "

[87] During the Civil War the great mass of the people of Somerset, especially in the towns, took the side of the Parliament. But from 1643 to 1645 the shire was in the hands of the Royalists, except Taunton, which held out heroically under Blake until relieved by Lord Fairfax on May 11th, 1645. Other successes by the Parliamentary forces followed until the whole county was again in their hands. The strong Puritan feeling in the shire was shown forty years later by the support given in Somerset to the Monmouth rebellion.

The Encyclopedia Britannica; New York, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1887, Vol. XXII., page 259.

mark to his last will and testament,[88] but he could both read and write.[89] He was born probably before 1635. In England he belonged to the Presbyterian Wing of the English Church.[90] In Maryland

[88] *The Brooke Family of Whitchurch, Hampshire, England, together with an Account of Acting Governor Robert Brooke of Maryland and Colonel Ninian Beall of Maryland and some of their descendants* by Thomas Willing Balch, Philadelphia, 1899, page 32.

[89] Family manuscripts.

[90] Presbyterianism was first brought to the shores of the New World by Huguenots, who were sent out from France by Admiral Gaspar de Coligny to plant a French colony in Brazil, about 1555, and in Florida in 1562. Owing to the lack of support and the indifference of the French crown, and the massacre of Saint Bartholomew in 1572, the effort to extend the French language by colonizing the Huguenots in America failed; and it was reserved to the Reformed Church of Holland to first establish the Presbyterian form of church government in America.

Of the colony of New Amsterdam, Peter Minuit, who sprang of Huguenot stock that had sought a refuge at Wesel on the Rhine, was appointed in 1625 the first governor. He took up his charge in the New World in 1626, and became the first of the long line of executives of a commonwealth that has developed into what is today the State of New York. The Dutch did not flee from Holland because of oppression, for Holland was then the asylum of the persecuted of all lands. The first minister of the Reformed Dutch Church who ministered in America, was the Rev. Jones Michaëlius. He came to New Amsterdam in the Spring of 1628. Seven years before he was one of the delegates to the Synod of North Holland that was held in the city of Haarlem in 1621, on August 24th and the following days. The Rev. Everardus Bogardus, who arrived with Governor Van Twiller in 1633, was the second clergyman, and the Rev. Johannes Megapolensis, who came to New Amsterdam in 1642 and died in New York in 1670, was the third pastor of the Dutch Reformed Church in America.

American Presbyterianism also took its rise in large measure from the adherence of that system of church polity in England. Presbyterianism was established by Elizabeth as the State Church in *les Isles de la Manche* in 1576, and James the First on his accession to the throne of England, formally confirmed the Presbyterian form of church government for the Channel Islands. This system was partially overturned in Jersey on June 30th, 1623, but in Guernsey and Alderney Presbyterianism continued as the State Church until

he married Catharine Cleland of a Scottish family,

the Act of Uniformity in 1662. In England itself the English Church began to be Presbyterian in form by Act of Parliament in June, 1646, and so continued for a number of years until, after Lord Fairfax's retirement as commander-in-chief of the Parliamentary army, it was gradually in part overthrown by the Independents under the lead of Oliver Cromwell. The Presbyterian form of church polity, however, was restored in full in February, 1660, and so continued until the next year.

From England to the Middle Colonies came Alexander Whitaker the "self-denying *Apostle of Virginia*," a son of the distinguished Dr. William Whitaker, Professor of Divinity in Cambridge University, and a cousin of Dr. William Gouge, of Blackfriars, a leading member of the Westminster Assembly, and first moderator of the London Provincial Synod. The Rev. Francis Doughty and the Rev. Richard Denton, who were thrust out of their preferments at home, sought refuge with the Dutch at New Amsterdam, becoming respectively the First and the Second English Presbyterian Ministers in that city which later upon its capture by the English in 1664 was renamed New York. Subsequently, as a result of the struggle in that town between the Presbyterians and the Episcopalians, the Rev. Francis Doughty had to flee for his life; but he became the chief Apostle of Presbyterianism in the Middle States. In Maryland, he was seconded by the Rev. Matthew Hill, a close friend and correspondent of Richard Baxter. By the latter's aid and influence Hill came over to Maryland after he was ejected in 1662 from his parish of Thirsk in his native Yorkshire. Many English lay adherents of Presbyterianism crossed over to the Colonies, and among this number was John Balch "of Maryland," who crossed in 1658. The "Title Deeds" of Presbyterianism in the United States are derived not only from the Reformed Church of Holland and the Presbyterian members of the Church of England, who came across the ocean either voluntarily, or because of the Act of Uniformity, but also from the Church of Scotland. In the seventeenth century Scotch divines and many laymen, like Colonel Ninian Beall, who fought in the Scottish Army against Cromwell and the Independents at Dunbar (1650), brought across the Atlantic Ocean the religious polity of Geneva, as embodied by John Knox in the established Church of Scotland. Accessions came also from Ireland, among whom was the Rev. Francis Makemie. Educated at the University of Edinburg and ordained by the Presbytery of Laggan, MaKemie came to Maryland in 1683, and subsequently organized the Synod of Philadelphia. The Scotch-Irish came in increasing numbers; and also the refugee Huguenots. These latter established a number of churches of their own, of which that of Charleston, S. C., is still maintained as an independent Huguenot Church, with the service in the French language.

and left two sons who were brought up in the Presbyterian faith.[91]

1. I. Thomas Balch.
1. II. Robert Balch.[92]

As the descendants of John Balch "of Maryland" were brought up in Presbyterianism in Maryland and not in Episcopacy, to which their kinsmen in England returned when it was re-established by the Act of Uniformity in 1662, it would seem that the Presbyterian form of church government was more in accord with the greater political freedom that then prevailed in the English colonies than in England itself. In other words that Presbyterianism was closer than Episcopacy to the Dem-

---

A Manual of the Reformed Church in America, 1628–1902, by Edward Tanjore Corwin, D. D., New York, 1902, pages 15, 19, etc.

Ecclesiastical Records, State of New York; published by the State under the supervision of Hugh Hastings, State Librarian. Albany, 1901, Vol. I., page 43 *et seq.*

History and Characteristics of the Reformed Protestant Dutch Church, by David D. Demarest, pastor of the Reformed Protestant Dutch Church of Hudson, New York, 1856.

History of the Presbyterians in England, by the Rev. A. H. Drysdale, London, 1889, pages 164 *et seq.*, 287, 291, etc.

A History of the English Church during the Civil Wars and under the Commonwealth, 1640–1660, by William A. Shaw, London, 1900.

The Encyclopædia Britannica: New York, 1895, Ninth Edition, Vol. XIX., Charles Scribner's Sons, article entitled, *Presbyterianism.*

Pioneers of France in the New World by Francis Parkman, Boston, 1880; the first part, *Huguenots in Florida with a sketch of Huguenot colonization in Brazil.*

Gaspard de Coligny, Admiral of France, by A. W. Whitehead, London, 1904.

Les États-Unis au XX^e Siècle par Pierre Leroy-Beaulieu, Paris, 1905, page 13.

[91] Family manuscripts.

[92] Of the younger son, Robert Balch, nothing more is known.

ocratic spirit of individualism that obtained in the colonies. Or as Dryden expressed the essence of Presbyterianism in an uncomplimentary way in his "*Hind and Panther*":—

"As poisons of the deadliest kind,
Are to their own unhappy coasts confined,
So *Presbytery* and its pestilential zeal
Can flourish only in a *common weal*."

The elder of these two sons, Thomas Balch, who was born about 1660, was of a restive and impulsive disposition, and fond of moving about and adventure. When not much over twenty he went over to Somersetshire. In England he knew Richard Baxter and was much influenced by that eminent divine.[93] Brought up a Protestant, he

---

[93] Richard Baxter, styled by Dean Stanley, "The Chief of the English Protestant Schoolmen," a theologian with Presbyterian leanings, was born at Rowton, Shropshire, Nov. 12th, 1615, and died at London, Dec. 8, 1691. He was neutral or moderate during the Civil War, favoring a monarchy and at the same time remaining on friendly terms with the Puritans. In 1650 he wrote the *Saint's Everlasting Rest*. Just prior to the Restoration, he fixed his residence at London. Charles the Second appointed him one of his chaplains, and Clarendon offered him the Bishopric of Hereford, which, however, he declined. Upon the passage of the Act of Uniformity in 1662, Baxter seceded from the Anglican church. The notorious Judge Jeffreys fined him in 1685 five hundred marks on a charge of sedition which was based on a passage in one of his writings, *Paraphrase on the New Testament*, that was construed into a libel on the Church of England. For failing to pay this charge he was imprisoned nearly eighteen months.

During the trial Jeffreys acted like an infuriated madman, but through it all he showed sparks of intelligence. One of Baxter's

readily, when "King Monmouth" raised his standard in south-western England in June, 1685, joined the Duke's forces, and became a captain in his army. After the disastrous battle of Sedgemoor, July 5th, 1685, in which Monmouth's army was routed and his cause destroyed, Thomas Balch found it advisable, owing to the activities of the notorious Colonel Kirke and his men, known as "Kirke's lambs," to leave England for the New World. Accordingly, shortly after, he sailed, disguised, from Bristol and landed at Annapolis, Maryland, in 1685. His part in Monmouth's rebellion was the thread round which George Parker, at one time Mayor of Bridgwater, Somerset, wrapped an account of Monmouth's rising in a book entitled, *Tom Balch; an Historical Tale of West Somerset dur-*

---

counsel, Mr. Rotheram, said that the divine frequently attended divine service, that he went to the sacraments and persuaded others to do so, and that in the book upon which the accusation of sedition was based, Baxter had spoken moderately and honorably of the bishops of the Church of England. "Baxter for Bishops!" Jeffreys exclaimed, "that's a very merry conceit indeed; turn to it, turn to it." Thereupon Rotheram read: "That great respect is due to those truly called to be bishops among us." "Ay," said Jeffreys, "this is your Presbyterian cant—truly called to be bishops—that is himself and such rascals, called to be bishops of Kidderminster and other such places, bishops set apart by such factions, snivelling Presbyterians as himself. A Kidderminster bishop he means." The reference to Kidderminster is to the fact that for some years before the Civil War between the King and the Parliament, Baxter was chosen minister of that place. In Kidderminster, Baxter made a tremendous impression and gained a great influence over the people. During his stay there he wrote *The Reformed Pastor*, a notable book.

The Encyclopædia Britannica, New York, Samuel L. Hall, 1877.

ing Monmouth's Rebellion. This book was published at Bridgwater in 1879.[94]

Mr. Parker, in his preface, says:—

"In the course of a long and active life amidst its toils, my amusements have been of a literary character. Amongst the many manuscripts in my possession I have selected for publication an Historical Tale. The reader will find it evinces the strong and ardent feelings towards Protestantism, manifested by the county families of Somersetshire at the time of Monmouth's Rebellion, and it displays the severe trials some of them endured.

"The Poems appended are mostly written in the Somersetshire dialect, and are intended to describe and commemorate what the peasantry, and some immediately above them, were about many years ago, and to evidence a noble heartiness of character worth recording."

Mr. Parker in his book represents the father of Tom Balch as the owner of Saint Audries. It was not until much later, in 1764, that Saint Audries came into the possession of another branch of the Balch family.

---

[94] *Tom Balch; an Historical Tale of West Somerset during Monmouth's Rebellion; together with Amusing and other Poems, some of them in the Somersetshire (Zumerzetshire) dialect*, by George Parker, Bridgwater, Robert Brodie, 1879. A first edition of this book was printed it is said in the early seventies, about 1872. In August, 1886, the present writer and his brother visited Bridgwater. They saw and talked with Mr. Parker, the author of *Tom Balch*. Mr. Parker, who lived in the house of Admiral Blake, called the present writer "Tom," and said that his own book, *Tom Balch*, was based on some original incidents. Further Mr. Parker added that in his youth he had always heard that the Balch family was settled in Somerset from time immemorial.

In describing the causes that led the people of south-western England to join "King Monmouth," Mr. Parker says:—[95]

"The reign of James II. now began. He proceeded further on that path which was so obnoxious to the bulk of the people. He went openly to mass with all the ensigns of dignity, and even sent one Carlyle as his agent to Rome, to make submission to the Pope, and to pave the way for the admission of England into the bosom of the Roman Catholic Church. The Spanish Ambassador ventured one day to advise His Majesty against putting too much confidence in his friends. 'Is it not the custom in Spain,' said James, 'for the King to consult with his Confessor?' 'Yes,' answered the ambassador, 'and that is the reason why our affairs turn out so very ill.' The people of England were roused, although they did not avow it openly at once. They entertained the most determined hostility against their new sovereign. In the west of England especially from the pulpits the people were warned of their danger, and no one took a more active part amongst the laity, in endeavoring to impress upon the minds of their tenantry the vast importance of upholding Protestantism, than did the Balches; even Tom, who, unfortunately, was so thoughtless generally, joined most earnestly the popular side, and no surrender became the determination of the people. The hum of rebellion seemed to be sounding through the land ere its thunders were heard, and the energies of the youthful part of the community were soon brought into action by the news of the landing of Monmouth at Lyme, which took

[95] *Tom Balch*, page 63.

place June, 1685. He came as the champion of the Protestant cause, and most flattering was his reception. Here opened a field suitable to the spirit and taste of Tom Balch, who upon hearing the day he was to enter Taunton, made a point of being there. It was the first time in his life he had ever witnessed anything like a military procession, and when they entered the town, what with the display of uniforms and the enthusiasm of the people, his heart was at once devoted to Monmouth. He was well known at Taunton as the heir of a family of distinction in the neighborhood, and very soon obtained an introduction at headquarters. As the Duke was most anxious to enlist in his cause every one of note, when Tom was introduced to him he was welcomed most cordially, flattered by remarks on his fine natural figure and soldier-like appearance, which only required military accoutrements to make it complete. A Captain's commission was offered him; he was flattered and hastily promised, ere he left Taunton, to take an oath of allegiance to the Duke as his sovereign, who really admired him for his frankness of manner, and it was contrived military clothes should be supplied to him, and he became really and earnestly a captain of the Duke's army. He procured a short leave of absence to make his friends at home acquainted with the change in his affairs."

After returning to Maryland, Thomas Balch[96] married Agnes Somerville, and died in 1730.

They had one son:

2. I. Hezekiah Balch. He was brought up in the Presbyterian faith, and received from his father

[96] There are family *traditions* that he was a clergyman of the Presbyterian Church.

what was for those days a good education. At the end of 1720 he was appointed administrator of the estate of William Jenkins. The record of this runs thus: "'Wᵐ. Jenkins his adm.' Bond in Comon forme by Hezª Balch his adm. with Thomas Johnson & John Duely his sureties in fifty pounds sterd. Dated December 27, 1720."[97]

He married twice; first Martha Bloomer, and second Sarah ———.[98] By his first wife he had two sons, born in Saint George's Parish, Maryland:

3. I. James Balch, born December 5th, 1714.

3. II. John Balch, born January 23d, 1715–1716.[99]

By his second wife he had two sons and one daughter, born in Saint George's Parish, Maryland, of whom nothing is known except the dates of their births:

3. III. Thomas Balch, born November 15th, 1717.

3. IV. Hezekiah Balch, born March 6th, 1721.

3. V. Mary Balch, born October 2d, 1725.

3. I. James Balch was born December 5th, 1714, in Saint George's Parish,[100] Maryland, and visited

---

[97] *Testamentary Proceedings, Liber 4, folio 306*, Annapolis, Maryland.

[98] *St. George's Parish Register of Births, Marriages and Deaths, 1692–1780:* Maryland.

[99] See *post*, page 374.

[100] *Saint George's Parish Register of Births, Marriages and Deaths, 1692–1780:* Maryland.

in 1732 England and the Low Countries. Returning to Maryland he was married on January 19th, 1737, to Anne Goodwyn of the Eastern Shore of Maryland.[101] They settled on Deer Creek, Harford County, in 1743.[102] She died in 1760. In 1769 he removed with his family to North Carolina. He died in 1779, three years after the death of his best beloved son, Hezekiah James Balch. He was the author of some short poems.

They had a number of children:—

4. I. Mary Balch, born March 7th, 1738.[103]
4. II. Elizabeth Balch, born April 25th, 1740.
4. III. Margaret Balch, born
4. IV. Rhoda Balch,
4. V. Hezekiah James Balch, born 1746, died 1776, unmarried.
4. VI. Stephen Bloomer Balch,
4. VII. James Balch, born December 25th, 1750.
4. VIII. William Goodwyn Balch, born 1751; died October 14th, 1822.
4. IX. Rachel Balch,
4. X. John Balch, born 1760.
4. XI. Amos Balch.

---

[101] *St. George's Parish Register of Births, Marriages and Deaths, 1692–1780:* Maryland.

[102] Conveyance November 2nd, 1743 by Jacob Giles and Isaac Webster to James Balch; *T. B. No. 3. 1742–1745*, folio 387, Land Records in the Baltimore Record Office in the Court House, Baltimore.

[103] *St. George's Parish Register of Births, Marriages and Deaths, 1692–1780:* Maryland.

JAMES BALCH.

1714-1779.

4. V. Hezekiah James Balch was born on Deer Creek, Harford County, Maryland, in 1746. He was graduated at Princeton College (now Princeton University), in 1766, receiving the A. M. degree. While at Princeton, he was one of the founders of the Cliosophic Society.[104] After leaving college he studied for the ministry of the Presbyterian Church and was licensed to preach the Gospel in 1767 by the Presbytery of Donegal.[105] In 1769 he took charge of two congregations in North Carolina, Rocky River and Poplar Tent, which he continued to serve until his death.[106] He was ordained in 1770 by the Presbytery of Donegal.[107] Together with Dr. Ephraim Brevard and William Kennon, both like himself graduates of Princeton College, he drew

---

[104] "1765.

"CLIOSOPHIC SOCIETY.

"*Pro desse Quam conspici.*

"MAY 9, 1905.

"*Mr. Thomas Willing Balch.*

"DEAR SIR:

"We have in our records the name of Rev. Hezekiah James Balch, signer of the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, N. C. He joined the society in 1765 and graduated in 1766.

"Yours truly

"ROBERT E. DOANE, '06.

"*Cor. Sec.*"

[105] *Records of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America embracing the minutes of the General Presbytery and General Synod 1706–1788:* Philadelphia, Presbyterian Board of Publication, 1904, page 378.

[106] *Sketches of North Carolina, Historical and Biographical*, by the Rev. William Henry Foote, New York, 1846, pages 439, 479, 482.

[107] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 401.

up the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, May 20th, 1775, was one of the speakers before the assembled delegates, and one of the signers of that declaration.[108] Passionately fond of freedom for the individual, and, so far as the constitution of the church to which he belonged could be considered

---

[108] "In the convention that met at Charlotte, May 19th, 1775, there was one minister of the gospel, Hezekiah James Balch, of Poplar Tent. That he was active in the preparatory steps for that convention is evident from the fact that he was one of the members that prepared resolutions to be submitted to the convention, which resolutions, after consultation, were amended and adopted by the committee, and by the convention, and published to the world." *Sketches of North Carolina, Historical and Biographical*, by the Rev. William Henry Foote, New York, 1846. Pages 36, 338, 339.

See also: *Why North Carolinians believe in the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence of May 20th, 1775.* Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged by George W. Graham, M. D., of the Mecklenburg Historical Society, Charlotte, N. C., 1898. Published by the Queen City Printing and Paper Company, pages 6, 7, 19.

Sketches of Western North Carolina, Historical and Biographical, by C. L. Hunter, Raleigh, N. C., 1877, pages 23, 45, 47. (There are a number of mistakes in this account.)

The Charlotte Daily Observer, Charlotte, N. C., May 23rd, 1900.

Harper's Weekly, New York, July 7th, 1906.

In answer to a request for information à propos of a *pretended* facsimile of the signatures of the signers of the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence this letter was received from the Librarian of the Mecklenburg Historical Society:—

"CHARLOTTE, June 23, 1898.
"Thursday.

"*Mr. E. S. Balch,*

"MY DEAR SIR:

"I received your letter making inquiries about the omission of the name of Hezekiah James Balch. I sent you in reply a little book that was prepared for this May celebration, that contains an article by Dr. George W. Graham which is considered very thorough and exhaustive. It tells the whole story of the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence. The original copy of the Declaration was destroyed by fire in John McKnitt Alexander's house. So there were other copies made from memory and there have been long and

an example,[109] bred a believer in a republic, he used as a motto a phrase expressive of his character, *Ubi libertas, ibi patria.* In a letter penned in 1774, he exclaims, "There can be no freedom without order! Oh for the order which is in Christ, that we might have that freedom which is in him also!" And then he expounds eloquently what would be the condition of the land if the order and freedom secured by his divine Master's laws could prevail throughout it. He

---

sometimes bitter controversies about the different copies, some people going so far as to say that the Resolutions of May 31st are the only work of the committee who met here on May 20th. This article of Dr. Graham I think is very satisfactory. All the traditions of the town and county point to the 20th of May as the day when the Declaration of Independence was read to the people assembled, from the steps of the old Court House by Col. Thomas Polk.

"That *pretended* fac simile was made by an ingenious old man in Charlotte who gathered from various sources the handwriting of many but not of all the signers of the Declaration. He probably did not succeed in getting the autograph of Rev. Hezekiah James Balch, and so it does not appear in that *pretended* fac simile, which really has thrown uncertainty and perplexity and done no good to the records of those days. On the Monument in the Court House yard the name of Hezekiah James Balch is the second or third name, and has an honored place.

"Please keep the little book about Charlotte as a souvenir of our acquaintance, made so pleasantly through books and histories.

"Although I am not a native of Charlotte and cannot claim for my ancestors a share in making the glorious history of Mecklenburg as you can, I have lived here so long and have been so entirely identified with the place that I am as proud of her history as you are.

"Very truly and respectfully,

"(MRS.) B. L. DEWEY."

Dr. George W. Graham, writes from Charlotte, N. C., Nov. 12th, 1906, that the name of Hezekiah J. Balch "stands second in the list of signers on the Mecklenburg Declaration Monument erected here."

[109] *Histoire de la Réformation en Europe au temps de Calvin* par J. H. Merle d'Aubigné, Paris, 1863. Vol. I. pages 1–15, 465.

died unmarried at the beginning of 1776 before the storm of war had reached North Carolina.[110]

In 1872, William S. Harris, a ruling elder of Poplar Tent Church, read before Concord Presbytery an historical sketch of Poplar Tent Church.[111] In it he said:—

"Mr. Balch served as pastor from 1769 to the period of his death, which untimely event occurred in 1776, when this great sorrow came, the little band of settlers felt that 'their strong staff was broken, and the beautiful rod.'

* * * * * * *

"Mr. Balch was a man of ripe learning and pressed forward with unwavering devotion to the cause of his Divine Master. Abundant in every good word and work, he took an active part in moulding and preparing the popular mind for the great struggle of the revolution. He looked to the achievement of principles, upon which a government of regulated liberty and law could be established, and which should be removed from its strong foundations no more forever. Hence he was a prominent actor in the convention, which declared independence of the crown of Great Britain, at Charlotte, May 20th, 1775. He died the following year in the prime of life and in the midst of his usefulness. It is a remarkable co-incidence that all of the original bench of elders were re-

---

[110] *Sketches of North Carolina, Historical and Biographical*, by the Rev. William Henry Foote, New York, 1846, page 439.

Historical Sketch of Poplar Tent Church, by William S. Harris, Ruling Elder of said church, read before Concord Presbytery, April 22d, 1872. Charlotte, N. C., 1873, pages 3, 6.

[111] *Historical Sketch of Poplar Tent Church*, by William S. Harris, Ruling Elder of said church; read before Concord Presbytery, April 22d, 1872. Charlotte, N. C., 1873, page 6 *et seq.*

moved about the same time with their pastor and, doubtless, were gathered with him to the fold of the Great Shepherd.

"In the year 1847, a number of citizens met at Poplar Tent on the occasion of a railroad meeting, consisting of the late Judge Osborne, Dr. Charles W. Harris, now no more, and several others yet living, where attention was drawn to the fact that there was no monument to mark the grave of Balch; whereupon the fund was immediately raised to build a suitable monument at the spot where tradition located his grave, in the centre of the first burial ground. This centre was ascertained through the knowledge of Abijah Alexander, then more than ninety years of age, and by whom in part one line or wall of the original enclosure had been built.

"The Rev. James A. Wallace, a native of Poplar Tent, then a minister of the Presbyterian Church in the Synod of South Carolina, was informed of the praiseworthy effort to rescue the name and grave of this illustrious man from oblivion, and was appealed to, to write a suitable epitaph. He did so cheerfully, and furnished the beautiful record which is carved on the marble, that now covers his mortal remains."

The inscription on the tombstone at Poplar Tent reads as follows:

"Beneath this marble repose the mortal remains of the Rev. Hezekiah James Balch, first Pastor of Poplar Tent Congregation and one of the original members of Orange Presbytery. He was licensed a Preacher of the everlasting gospel by the Presbytery of Donegal in 1767, ordained to the full work of the holy Ministry in 1769 and rested from his labors, A. D. 1776, having been the

Pastor of the united congregation of Poplar Tent and Rocky River about seven years. He was distinguished as one of the committee of three who prepared that immortal document, the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, and his eloquence, the more effectual from his acknowledged wisdom, purity of motive and dignity of character, contributed much to the unanimous adoption of that instrument on the twentieth of May, 1775."

The Rev. Hezekiah James Balch should not be confounded with his brother, the Rev. James Balch, who was born December 25th, 1750, and died January 12th, 1821, nor with their first cousin, the Rev. Hezekiah Balch, who was born in 1741 and died in 1810, both of whom married and left descendants.[112]

Since, owing to the similarity of names, Hezekiah James Balch, James Balch, and Hezekiah Balch, have been so much confused one with another, at times even welded into one single individual, the statements in the records and minutes of the Presbyterian Church of the United States, proving that all *three* were pastors of the Presbyterian Church, and *three distinct and different persons*, are here given in full.

"Donegal Presbytery report, * * * that they

---

[112] *Annals of the American Pulpit; or Commemorative Notices of Distinguished American Clergymen of Various Denominations*, by William B. Sprague, D. D., New York, 1858, Vol. III., page 417.

Princeton College during the Eighteenth Century by Samuel Davies Alexander, an Alumnus, New York, 1872, page 105.

Catalogue of Princeton University, 1746–1896.

have licensed Hezekiah James Balch to preach the gospel," 1768.[113]

"Mr. Hezekiah James Balch, a licensed candidate under the care of Donegall Presbytery, is appointed on the same mission, and the Presbytery to which he belongs are authorized to ordain him, if upon trial he acquits himself according to their satisfaction and accepts a call from Carolina," 1769.[114]

"The Presbytery of Donegall report, that they have ordained Messrs. Hezekiah James Balch and John King.

* * * * * * * *

"Hanover Presbytery report, that they have ordained Mr. Hezekiah Balch," 1770.[115]

In the year 1770, the Rev. Hezekiah James Balch was taken from Donegal Presbytery, and the Rev. Hezekiah Balch from Hanover Presbytery, and together with several other clergymen, were elected into the Presbytery of Orange.[116]

"The Presbytery of Abingdon reported, that they had licensed Mr. James Balch to preach the gospel," 1787.[117]

In 1798, the Rev. Hezekiah Balch and the Rev. James Balch were both members of the Presbytery of Abingdon.[118]

---

[113] *Records of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America, 1706–1788*, page 378.

[114] *Records of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America, 1706–1788*, page 399.

[115] *Records of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America, 1706–1788*, page 401.

[116] *Records of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America, 1706–1788*, page 409.

[117] *Records of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America, 1706–1788*, pages 531, 536, 537.

[118] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America*, 1789–1820, page 137.

The Rev. William Henry Foote speaking à propos of the Mecklenburg Declaration says:[119]

"In less than one quarter of a century after the first permanent settlement was made in Mecklenburg, men talked of defending their rights not against the Indians, but the officers of the crown; and took those measures that eventuated in the CONVENTION of May 20th, 1775, to deliberate on the crisis of their affairs. Of the persons chosen to meet in that assembly, one was a Presbyterian minister, Hezekiah James Balch of Poplar Tent; seven were known to be Elders of the Church—Abraham Alexander, of Sugar Creek, John McKnitt Alexander and Hezekiah Alexander, of Hopewell, David Reese, of Poplar Tent, Adam Alexander and Robert Queary, of Rocky River (now in the bounds of Philadelphia), and Robert Irwin, of Steel Creek; two others were elders, but in the deficiency of church records, their names not known with certainty, but the report of tradition is, without variation, that NINE of the members were elders, and the other two are supposed to have been Ephraim Brevard and John Pfifer. Thus ten out of the twenty-seven were office-bearers in the church; and all were connected with the congregations of the Presbyteries in Mecklenburg.

* * * * * * *

"The names of the persons composing the convention, as given in the State documents collected by Dr. J. McKnitt Alexander, are as follows:

---

[119] *Sketches of North Carolina, Historical and Biographical*, by William Henry Foote. New York: Robert Carter, 58 Canal Street, 1846, pages, 204, 208.

Abraham Alexander—*Chairman.*
John McKnitt Alexander—*Secretary.*
Ephraim Brevard—*Secretary.*

Rev. Hezekiah J. Balch,	Charles Alexander,
John Pfifer,	Zaccheus Wilson, jun.,
James Harris,	Waightstill Avery,
William Kennon,	Benjamin Patton,
John Ford,	Matthew McClure,
Richard Barry,	Neill Morrison,
Henry Downe,	Robert Irwin,
Ezra Alexander,	John Flenniken,
William Graham,	David Reese,
John Queary,	John Davidson,
Hezekiah Alexander,	Richard Harris, jun.,
Adam Alexander,	Thomas Polk."

Concerning the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, Dr. George W. Graham of the Mecklenburg Historical Society, says:—[120]

"In the months of March and April, 1775, the leading men in the County of Mecklenburg, North Carolina, held meetings to ascertain the sense of the people and to confirm them in their opposition to the claims of Parliament to impose taxes and regulate the internal policy of the Colonies. At one of these meetings, when it was ascertained that the people were prepared to meet their wishes, it was agreed that Thomas Polk, then Colonel Commandant of the County, should issue an order directed to each captain of militia, requesting him to call a company meeting to elect two delegates from his com-

[120] *Why North Carolinians believe in the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence of May 20th, 1775*, by Dr. George W. Graham, of the Mecklenburg Historical Society, Charlotte, N. C., 1898.

pany to meet in general committee at Charlotte on the 19th day of May,[121] giving to the delegates ample power to adopt such measures as to them should seem best calculated to promote the common cause of defending the rights of the colony and aiding their brethren in Massachusetts. Colonel Polk issued the order, and the delegates were elected. They met in Charlotte on the day appointed. The forms of their proceedings and the measures to be proposed had been previously agreed upon by the men at whose instance the committee was assembled. The Rev. Hezekiah James Balch, Dr. Ephraim Brevard, and William Kennon, Esq., an Attorney-at-law, addressed the committee and descanted on the causes which had led to the existing contest with the mother country, and the consequences which were to be apprehended unless the people should make a firm and energetic resistance to the right which Parliament asserted of taxing the Colonies and regulating their internal policy.

"On the day on which the committee met, the first intelligence of the action at Lexington, in Massachusetts, on the 19th of April, was received in Charlotte. This intelligence produced the most decisive effect. A large concourse of people had assembled to witness the proceedings of the committee. The speakers addressed their discourses as well to them as to the committee, and those who were not convinced by their reasoning were influenced by their feelings and all cried out: 'Let us be independent! Let us declare our independence and

---

[121] "The delegates met on the 19th day of May, and after sitting in the court-house all night, neither sleepy, hungry, nor fatigued, adopted the declaration 'about 2 o'clock A. M., May 20.' Testimony of John McKnitt Alexander, Secretary of the 'General Committee.'" Foot-note in Dr. Graham's monograph.

defend it with our lives and fortunes!' A committee was appointed to draw up resolutions. This committee was composed of the men who had planned the whole proceedings, and who had already prepared the resolutions which it was intended should be submitted to the general committee. Dr. Ephraim Brevard had drawn up the resolutions some time before and now reported them, with amendments, as follows:

"'I. *Resolved*, That whosoever directly, or indirectly, abets, or in any way, form or manner countenances the invasion of our rights, as attempted by the Parliament of Great Britain, is an enemy to his country, to America, and to the rights of men.

"'II. *Resolved*, That we, the citizens of Mecklenburg County, do hereby dissolve the political bonds which have connected us with the mother country, and absolve ourselves from all allegiance to the British crown, abjuring all political connection with a nation that has wantonly trampled on our rights and liberties and inhumanly shed innocent blood of Americans at Lexington and Concord.

"'III. *Resolved*, That we do hereby declare ourselves a free and independent people; that we are, and of right ought to be a sovereign and self governing people under the power of God and the General Congress; to the maintenance of which independence we solemnly pledge to each other our mutual co-operation, our lives, our fortunes, and our most sacred honor.

"'IV. *Resolved*, That we hereby ordain and adopt as rules of conduct all and each of our former law, and that the crown of Great Britain cannot be considered hereafter as holding any rights, privileges, or immunities amongst us.

"'V. *Resolved*, That all officers, both civil and military, in this County be entitled to exercise the same powers and authorities as heretofore; that every member of this delegation shall henceforth be a civil officer and exercise the powers of a justice of the peace, issue process, hear and determine controversies according to law, preserve peace, union and harmony in the county, and use every exertion to spread the love of liberty and country until a more general and better organized system of government be established.

"'VI. *Resolved*, That a copy of these resolutions be transmitted by express to the President of the Continental Congress, assembled in Philadelphia, to be laid before that body.'[122]

"These resolutions were unanimously adopted and subscribed by the delegates as follows:

ABRAHAM ALEXANDER, *Chairman.*	JOHN MCKNITT ALEXANDER, *Secretary.*
EPHRAIM BREVARD,	CHARLES ALEXANDER,
HEZEKIAH J. BALCH,	ZACHEUS WILSON, SEN.,
JOHN PHIFER,	WAIGHTSTILL AVERY,
JAMES HARRIS,	BENJAMIN PATTON,
WILLIAM KENNON,	MATTHEW MCCLURE,
JOHN FORD,	NEIL MORRISON,
RICHARD BARRY,	ROBERT IRWIN,
EZRA ALEXANDER,	DAVID REESE,
WILLIAM GRAHAM,	JOHN DAVIDSON,
JOHN QUEARY,	RICHARD HARRIS, SEN.,
HEZEKIAH ALEXANDER,	THOMAS POLK,
ADAM ALEXANDER,	

---

[122] *Martin's History of North Carolina*, Chapter XI., Vol. II. Footnote in Dr. Graham's monograph.

"'In a few days,'[123] as directed in Resolve 6, the proceedings were taken by Captain James Jack, of Charlotte, with a letter of explanation to the President of the Continental Congress which was then sitting in Philadelphia. 'The President returned a polite answer to the address which accompanied the resolutions, in which he highly approved of the measures adopted by the delegates of Mecklenburg, but deemed the subject of the resolutions premature to be laid before Congress.' At the time the messenger from Charlotte arrived in Philadelphia with the declaration, Congress was preparing a petition to the King, which was signed by every member on July 8, 1775, stating that 'We have not raised armies with the ambitious design of separating from Great Britain and establishing independent states,'[124] and of course any measure indicating independence was 'premature to be laid before Congress,' just then. Thus the bold action of the Scotch-Irish[125] of Mecklenburg failed of recognition by the Continental Assembly.

"John McKnitt Alexander was secretary of the 'General Committee' which met in Charlotte on May 19th–20th, 1775, and became custodian of its records, which were burned with his dwelling in April, 1800. After their destruction he prepared from memory a copy of the Mecklenburg Declaration for his friend, General William R. Davie, which is known as 'The Davie Copy.'

---

[123] Testimony of John McKnitt Alexander, Secretary of General Committee, page 135, Governor Graham's address. Foot-note in Dr. Graham's monograph.

[124] See "Davie Copy" in Archives of the University, at Chapel Hill, N. C. Foot-note in Dr. Graham's monograph.

[125] The signers of the Mecklenburg Declaration were *not all* Scotch-Irish. Thus Hezekiah James Balch was of English descent; and Brevard seems like a French Huguenot name.

It is written in the past tense, instead of the present, contains errors in the text, and omits the sixth resolution. He added a certificate, however, dated Sept. 3d, 1800,[126] saying: 'That the foregoing statement, though fundamentally correct, may not literally correspond with the original record of the transaction of said delegation.'

"In 1819, two years after the death of Mr. Alexander, an account of the proceedings of the 'General Committee' at Charlotte was published in the *Raleigh Register*, including a facsimile of the 'Davie Copy' with this note appended:

"'The foregoing is a true copy of the papers on the above subjects, left in my hands by John McKnitt Alexander, deceased.

"'J. M'KNITT.'

"This article was referred to Mr. Jefferson, and its appearance seems to have vexed him greatly; for, in a decidedly petulant letter,[127] he wrote Ex-President Adams, 'I deem it a very unjustifiable quiz;' pronounced the Mecklenburg Declaration 'spurious,' and criticised harshly the patriotism of the members of the Continental Congress from North Carolina in 1775–76, accusing, Hooper, of Toryism, and Hewes of 'wavering' in the American cause, in all of which history has shown him to be in error."[128]

4. VI. Stephen Bloomer Balch was born April 5th, 1747, on Deer Creek, Harford County, Maryland. He

---

[126] See *Davie Copy* in the archives of the University at Chapel Hill, N. C. Foot-note in Dr. Graham's monograph.

[127] Jefferson's works, Vol. IV., page 314. Foot-note in Dr. Graham's monograph.

[128] *Colonial Records of North Carolina*, Vol. 10, page 85, and Jones' *Defence of North Carolina*, page 314. Foot-note in Dr. Graham's monograph.

graduated at Princeton College in 1774, receiving the A. B. degree. At Princeton he was a member of Whig Hall,[129] and was one of the signers in 1773 of Dr. H. L. Hodge's diploma.[130]

After graduating at Princeton, he went to Lower Marlboro, Calvert County, Maryland, where he took charge of a classical academy. On October 1st, 1775, he was commissioned captain in the Calvert County militia; he held this command for three years and was in actual service against the enemy from December 1st, 1775, to December 1st, 1777.[131] When the British appeared on the shores of the Patuxent River and Chesapeake Bay, he marched out with his company to assist in repulsing them. He was in a number of actions, but, though frequently offered promotion, declined

---

[129] *Catalogue of the American Whig Society, instituted in the College of New Jersey, 1769.* Princeton, N. J., published by order of the Society, 1893, page 6.

[130] *Addresses and Proceedings at the Celebration of the One Hundredth Anniversary of the founding of the American Whig Society of College of New Jersey*, Princeton, N. J., June 29th, 1869, Princeton 1871, pages 99, 103.

Princeton College during the Eighteenth Century, by Samuel Davies Alexander, an alumnus. New York 1872, page 173.

[131] *Records of the Revolutionary War*, by W. T. R. Saffell, New York, 1858, page 537.

For his military services during the War of Independence, Dr. Balch, after the total loss of his house by fire in 1831, which at his advanced age he felt severely, was persuaded by his friends to apply for and was granted a pension the following year, November 23d, under the Act of Congress of June 7th, 1832. See the original papers of the proceedings held before Chief Judge Cranch of the Circuit Court of the District of Columbia, which are in the office of the Commissioner of Pensions, Department of War.

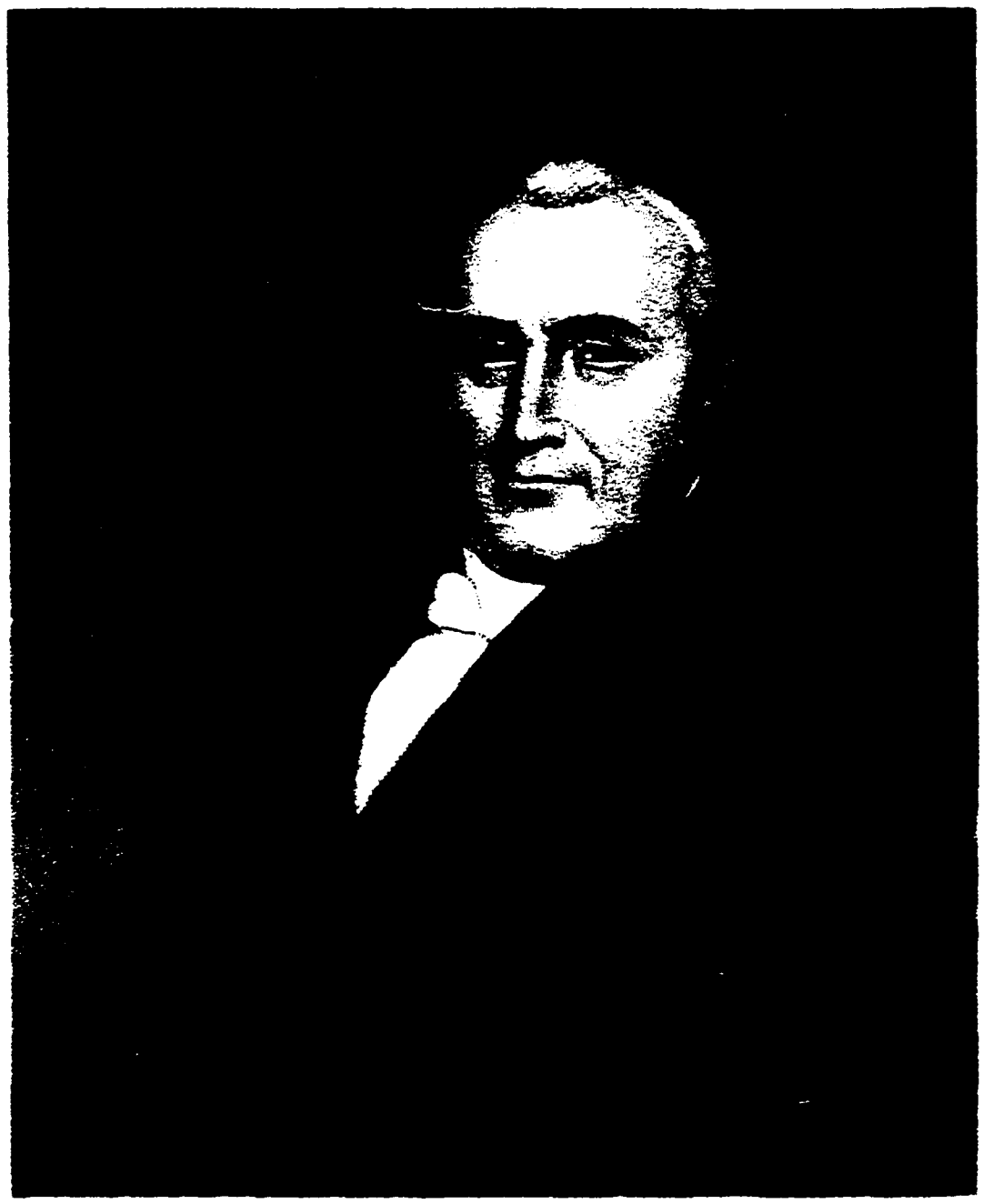
it, inasmuch as he thought he could be of more service on the Chesapeake border, with all of which he was familiar from childhood, and at the same time could continue his preparation for the ministry. In 1778, when the feeling was universal that, owing to the defeat of Burgoyne (1777) and the French alliance, our independence was secured, and the acknowledgment of it was merely a question of time, he resigned from the service in order to give himself up more assiduously to his clerical duties. He was licensed to preach by the Presbytery of Donegal on June 17th, 1779.[132]

While in North Carolina, on one occasion General Isaac Williams, the Whig leader in the district, asked him to preach. The General, in full regimentals, with two pistols in his belt, led the singing. Dr. Balch, dwelling on the horrors of the war, said in part:—

"Your country, it is true is laid waste by a vandal foe—your wives and daughters are outraged—your firesides and altars are desecrated—your churches in ruins—the blood so recently shed at Beaufort's defeat, cries for vengeance—the bones of our countrymen are bleaching alike amid the snows of Canada and the sands of Carolina. What though victory perched not on our standard either at Camden, Brandywine or Germantown? Yet see the stripes and stars unfurled to the breeze at Trenton, Princeton and Monmouth. The God of hosts led

---

[132] *Records of the Presbyterian Church of the United States of America, 1706–1788*, page 491.



THE REV. DR. STEPHEN BLOOMER BALCH.
FROM AN ENGRAVING BY JOHN SARTAIN.

the armies of Israel: to them he was a cloud by day and a pillar of fire by night. He is now the same Almighty protector of all who trust in his divine help, and he will yet rescue us out of the house of bondage. Soon our armies will regain their good fortune. The dark prospect now before us will be succeeded by the smile of inspiring hope—the misfortune of defeat and disaster will yield to the shout and joy of victory—the scourge of war will cease, and peace will soon gladden every heart and we shall become a great and prosperous people."

In 1780 he was called by the Presbyterians of Georgetown on the Potomac to establish a church among them. Accepting, he arrived there March 16th, 1780, and remained in charge of the church he founded until his death fifty-three years afterwards. In the Synod that met at Philadelphia, May 21st, 1783, he was one of the representatives of the Presbytery of Donegal. In succeeding years he again and again represented at the meetings of the Synods, first the Presbytery of Donegal, then the Presbytery of Baltimore and afterwards the Presbytery of the District of Columbia.[133] In the order of the Synod of Philadelphia, October, 1823, creating the Presbytery of the District of Columbia, the name of the Rev. Dr. Stephen Bloomer Balch heads the list of the ministers chosen to form the new Presbytery.

---

[133] *Records of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America, 1706–1788*, pages 491, 496, 501, 506, 515, 528, 542.

Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church, 1789–1800, pages 17, 101, 140, 170, 192, 214, 243.

Towards the close of the eighteenth century Dr. Balch opened a school at Georgetown and published the following announcement:—

TO THE PARENTS OF YOUTH AND THE FRIENDS OF USEFUL KNOWLEDGE.

"CONFORMABLY to advertisement, the subscribers began Academic exercises on the 1st inst. under favorable auspices, since which period a prospect of rendering the institution respectable has considerably brightened. That the public may know the principles of our establishment, the following PROSPECTUS is presented to their view. Exercises in the English, Latin and Greek languages, writing, arithmetic, practical geometry, astronomy and geography will be strictly attended to, every day in the year, Sundays and the usual holidays excepted.

"From the 20th of September to the 20th of March, the pupils will assemble at eight o'clock in the morning, and be released at twelve. In the evening they will meet at two o'clock and be dismissed at five.

"During the remaining half of the year, the hours of attendance shall be so regulated as shall best comport with convenience, due notice being seasonably given.

"The price of tuition, for an English scholar, will be Five dollars by the quarter, which will extend to writing and arithmetic as far as through the rule of proportion. For Latin or Greek scholars, or for those who shall have advanced beyond the rule of proportion in arithmetic, or for instruction in any other science taught in this Academy, the quarterly price of tuition will be six dollars and sixty five cents.

"Each member of the Academy shall either procure

one half cord of good fuel for its use during the inclemency of winter, or pay two dollars to procure it.

"Each student of sufficient age and capacity to attend to a regular course of instruction in the English language shall provide for himself Harrison's English Grammar, Perry's Royal Standard English Dictionary and the American Preceptor by Caleb Bingham. If in Arithmetic 'Gough' will be preferred in geography, and the necessary introduction thereto in astronomy, the last edition of Morse's Universal Geography will be the most acceptable. No spelling books will be admitted except Perry's only sure guide of these; care shall be taken to procure a reasonable supply. Students in the Latin and Greek languages will procure the Philadelphia Latin Grammar, Young's or Ainsworth's Dictionary, Æsop's Fables, Eutropius, Cæsar's commentaries, Ovid, Virgil, Mair's introduction to making Latin, Cicero in usam Delphini-Wettenhall's Greek Grammar, the Greek testament, Lucian's Dialogues, Homer and Xenophon. Let those who wish to demonstrate the problems of Euclid, procure Stone's edition of that author. Each scholar at entrance must pay one quarter in advance.

"We hereby pledge ourselves to the public that no attention shall be wanting on our part towards the youth entrusted to our care, either in point of morality or science, and hope to discharge our official duties with all good fidelity.

"STEPHEN B. BALCH
"LEMUEL HEDGE.

"GEORGETOWN, Oct. 11, 1798."

There are two copies known of two sermons by Dr. Balch *On the Certain and Final Perseverance*

of the Saints, that were published at Georgetown at the beginning of February, 1791, and which are believed to be the first publication printed within the District of Columbia. Of these two copies one was presented to the Library of Princeton University by A. A. E. Taylor of the class of 1854 of Princeton. The other copy belongs to the Messrs. W. H. Lowdermilk and Company, of Washington, D. C. Through the courtesy of John T. Loomis, Esq., managing partner of that firm, the title page of this publication is reproduced full size, and the sermons are reprinted.

TWO SERMONS
ON THE
CERTAIN AND FINAL
PERSEVERANCE OF THE SAINTS.
BY
STEPHEN BLOOMER BALCH, A. M.
Pastor
of the
Presbyterian Congregation,
George-Town.

PSALM XCII. 12.

The Righteous shall flourish like a
Palm-tree; He shall grow like
a cedar in Lebanon.

George-Town: Printed, for the Author, by
M. Day and W. Hancock.
M, DCC, XCI.

TWO SERMONS,

ON THE

CERTAIN AND FINAL

Perſeverance *of the* Saints.

BY

STEPHEN BLOOMER BALCH, A. M.
PASTOR
OF THE
PRESBYTERIAN CONGREGATION,
GEORGE-TOWN.

PSALM XCII. 12.

THE RIGHTEOUS SHALL FLOURISH LIKE A PALM-TREE; HE SHALL GROW LIKE A CEDAR IN LEBANON.

GEORGE-TOWN: PRINTED, FOR THE AUTHOR, BY
M. DAY AND W. HANCOCK
M.DCC,XCI.

To the
Inhabitants of George-town,
But especially
To the
Author's Hearers,
The following
SERMONS
are
As a public testimony of respect,
Inscribed;
By their servant,
In the Gospel,
STEPHEN B. BALCH.

GEORGE-TOWN, Feb. 1, 1791.

PREFACE.

The following Sermons were, at first, delivered by the author to the Presbyterian Congregation, in George-Town. They are now, with a few alterations, published, by particular request.—Many, probably, will charge him with ostentation, merely, because his name is prefixed to them. It was once intended they should have been anonymous; but, reflecting, that it is hardly possible for the author of such a publication to remain long concealed; that there is often as much, sometimes more vanity discoverable, in withholding, than in prefixing the true signature; for these reasons, the Sermons tell the name of their author.

They are now sent out into a carping, sensorious world, attended with his ardent wishes and prayers, that they may be blessed for the comfort, edification and establishment of the churches of Christ. He has only to add, that, although what he endeavors to prove may be denied by many pious persons, yet he earnestly intreats even those to read these discourses with attention, and without prejudice.

SERMON I.

The Certain and Final Perseverance of the Saints Asserted and Proved.

JOB XVII. 9.

The Righteous also shall hold on his way; And he that hath clean hands shall be stronger and stronger.

My Friends,

An attachment to the doctrines and modes of practice, peculiar to each religious sect, has ever been discoverable in the conduct of their respective members. What appears strange is, this attachment has manifested itself by an open opposition to those who differed from them, and is deeply rooted and interwoven in the hearts of the wicked as well as the godly. We frequently see men notorious for wickedness, to appearance, as zealous, sometimes more so, for the special tenets and practices of their own sect, than the truly pious are for those which characterize the respective denominations to which they belong. Saint Paul was a Pharisee, and, as he himself declared, in the presence of King Agrippa, he was one of the most straitest of that sect. Of all others, he was the most violent opposer and persecutor of Christ, in his mystical members. For this he had no reason more solid, than that the scheme of Christianity was directly opposed to that system of religion which he had adopted as his own. The Sadducees also, were avowed enemies to the doctrines and practices of the disciples of Christ; merely, because they believed and taught the resurrection of the dead, and a state of future rewards and punishments, after death; all which they strenuously and boldly denied.

This attachment to and partiality for every punctilio, in what they supposed to be related either to the doctrines, or to the modes of practice introduced by Jesus Christ, were carried to an extravagant height by the apostles themselves, at least in some instances.

The disciples were sent out to preach—to heal the sick—to raise the dead—and, to cast out devils: In their travels they met with one employed in expelling the evil spirits from those that were possessed. They straightway forbad him, because he did not do and say exactly as they did. But in this they erred; for our Saviour, in answer to their declaration, said, Forbid him not. Such was their zeal for their own party, that they would willingly, have destroyed those who acted contrary to their wishes. A village in Samaria would not receive their master: Lord, say they, wilt thou that we command fire to come down from heaven and consume them? This was a manifestation of party-zeal, which was not according to knowledge; for our Saviour immediately turned and rebuked them, saying to them, Ye know not what spirit ye are of.

Human nature is the same in every age of the world; and, therefore, whatever was the conduct and temper of religious sects, long ago, with respect to themselves and to others who thought differently from them, this same conduct and temper are discoverable, in a greater or lesser degree, in the respective members of the several religious societies into which Christendom is, at present, divided.—They have a zeal, not well regulated, and they are too closely wedded to everything that may be called peculiar to themselves.

From this enthusiastic misplaced zeal, and from this narrow, partial temper, have originated, in a great

measure, all the furious persecutions which have brought millions to the stake; drenched the world in human blood, disgraced rationality itself, and filled the pages, both of profane and sacred history, with the execrable deeds of men.

I am, pointedly, against persecuting, or speaking evil, or bitter things about any religious sect whatsoever. Let them only demean themselves, as good, peaceable members of the civil communities to which they respectively belong, and, I am fully persuaded, they ought to be privileged with the belief of their own peculiar doctrines; with the exercise of their own particular modes of worship, and with the full and free use of the unalienable rights of their own consciences. Every individual, and every religious sect, of a persecuting spirit, should read the speech, and copy the example of Gamaliel, a doctor of the law among the Jews. The Sadducees had laid hands upon, and put the Apostles into the common prison, for teaching things contrary to their faith and practice. An angel of the Lord had unbolted the doors of the prison, and commanded them to depart to the temple, and to speak to the people all the words of this life. When immediately engaged in fulfilling this mandate, a captain, with his officers, came, and as it appears, persuaded them to appear before the Jewish council for trial. They came. The high priest put many questions to them, which gave Peter an opportunity of addressing his judges in a warm and pointed manner. He did so. They were filled with resentment and indignation against the apostles. At this crisis, says the sacred historian, there stood up in the council a Pharisee, named Gamaliel, a doctor of the law, had in reputation among all the people, and commanded to

put the apostles forth a little space; and he said unto them, Ye men of Israel, take heed to yourselves what ye intend to do as touching these men. For before those days rose up Theudas, boasting himself to be somebody to whom a number of men, about four hundred, joined themselves; who was slain, and all, as many as obeyed him, were scattered and brought to nought.

After this man rose up Judas of Gallilee, in the days of the taxing, and drew away much people after him; he also perished, and all, even as many as obeyed him, were dispersed. And now, I say unto you, refrain from these men, and let them alone; for if this counsel, or this work be of men, it will come to nought; but if it be of God, ye cannot overthrow it; lest happily ye be found even to fight against God. There is so much good sense in this address, and there was, in my judgment, so much propriety in repeating it in this place, that I could not well avoid it. And I ardently wish the sentiments it contains were deeply engraven upon the hearts of all who call themselves Christians; and that the example set by Gamaliel, may ever be copied by mankind in general. In this case, more unanimity and love would every where abound among different denominations of Christians.

But notwithstanding what has now been said, and although persecution for the sake of religion ought to be held in detestation; yet, certainly, there can no good reasons be given which should hinder those, who think differently about matters of faith and practice, from talking, or writing, in a calm, dispassionate manner, about their respective opinions, that he, who is in an error, may meet with full conviction. The rule to be observed in this case, is to make use of soft

words and hard arguments. This was our Saviour's practice. When he saw men in an error, if that was very dangerous, he took the most effectual methods to show them where their mistake lay; and he generally treated such with tenderness and compassion; exhibiting meekness of temper, for which he was eminently remarkable. The apostles themselves reasoned, both in private and in public, with those who had been misinformed, and by this means directed them into the right way. Sometimes those popular teachers disputed with men, who they knew had imbibed erroneous opinions; and the happy consequences commonly were, that they were convinced and brought to the knowledge of the truth.

What I have now said seems to justify the design, as well as the general strain of these discourses. The intention of them is to correct an error in doctrine, and the manner of doing this, is reasoning meekly and calmly. Had I found fault with some particular mode in practice, I should not have taken so much pains to correct it; but the fundamental doctrines of the Christian religion should, I apprehend, be well supported and defended.

It is really distressing, to men of piety and sensibility, to see the children of the same father, the members of the same family, the followers of the same Jesus, and the expectants of the same future happiness, mutually encouraging variances and dissentions, one with another, about doctrines which, in fact, support the Christian system.

In no age, perhaps, have those variances and dissentions arisen to a greater height, than in the present. Tenets, which by many have been received as orthodox,

are now, by great multitudes, entirely exploded, and others, directly opposite, are embraced, countenanced, and taught, both in public and in private.

The certain and final perseverance of the Saints, is a doctrine which was certainly believed and published by the writers of the Old and the New Testament. It has been embraced and firmly credited, by many of the faithful, ever since God has had a church in the world. Long ago it was contradicted by Arminius, a Low Country divine; and, ever since his time, his followers and adherents have been its violent opposers.

The state of the dispute, or question, seems to be this: Those who advocate the final perseverance of the Saints, affirm, That a man, who is once made a child of God, by regeneration, justification, adoption, and sanctification, though he may, and frequently does fall into sin, yet he will persevere in his religious course of life, and will finally be made happy in the enjoyment of God forever.—Those who deny the final perseverance of the Saints, assert, That a man of the above description, even when he has obtained the greatest degree of sanctification of which he is capable in this life, may, and frequently does fall away, from that advanced state of grace, totally and finally, insomuch, that after death he is made everlastingly miserable.

This, if I mistake not, is a just and fair state of the different opinions entertained by those who contend about the final perseverance of the Saints. I fully agree, in judgment, with all who advocate this doctrine; not because it was taught me in my childhood, but because I find it clearly asserted and strongly supported by the Word of God; and, because it appears to me to be the opinion, of the two, which is most consistent

with reason, and the sentiments and experience of those who have had the best opportunity of acquiring an enlightened information.

Indeed, those who contend for, and teach the total and final apostacy of the believer, inculcate a doctrine, as I suppose, in its tendency, subversive of the Word of Truth; derogatory from the honor of God, and uncomfortable to the children of the heavenly King. And nothing but such a view of it could have induced me to appear in print, in vindication of that which stands directly opposed to it.

If we apprehend the meaning which the Spirit of God intended to convey by the text, the words of it contain and establish the whole truth for which we contend, and something more: For they assert, That a true believer shall persevere in his religious course of life; and, also, that he shall increase and grow in grace. He shall hold on his way: he shall be stronger and stronger. That is, he shall not only retain those graces, which were implanted in his soul when he was made a new creature, but those graces themselves shall, also, be increased, or strengthened, in his progress towards Heaven.

In my further enlargement upon this subject, I propose, through the assistance of Divine Grace,

I. To support and prove the doctrine contained in the text:—That a true believer will persevere in his religious course of life; and that he will grow in grace; or, in the words of the text, will hold on his way, and be stronger and stronger.

II. To state and answer some of the plainest and most weighty objections which are usually laid in against the Saints Perseverance and Growth in Grace.

III. To conclude with a practical application of what may be said.

I. I am to support and prove the doctrine contained in the text: That a true believer will persevere in his religious course of life; and that he will grow in grace; or, in the words of the text, will hold on his way, and be stronger and stronger. This proposition is complex in its nature, and divides itself into two parts, each of which must be distinctly illustrated. If we can demonstrate the truth of this proposition, in both its parts, the opinion directly opposed to it, namely, That a true believer may, and frequently does, fall from grace, totally and finally, will, of necessity, be superseded or set aside. There is so wide a difference between moving onward in the paths of holiness, having these graces strengthened and confirmed more and more: which graces, at first, constituted him holy, or righteous; and that of falling for ever from grace, that to support and prove the former will, without doubt, destroy the latter. If the one is a truth, the other cannot but be false.

I confess, however, it puts me a little to a stand to fix upon a proper method of proceeding in this demonstration. There are some who will believe nothing which is not pointedly proved by Holy Scripture; many there are who wrest its meaning to their own destruction; and even when it is opened up to them, in a plain and rational way, they with great reluctance admit the light; and rather than confess their error, and ask further assistance, they often put such a construction upon it, as they suppose will best establish what they have adopted as an article of their faith. A third class depend much upon close reasoning, and the opinions and experience of men of genius and im-

proved talents, for the confirmation and establishment of their belief about Christian Doctrines.

It will be best as I suppose, that the multitude at large may be satisfied; first to prove the doctrine by Scripture, and, in doing so, to avoid, as much as possible, making use of any passages, except such as are plain, that every one may see and be convinced of their proper application; and if at any time some proofs, a little dark and intricate, should be brought forward, these must be explained in a clear and satisfactory manner. When we have established the truth proposed, in the way now mentioned, we will give it all the support we can, by reason, and by the sentiments and experience of those who have had the best opportunities of knowing.

And oh! that the Spirit of God may enlighten my understanding and guide my pen, while employed in vindicating His own truth.

1. Then, let us endeavor to support and prove the doctrine of the Saints Perseverance by the Word of God. This was given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine; for reproof; for correction; and, for instruction in righteousness. It is a sure word of prophesy, whereunto we do well that we take heed as unto a light that shineth in a dark place. And let Deists and Infidels say what they will, it contains all those things about religion which should be believed and practised, by such as are seeking future happiness according to the will of their Creator.

I begin with the words of the wise and inspired Solomon. *Proverbs, XXIV. 16. A just man falleth seven times, and riseth up again.* This is full to our purpose, and beautifully illustrates and supports that for which

we contend. We grant, as I have already hinted, that a good man may, and frequently does fall into sin; but, at the same time, we strenuously assert, that he will be deeply penitent for his transgressions, and will still hold on his way. These ideas are clearly contained in the text just now mentioned. A just man falleth seven times;—that is, he falleth frequently; but still he riseth up again. Our antagonists cannot turn this argument against us, by saying, the Christian cannot be progressive in his religious course of life, when he falls: For they might as well assert, that a man, who sets out on a journey, and by chance stumbles and falls now and then, tho' he rises and pursues his journey, is not progressive in his motion, as to say, that a Christian, who falls now and then into sin, though he repents of it, does not hold on in his religious course of life.

As a further testimony of the truth of this important and comfortable doctrine, let us attend to the words of God himself, published to the Israelites by his prophet Hosea. *Hosea, II. 19, 20. And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in loving-kindness, and in mercies. I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness, and thou shalt know the Lord.* In these passages, the great God is the speaker, though he makes use of the prophet as an instrument, to confirm the believing Israelites in the faith of their perseverance. He makes the bargain, not for a day, a month, or a year—but for ever; and, in the tenor of the covenant he puts a gracious promise, which his justice, mercies, and faithfulness are bound to have fulfilled: I will betroth thee unto me, says he, for ever, and that in righteousness, and in mercies, and in faithfulness.

To establish the truth yet more strongly and fully, and thereby to convince gainsayers, we have the express words of him who was greater than a prophet, even Jesus the Mediator. *John, X. 28, 29. And I give unto them eternal life, and they shall never perish; neither shall any pluck them out of my hand: My Father which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand.* He is here speaking of true believers, to whom, he says, he gives eternal life; by which is plainly intended, that he communicates the principles of spiritual life in this world, which will issue in eternal life in that world which lies beyond the grave:—He adds, And they shall never perish; neither shall any pluck them out of my hand. Comfortable doctrine, indeed, to every child of God! They have made an happy escape from that imminent danger of eternal death, to which they were every moment exposed, while in a state of nature! Their faces are turned towards the city of the living God; and though they are in an enemies land, yet the Captain of their Salvation has taken fast hold of them: None, however subtle; none, however envious, shall be able to pluck them out of his hand. He goes on to confirm believers more and more in the Faith of their Perseverance: For this purpose, he brings to their view the power of God—My Father is greater than all: He is above all—superior to all the believer's enemies, both temporal and spiritual; and, surely, as if he had said, he will never permit created weakness to overcome infinite, uncreated power. He will not stop here; but from the greatness and superiority of his Father, concludes, for the consolation of his followers, that no man is able to pluck them out of his Father's hand. He represents believers as held fast by the hand

of God, so that none can, by strength, power, or stratagem, arrest them from him. My Father, says he, is Almighty; he has an arm of power; his hand is invincibly strong; worlds unnumbered are supported and upheld by it; and, surely, since he has taken hold of believers with this powerful hand, they need not be afraid that he will suffer them utterly to fall away from grace.

Nothing can be more full to our purpose, than the words of the apostle Peter: *I Peter, I. 5. Who are kept by the power of God, through faith, unto salvation.* That we may see the scope, and feel the full force of this passage of God's word, when applied as a proof, for establishing the Final Perseverance of the Saints, we must observe, the apostle in the preceding verses had been excited to ascriptions of praise and thanksgiving to God the Father, and to his Son Jesus Christ; because, by the resurrection of the latter, believers had been begotten again unto a lively hope; and to an inheritance incorruptible, undefiled, and that fadeth not away—which inheritance, he assures the saints, was reserved in heaven for them; who, says he, are kept by the power of God, through faith, unto salvation. Here we are presented with a view of two things employed in the believer's preservation and perseverance; these are, the Power of God, and Faith. The power of the Omnipotent God is engaged to bring him to glory: That almighty power, which nothing can resist—that almighty power, which upholds the vast fabric of creation—that almighty power, before which the strongest created beings feel their absolute weakness—that almighty power, for fear of which all the infernal hosts shrink into the burning pit, and would gladly hide themselves from its irresistible operations. This power, on the one hand, exerts itself in

promoting every believer's perseverance. On the other hand, faith, saving faith, and if saving, it will bring the believer to salvation, is employed as an instrument in the preservation and perseverance of the saints. Faith realizes the invisible things of the other world; presents them to the view of the servants of God; gives them ravishing conceptions of that exceeding and eternal weight of glory, for the enjoyment of which they have long sighed; teaches them a contempt of the vanities of the world; fortifies them against temptations of every kind, and puts songs of victory and triumph in their mouths. When, by faith, believers get a sight of the promised Land, and the glories and pleasures to be enjoyed there, their enemies may combine, and plan their ruin, but they cannot effect it. Death, in her most frightful shape, will have no influence in producing a revolt; but, frequently, the stronger the temptations, and the more fierce the torments employed to make them cease from their perseverance, so much the more are they determined to overcome; and so much the more are their views of future happiness rendered clear and attracting, and their anxieties, for the enjoyment of it, strengthened and increased. This was the case with Stephen, the first Christian Martyr. His persecutors were full of rage, and gnashed on him with their teeth, and in his presence prepared instruments for his death. But, we are told, his face was like the face of an angel—and now his faith became so strong that it evidently disclosed to him the glories of the other world; for he saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God.

I am so much pleased with this subject, and find such a fulness in Holy Writ for its support, that I hardly

know when or where to stop. Unprejudiced Christians will be glad to read the many proofs I am bringing forward to establish the Saints progressive motion towards Heaven; and, for their comfort and encouragement, I shall still proceed:—See, to this purpose, *John IV. 14, I. Peter I. 23. But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him, shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him, shall be in him a well of water springing up unto everlasting life. Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the Word of God which liveth and abideth forever.* In the one of these passages, grace, in the believer's heart, is compared to a fountain which is never dried up or exhausted, but continually sends forth streams of water: In the other, it is compared to a seed that never dies; to a seed that is not subject to corruption. The comparisons, in both cases, are, no doubt, very just; and, if so, they prove, that grace once communicated, can never be lost.

Let us now hear the conclusion of the seraphic Saint *Paul*, when speaking upon, and in support of, the saints progress in the paths of holiness. In the eighth chapter of his epistle to the Romans, he issues an absolute challenge to all created beings, and defies them, by their might, cruelty or policy, to effect a separation between Christ and his followers. *Who*, says he, *shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation? or distress? or persecution? or famine? or nakedness? or peril? or sword? For I am persuaded that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.* I ask those, who deny the believer's perseverance, what does

the apostle mean by those strong expressions? Does he intend by them that the saints are in imminent danger of turning devils incarnate, and of going down to the sides of the pit? Surely you will not, you can not, you dare not take this sense from them. Read them with attention; consider their purport, and you must say, that Saint Paul, in these verses, declares, that neither things in hell, nor things upon earth, nor yet things in heaven, acting separately or conjunctly, can, by any means, produce a separation between Christ and a believing soul; and, if this cannot be effected, every one of his genuine followers will persevere in his christian course of life.

Having established the truth contained in the first part of the proposition, by the testimony of scripture, I must now apply myself to prove the other part of it, in the same way, namely, That the graces of a true believer will be stronger and stronger as he advances onward toward heaven. Both the Old and the New Testament contain passages clearly indicative of this truth. For the sake of instruction and conviction let us read and examine the sense of the text: The righteous shall be stronger and stronger. It is not said, he may gather strength; but there is an absolute promise included in the words; He shall be stronger and stronger. We must also observe, that God is the one who makes the promise, by his servant Job; and, surely, he is able to perform; neither is he a man that he should lie, or the son of man, that he should repent. From this, let us turn our eyes to a passage still more plain and convincing, *Prov. IV. 18. But the path of the just is as the shining light, which shineth more and more unto the perfect day.* Grace, when first implanted in the heart,

is like the morning light, both weak and dim. The light grows stronger as the sun advances; in like manner, as the Christian moves on towards heaven, his graces grow stronger and shine brighter. Let us read, to the same purpose, *Psalm XCII. 12, 13, 14*, and *Malachi IV. 2. The righteous shall flourish like the palm-tree: he shall grow like a cedar in Lebanon. Those that be planted in the house of the Lord, shall flourish in the courts of our God. They shall still bring forth fruit in old age; they shall be fat and flourishing. But unto you that fear my name shall the sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.*

We have, also, evidences of this truth in the New Testament: *James IV. 16. But he giveth more grace. John XV. 2. And every branch that beareth fruit, he purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit. Philippians I. 6. Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you, will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ.* How exceedingly plain and strong are these texts, to prove the point under consideration; and how very hard it is to construe them in any other way, or to understand them as being applicable for the support of any other doctrine. He, that is, God, gives more grace; that is, greater degrees of it. God the Father purges by afflictions, trials and temptations, those who are real, though they may be weak believers, and by those means he renders them more fruitful—that is, their graces are made stronger; they shine brighter; have a greater similitude to God himself, and, in their lives and conversations, copy more exactly Jesus their great Forerunner and Redeemer. In the heart of every pious person, God has really begun a good work; and the

opinion of Saint Paul was, that it would be carried on, not for a day, or a year, but until the day of Jesus Christ. He was convinced, that every true believer would be ripened for glory, and would come to his grave like a shock of corn in his proper season.

In pursuance of the method laid down, we must, secondly, prove the Saint's Perseverance and Growth in Grace by reasoning on it. We adduce, as arguments in support of their perseverance, God's tenderness and compassion for his children, and the high value he sets upon them. Every true believer is a child of God; a member in his numerous family. For every such child he has bowels of compassion. Will he then suffer him to revolt entirely, and have his name blotted out of his book for ever? We shudder at the conclusion—we cannot believe it; for he tells us, by David, Like as a father pitieth his children, so the Lord pitieth them that fear him. Will a tender father suffer the children of his youth and riper years to forsake his family forever? He will not:—Neither will God suffer those who are once made his, and enrolled with his children, entirely to revolt from him. On the contrary, he will make use of means by which he will attach them more and more to himself—He will enlarge their hearts, that they may run in the way of his commandments. He will draw them, that they may run after him. Besides, God sets a high value on believers. He calls them his own; considers them as his jewels; and declares they shall be his in that day when he makes up his jewels. Will a man suffer his jewels to be lost? No; he prizes them at a high rate. Neither will God allow his sons, who are jewels in his eyes, to be lost; consequently they must, having once set out upon their journey heaven-

ward, continue in it until they arrive at the place of their destination.

The perseverance of the saints may be argued from the greatness of the price paid for them; from the continued intercession of the Redeemer, in their behalf; and from the great and precious promises made to them by God, in Christ. The price paid was infinite; for the human and divine natures were united in Jesus, which enhanced the value of his obedience and death. He was, also, the substitute and surety of believers; and when they are brought out of a state of nature, into a state of grace, his obedience and sufferings are considered by God, the Judge, as their own. But if they do not persevere, these are lost, with respect to them—Shocking idea! Shall we thus make a trifle of an all-perfect righteousness, and set at nought the superlatively great and stupendous sufferings of the Son of the eternal God? Christ also intercedes for the perseverance of believers: For we are told, by John, that if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the Righteous. And he declared, himself, that his Father heard him always. He prayed for Peter that his faith should not fail. His advocacy, or intercession, must be effectual, since his Father is ever ready to grant his requests. Believe it then, my friends, that the Saviour of men, though he was once transfixed to a cross, has been for many ages upon a throne, supporting the character of a Powerful Advocate for all believers. Shall the Christian's enemies then overcome one, who bought him at so great a price, and who constantly presents his obedience and sufferings to his Father, as arguments in favor of his progressive motion towards heaven? Certainly no. Besides, there are great and precious promises made,

by God, to believers, in Christ; and we ought to believe that these promises will be fulfilled; and if so, every follower of the Lamb must, and will, persevere. I, says God to his people, will never leave thee, nor forsake thee. For the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from me. To which, let me add the words of David. The steps of a good man are ordered by the Lord; and he delighteth in his way. Though he fall, he shall not utterly be cast down; for the Lord upholdeth them with his hand.

The point under consideration may be proved from the union which takes place between Christ and his people: This union is of the most intimate nature—it is like that of the head and the members; or, like that of the vine and the branches. Now he that is joined unto the Lord, is one Spirit, and he is made a partaker of the Divine Nature; how then is it possible, that the believer can apostatize from God, totally and finally? He is made a member of Christ, spiritually; he is cut off from the old stock, in which he was growing, in a state of nature, and he is really engrafted into Jesus Christ—the same spirit operates in both; surely then he must go forward towards the perfection of his nature.

Reason, also, tells us, that such an one will grow stronger and stronger; for, it is the nature of grace to aspire to its native place, to rise to its giver. As the Spirit of God carries on a work of sanctification in the man, it is his business to kill the evil qualities of the heart; the person's love for the world is destroyed; his corruptions of every kind are gradually weakened, and, by consequence, grace takes a deeper and a faster hold of his heart. The more he dies to sin, the more and the stronger does he grow in grace. He bears the fruits

of the spirit, love, joy, peace, faith, meekness, humility and patience; and these, by degrees, gathering strength, render him ripe for glory, and make him a suitable companion for saints and angels.

For the sake of argumentation, we will, for a moment, grant all that our antagonists contend for; and we will say, a believer may, and frequently does fall from grace, totally, and finally, and, consequently, does not grow in grace: Then let us notice the absurdities that will unavoidably take place. A true believer, has true faith. That faith is the effect of God's having made a choice of him—and that choice is the unchangeable purpose of God. Now, if he loses his faith, the eternal purpose of God must also be lost, or, at least, rendered ineffectual: This is an absurdity, however, too gross to be admitted. Again, if the believer does not persevere, he loses his faith; but faith is the condition of the Covenant of Grace, and therefore the Covenant itself may also be abrogated, with respect to those who cease to believe; but, the covenant also is immutable; for God says, expressly, *I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from me, Jeremiah XXXII. 40.* Again, if the believer falls away from grace, totally and finally, or does not persevere, it may sometimes happen, that he that believes has not eternal life, even when he does believe; for he loses that life, and, consequently, it could not be an eternal life: But Christ says, expressly, That every believer, without exception, has eternal life abiding in him. The believer, say our antagonists, does not increase or grow stronger in grace—Then he grows weaker. But this would be to say, That a man may be a Child of God,

and yet not have the work of sanctification carried on in his heart at all—Very absurd would such a conclusion be! For the Spirit of God is given as a spirit of holiness to all and every Christian, and he kills sin, and strengthens grace. I have been thus particular to put this matter out of dispute, and to vindicate a great and comfortable Gospel Truth from illiberal abuse.

We come now to the third and last source of argumentation, by which we mean to support, or, at least, to strengthen the Doctrine of the Saints final Perseverance and Growth in Grace: viz. By the opinions and experience of those who have had the best opportunities of acquiring an enlightened information.

I do not mean, that the opinions and experience of men shall be taken as absolute, incontestible evidence, in favor of the proposition we are endeavoring to establish. For it ever was and ever will be a truth, that good and wise men are liable to mistakes. But granting this, they ought to have some weight in determining our belief about doctrines. Upon the saints final perseverance and growth in grace, the fathers, who succeeded the apostles in the work of the ministry, spoke very clearly. Tertullian, eminently pious and learned, has this remarkable expression:—"How glorious a thing "it is, that Christians are carried on by little and little, "until they arrive to perfect happiness in the new Jeru- "salem." Saint Gregory says, "That the righteous man "travels on, from one degree of grace and strength, un- "til another, until he meets the light of Heaven." These venerable fathers seem, in those sentences, to have given the opinions of those who lived in their respective ages.

I need not tell my readers, that Zuinglius, Calvin, and

Luther, contended for the doctrine we advocate; for they must, generally, be acquainted with their sentiments concerning it. In support of the saints progressive motion in the paths of holiness, and of their growth in grace, let me call, as witnesses, the determinations of the different Synods and General Councils which have long adorned the Presbyterian Churches in several parts of the world. The Low Country divines, of this denomination, have long since established them both in deliberate assemblies. The Synods and councils of England, Scotland, and America, have done the same. Hear their sense of the matter, in the seventeenth article of that church: "They whom God hath accepted in "his beloved, effectually called, and sanctified by his "spirit, can neither totally nor finally fall away from "a state of grace, but shall certainly persevere therein "unto the end, and be eternally saved." And this article has been accepted as a part of the creed of the Presbyterian Church in America. In another place they speak of believer's spiritual nourishment and growth in grace, which certainly is inseparably connected with perseverance.

Next I must bring into my assistance the sentiments of the pious framers of the articles and liturgy of the Protestant Episcopal Church, who, certainly, advocated that for which we contend. Hear their conclusion in their seventeenth article. They have been speaking of those whom God hath chosen for happiness out of mankind—Such, they assert, are bro't, by Christ, to everlasting salvation. They go on, and say, "Wherefore "they which be endued with so excellent a benefit of "God, be called according to God's purpose, his spirit "working in due season: They, through grace, obey the

"calling: They he justified freely: They he made sons "of God by adoption: They he made like the image of "his only begotten Son, Jesus Christ: They walk relig- "iously in good works; and, at length, by God's mer- "cies, they attain everlasting felicity." Can anything be stronger or more full to our purpose, than what we have now repeated? Certainly not.

I am unhappy, that my not being acquainted with the articles of the Baptist, and some other churches of note, prevents me from bringing in their sentiments, as supports of the proposition endeavored to be proved in this discourse. That the members of the Baptist Church think as we do about it, I know to be a fact; but the words they make use of, I cannot here put down.

What shall I say more? Let experience, or that knowledge which Christians have acquired by trial and practice, here speak in behalf of the saints perseverance and growth in grace. She will, I am persuaded, give in her verdict in our favor:—She will force every believer to say, that, in the midst of temptations, and sins, and afflictions, he has found a strong inclination to go forward; that he has often felt a heavy stroke given to the body of death within him, and, by consequence, he has felt his graces taking a deeper root in his soul, and becoming stronger and more fruitful. Could we, my brethren, pass from this to the other world, and appeal to the experience of all the righteous, who have arrived safe in those realms of perfect peace and love, I am fully persuaded we should have a new illustration of both parts of the proposition. They would tell us, that since their admission into those regions of felicity, they have often been exhilarated and lost in wonder, when they took a view of the instru-

ments employed by their divine Master, in conducting them to, and preparing them for Heaven. They would, there is no doubt, extol, in songs of joy, the wisdom, power, and faithfulness of their Almighty Benefactor. Their tongues would loudly recommend that faith by which they walked while on earth, and which, with respect to them, is now turned into sight. Above all, hallelujahs would burst from every mouth to their Advocate, Jesus Christ. They would all, with one consent, acknowledge, that back to perdition they could not have gone; that before them the path was open, along which they were compelled to travel; and, that all things wrought together to establish and strengthen their graces. This would be the language of the Patriarchs: It would be re-echoed by the united voices of all the Prophets, Apostles, and Martyrs. In a single word, the meanest Saints, in the upper Temple, would tell us, experimentally, that perseverance and growth in grace are inseparably connected with true religion; and that, from the moment of their conversion until their dissolution, they made progress heaven-ward, and became stronger and stronger.

I have now, my friends, proved the first doctrinal proposition: In doing this, a variety of arguments have been employed. These have been drawn from scripture, reason, opinions and experience. This was done in order to satisfy every class of men, and to put the matter in dispute, as much as possible, beyond controversy.[134]

---

[134] I am conscious that the attentive reader will perceive some small disorder in the management of the different arguments made use of: This was occasioned by the complex nature of the proposition laid down for discussion. It consisted of two parts, or branches, inseparably connected, and yet capable of distinct illustration.—It

Leaving the objections usually laid in against what has been said, together, with an improvement of the whole, for the ground of another discourse, I conclude this in the words of the Apostle *Jude:—Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present you, faultless, before the presence of his glory, with exceeding joy; to the only wise God, our Saviour, be glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever.* Amen.

SERMON II.

OBJECTIONS, TO THE FINAL PERSEVERANCE AND SPIRITUAL GROWTH OF THE SAINTS, STATED AND ANSWERED.

JOB XVII. 9.

The righteous also shall hold on his way; and he that hath clean hands shall be stronger and stronger.

MY FRIENDS,

In the preceding discourse, upon this subject, after a suitable introduction, it was proposed,

I. To support and prove the doctrine contained in the text:—That a true believer will persevere in his religious course of life; and that he will grow in grace; or, in the words of the text, will hold on his way, and be stronger and stronger.

---

was, therefore, necessary to have an eye to both through the whole of the sermon, and to establish them in the order in which they were at first mentioned. They go hand in hand, and the one or the other being proved, the other is inferable from it; for there must be growth in grace where there is perseverance, and, certainly, there can be no growth in grace if perseverance is wanting.

II. To state and answer some of the plainest and most weighty objections which are usually laid in against the Saints Perseverance and Growth in Grace.

III. To conclude with a practical application of what might be said.

The truth of the first of these propositions, in both its parts, I have already proved, by a variety of strong arguments—and, had not the present age been productive of great multitudes, who are disposed to lay in objections against what has been advanced, the subject might have been closed, with a warm and interesting improvement of what had been said. However, as matters are circumstanced, I am under the necessity of meeting our opponents upon their own ground, and must endeavor, in this discourse, to state and answer their several objections to the truth of what we have asserted and proved, in the preceding sermon: When I have done this, a door will be opened for a practical application of the whole subject. Here I cannot do less than to call down the assistance of the Holy Ghost, both upon myself and you:—May he enable me to speak, and you to hear, as become the oracles of God to be spoken and heard. Two plans are concerted, in order to set aside and overthrow the truth, and even the probability of our opinion. 1st. The objectors suppose, certain bad consequences will unavoidably follow from the admission of that for which we have contended, and making these bad consequences the foundation, they erect upon it a superstructure, as they fondly suppose, high enough to overtop, and weighty enough to overthrow, all we have advanced. This is chiefly done in the way of reasoning. But as there are many who are not wholly satisfied with this

process, there is a 2d. plan adopted for destroying the truth of our doctrinal proposition, that is, they form a proposition directly opposed to it, namely, That a true believer may, and frequently does, fall away from a state of grace, and, consequently, from growing in grace, totally and finally; insomuch, that after death he is made everlastingly miserable. The truth of this position they attempt to establish by the Word of God; and, I will say, I have not a single doubt but that they believe they prove it, in a manner, plain and full. These two schemes it must now be my work to exhibit, one after the other, and, in the same order, to point out their insufficiency for accomplishing the end at which they aim.

1st. Then, granting the truth and certainty of the believer's final perseverance, growth in grace, and the impossibility of his falling from grace totally and finally, have a direct tendency, say our opponents, to encourage an inattention to christian duties. Upon this matter they reason thus:—If we are true believers, we shall certainly persevere; we shall grow stronger; it is impossible for us to fall from grace totally and finally, according to your plan; we will not, therefore, bestir ourselves, in the smallest degree, about those matters; we will attend to the exercise of no duties whatsoever. The bare repetition of such sentiments does, in my judgment, justify us in drawing the conclusion, that those who make use of them either have no true religion at all, or, that they are very ignorant of, and have, as yet, felt very few of those effects which unavoidably follow, upon being brought out of darkness into God's marvellous light. Have we not seen that Saint Paul gave full credence to what we have advocated? Cer-

tainly we have. Had it then such an influence on his conduct? Was he inattentive to, and negligent of, the duties which belonged to, and were obligatory on Christians? No; he was far otherwise—He laboured more abundantly than all the apostles—He was frequent in the exercise of prayer and praise—His love to God was strong and very fervent. For the promotion of his master's honour, and his own soul's peace, he denied himself, took up his cross, and followed him. He declared, in this he exercised himself, to have a conscience void of offence toward God and toward man. In a single word, he performed, punctiliously, every duty which he was convinced he owed either to himself, his fellow-men, or to his Creator. And did he perform all these things knowing, at the same time, that he was bending his course heaven-ward; that he was, consequently, growing stronger in grace; and that it was impossible for him to fall away from grace? Surely he did. He knew these were some of the means appointed by God for the promotion of these important things just now mentioned, and therefore he could not, he would not neglect them. He knew he should reach the mark—And, he knew as well, that he must run with all his might towards it. Hence he tells us: *Phil. III., 12, 13, 14. Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus. Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended; but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before, I press toward the mark, for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.* Are these the words of the very same apostle who, in his epistle to the Romans,

boldly declares, that nothing can effect a separation between Christ and his followers? Yes; they are the words of the very same Paul. It is, then, sufficiently plain, that the belief of what we have proved, had no such pernicious influence upon his conduct, as the objectors to the doctrine calculate upon. On the contrary, his ardor in the Christian warfare was increased, and his graces shown brighter, which, I am fully persuaded, are the unavoidable fruits or consequences of a firm belief of what we have advocated. I draw this conclusion, not altogether from the example of Paul, and other holy men of whom we read in the Word of God; but, also, from some observations I have made myself. It was my lot long ago to live, for many years, among a people, who all believed in the certainty of every true Christian's final perseverance and spiritual growth, and in the consequent impossibility of their falling, for ever, from grace. These people were, in general, exemplary in their lives; seemed to be devoted to God, and to live to his glory. Vices, of every kind, they appeared both to hate and to shun: And upon a fair comparison, they were better magistrates, better subjects, better neighbors, better masters and mistresses, better husbands and wives, better parents and children, than I have, generally, known those to be who deny our doctrine, and infer such dreadful consequences from it. Why, then, should our opponents be alarmed, and cry out against the evil-tendency of that for which we plead? If such mischievous effects were concealed in our sentiments, would they not come forth uniformly and at all times? I apprehend it would, in common, be the case. From this objection, then, our opinion has received no harm:—It stands, as yet, unmoved.

Secondly, Our opponents state, That, allowing what we have contended for to be true, a door is opened for loose living, and all the exhortations, promises and threatnings, which are interspersed throughout the Word of God, are thereby, rendered entirely useless. These, say they, are the unavoidable evils which flow from such opinions, and, therefore, we cannot be persuaded of the truth and validity of what you have said in the former discourse. We pointedly deny that these conclusions can be drawn, with any degree of propriety, from the premises. With respect to the first of these objections, the Apostle *Paul* has given a short, but unsatisfactory answer to it, in Rom. VI., 1, 2. *What shall we say then, Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound? God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein?* In the close of the preceding chapter he had been shewing, that where sin abounded grace did much more abound; to which doctrine he foresaw some licentious persons might object, and say, If the riches of grace be thus manifested in the pardon of sin, may we not take more liberty and multiply our offences? This conclusion he rejects, with the greatest abhorrence, and shews it cannot be the case: How, says he, shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? We may, with great propriety, apply what the apostle here advances to those who object against our sentiments as favorable to licentiousness. Can you see any good reason at all for living and wallowing in iniquity, because you are Christians and traveling towards Heaven, and growing into a ripeness for perfect blessedness? Because you cannot, possibly, fall from grace, will you, therefore, prove, by your conduct, that you have no true grace? If you are God's children you are dead to sin: that is,

you have no relish for it, no desire after it. Had you your choice, you would not indulge a single thought, speak a single word, nor yet do a single action, which would be offensive to that God who has done so much for you: Much less would you be willing to give up to your irregular appetites and inclinations, and, having removed every impediment out of the way, yield yourselves up as servants to all kinds of wickedness. These reflections compel me to draw the conclusion, that those who oppose our sentiments, as being friendly to loose living, either do not understand the matter, or, which I fear is the case with many of them, they have never as yet had the love of God shed abroad in their hearts.

Our opponents add, that, in our plan, this other evil consequence is comprehended and naturally flows from it; namely, that the exhortations, promises, and threatenings, which are interspersed throughout the Word of God, are thereby rendered entirely useless and ineffectual to promote the end at which they aim. Would the All-wise Being, say they, tell believers to watch and pray, to grow in grace; and, that in him, who draws back, his soul shall have no pleasure, if their final perseverance and growth in grace were certainly fixed, insomuch, that there is no possibility of their falling away from these totally and finally? Surely all these may have a place in God's Word, and, nevertheless, what we have said remain, unalterably, true. God promises those blessings to believers; but, he promises them in and through means to be used by them. He communicates grace and strength to them, and makes them instruments in his own hand to promote his glory and their own real happiness. I would not be understood here as asserting, that the Christian's perseverance

and spiritual growth depend on his own exertions; far be that from me: But I say, God uses him as an instrument in his own hand, for promoting those important subjects. The All-wise knows his people's imperfections; knows that sin is not entirely vanquished; knows that every wrong step they take dishonors him and wounds their own souls; and, therefore, though he has established them in the ways of holiness, and will finally bring them to the participation of endless joys; yet, with great propriety, does he exhort them to go forward; promise rewards to the conqueror; and threaten to punish such as fall to his dishonour, though they be not utterly cast off. There are some circumstances, in the story of Paul's shipwreck, recorded in the Acts of the Apostles, which, if repeated, will throw light upon this matter, though they bear relation to earthly things. We will repeat them:—The ship was taken in a storm, and all the passengers, momently, expected to sink as lead in the mighty waters. At this crisis, an Angel of the Lord delivered Paul from his fears:—He promised him that he and all those who sailed with him, should get safe to land. The winds, however, became more boisterous; the waves ran high; the ship was tossed to and fro by them; fear seized upon the ship-men, and they determined to abandon her and the rest of the crew to the mercy of the triumphant billows. Paul immediately stepped forward and interposed his advice; saying, Except these abide in the ship ye cannot be saved. On the one hand, we have here the promise of God to the Apostle, that all the passengers should get safe to land; and, on the other hand, we have this same Apostle asserting, that if the ship-men left the ship, they could not be saved. The

promise then, of their salvation, and the means by which, under Providence, it was to be effected, were inseparably connected. Some how, after the same manner, it is with respect to that eternal life after which we look. True believers are exhorted to go forward towards it; they have promises made to them, that they shall certainly persevere and be prepared for it; they are told, that if they neglect the use of means, it will fair [*sic*] the worse with them; for, that they are to look for these blessings in the way of holiness and in the use of means, which are as certainly appointed as the end at which they aim.

These objections, then, against our sentiments, which state, that they open a door for licentiousness, and render the exhortations, promises and threatenings, in the Word of God, entirely useless, must also fall to the ground, and leave us in the quiet possession of what we have asserted and proved. Having expended the force of reason, in attacks of this kind, upon our sentiments, and willing to satisfy all parties, they, secondly, form a proposition directly opposed to that for which we have contended. They say, That true believers may, and frequently do, fall from a state of grace, totally and finally; and, consequently, that they do not grow stronger in grace. The truth of this, they attempt to support by the Word of God. I am now to mention these several proofs, drawn from Holy Scripture, and shew their insufficiency for promoting the end at which they aim. They have recourse to the words of the Prophet for the establishment of their doctrine: *Ezekiel III. 20. XVIII. 24.* We will repeat the words in both places, and then endeavor to give them a consistent explanation. *Again, when a righteous man doth turn*

from his righteousness, and commit iniquity, and I lay a stumbling-block before him, he shall die; because they hast not given him warning; he shall die, in his sin, and his righteousness, which he hath done, shall not be remembered; but his blood will I require at thine hand. But when the righteous turneth away from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity, and doeth according to all the abominations that the wicked man doeth, shall he live? All his righteousness that he hath done shall not be mentioned; in his trespass, that he hath trespassed, and in his sin, that he hath sinned, in them shall he die. These passages are nearly the same in signification—at least those parts of them which are brought forward to establish the truth of the aforementioned doctrine; both of them assert, That, when a righteous man turns from his righteousness which he hath done, and commits iniquity, all his righteousness, which he hath done, shall not save him from ruin everlasting. I am sorry to know, that there are multitudes in the world ignorant enough to advance these passages, for the support of a doctrine, which, surely, can derive no assistance from them. Let us examine their meaning, and make a fair trial. What are we to understand by this righteous man, and by his turning from his righteousness? By the righteous man we must understand, one who is righteous in his own, and perhaps, in the estimation of others: The Scripture speaks of such.—*Luke XVIII. 9. And he spake this parable unto certain which trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and despised others. Matt. XXIII. 28. Even so ye also outwardly appear righteous unto men, but within ye are full of hypocrisy and iniquity.* The righteousness here spoken of, is a righteousness of the man himself; it is *his:* It is what he has done:

It is a webb of his own weaving; a righteousness of works altogether—This we grant he may loose entirely: From this he may turn. His impure heart can no longer contain its wickedness; the external restraints are broken asunder, and the man is shewn in his proper colors. He boldly apostatizes from his hypocritical profession. That this is a fair explanation of those texts, I can venture to call, as witnesses, many of those who, nevertheless, contend for the possibility and frequency of a total and final fall from grace. I hope *none* of them suppose that a man is to be saved by his own works; but by the merits and righteousness of the Saviour of men. Yet, in the passages we have been considering, it is the man's righteousness that he hath done from which he turns himself away. Nothing, then, can be concluded for our opponent's scheme—nor yet against us, from this effort.

We proceed to the citation and explanation of some other sentiments, which, at first sight, seem to favor their proposition, and, consequently, to bear hard against what we have been at considerable pains to establish: Read John XV. 2, 6. *Every branch in me that beareth not fruit, he taketh away. If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered.* These are the words of Christ himself. They are figurative. He had called himself the vine, believers the branches, and his Father the husbandman, or dresser of the branches. The passages give ground for the following question: What are we to understand by men's being in Christ? The answer to this question, will, sufficiently, explain those texts, and, at the same time, shew that those who found upon them their opinion of the possibility and frequency, of the believer's total and final

apostasy from grace, do really mistake their meaning. Men may be in Christ two ways: 1st. Some are really united to him by faith, and by his spirit dwelling in them—Such are all true believers. 2nd. Some are said to be in Christ by a sacramental implantation; having been baptized in his name, they were thereby made members of his visible Church, and such make a visible profession of adhering to him: But as they are not really and spiritually united to him, they derive no nourishment from him, and, consequently, they cannot bring forth any good fruit. God may dig about and manure them: He may give them a solemn call; may allow them privileges in abundance—still they are barren. Then he cuts them off, and they wither forthwith. They are like the unfruitful fig-tree, with which he had taken so much pains, and, after all, it was cut down as a cumberer of his ground. As yet, then, we remain in possession of that truth for which we have been contending, and our adversaries perceiving some of those sacred pillars, upon which they have erected their arguments for proving the total and final apostasy, already to give way, they proceed and bring forth others, which, they fondly suppose, will not be so easily set aside and overthrown. We follow them, and will, in the whole of our process keep the investigation of truth in our eye, as the principal object to be sought after.

They bring in support of their opinion, *Heb.* VI. 4, 5, 6. *ibid* X. 26, 27, as also, 2 *Peter*, II., 21, 22. We will repeat these passages at full length, and examine how far any are justifiable in making use of them to establish the total and final apostacy of true believers. *For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the*

Holy Ghost, and have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come; if they shall fall away, to renew them again unto repentance: seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame. For if we sin wilfully, after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, but a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries. For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome; the latter end is worse with them than the beginning. For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them. But it has happened unto them according to the true proverb, The dog is turned to his own vomit again; and The sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire.

I readily allow, to those who contend for the apostacy of the saints, that, if there is anything in the Word of God which favours and supports it, these verses just recited seem to do so:—But we will not depend upon the bare repetition of them: We will examine them, thoroughly, and weigh their import with all the impartiality imaginable; having done this, we shall be able to conclude, with some degree of exactness, whether they are properly or improperly applied, when advanced as proofs of the possibility and frequency of believers total and final revolt from God.

Four things are observable in the one and the other of the two passages just now cited from the Epistle to the Hebrews:—1. Great attainments, in what appears to be religion, are spoken of, and men are evidently repre-

sented as being the subjects of those, seemingly, religious advancements. Those attainments, in the first passage, are pointed out by the phrases—Enlightened, tasting the heavenly gift, partaking of the Holy Ghost, tasting the good Word of God, and the powers of the world to come. In the other passage, they are comprized in the single phrase—Receiving the knowledge of the truth. 2. It is suggested that such may fall away from this apparent progress in religion. This idea is, in the first quotation, conveyed by the phrase—If they shall fall away; in the other, by the words—For if we sin wilfully. 3. We are taught to believe, that it is a matter very difficult indeed to bring those, who thus backslide from such advancements in what appears to be religion, to a hearty and willing profession of it afterwards. This is communicated to us, in the first passage, by the words—For it is impossible to renew them again unto repentance; the same sentiment is conveyed in the second recited place, by the phrase—There remaineth no more sacrifice for sin. 4. Reasons, for the seeming impossibility of such apostates being restored, or induced to engage in the exercises of true religion, are given in both passages: In the first, because they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame; in the second, because a certain fearful looking for of judgment has already taken possession of them, and a fiery indignation is prepared to devour them, being adversaries of the Almighty.

We see by these remarks, that those different scripture-texts, are parallel one with the other. This parallelism will greatly assist us in an explanation of them. The first contains a great variety of words to express the utmost length to which men may go in what appears

to be religion, and yet be destitute of the life and power of it in their heart. The second does this by a single phrase—Receiving the knowledge of the truth; which certainly teaches us, that to have our minds enlightened in the knowledge of Jesus and his gospel, is all that can be meant by that variety of phraseology made use of in the first cited passage, and with this opinion exactly agree many of our most learned commentators, both ancient and modern—I name only *Calvin* and *Bullinher* of the former class, and *Burkit* and *Fox* of the latter. They say, "To be enlightened, to taste the heavenly gift, to be made a partaker of the Holy Ghost, to taste the good Word of God, and the powers of the world to come, are phrases, figuratively used, to express and represent the same thing; namely, the knowledge and acknowledgement of the gospel."—

"It is called illumination,' (say they) 'because men being blind before, are hereby enlightened: It is called a tasting of the heavenly gift, because this knowledge comes from Heaven, and because it is partially relished by those to whom it is communicated: They are said to be made partakers of the Holy Ghost, because this knowledge is given them by the Spirit of God: They are said to taste of the Word of God, because they discover a certain sweetness in it, and especially in its promises; though they, as yet, have no proper claim to them: They taste the powers of the world to come, because they, falsely, suppose, that, having a right to the promises which make the joys of paradise good to believers, they will not be denied to them, and, therefore, as happiness is desirable, they endeavor to satisfy themselves with some fore-taste of it."

Now, surely, a man may receive the knowledge of

the truth, and nevertheless, be in an unconverted state: Even the devils believe the truths of the gospel. The stony ground hearers received the word and it sprang up. Herod heard John gladly. Felix trembled at the truth of Paul's sermon. Agrippa felt the force of his sentiments, and was almost persuaded to be a Christian. From those attainments, then, in what appears like religion, we acknowledge men may fall away totally and finally; and when they do so, it is a difficult matter to engage them in religious exercises any more. I say, difficult—for the original word, *adunaton*, should be understood in this qualified sense: By thus revolting from a religious profession, they have called Christ an impostor; done what they could to crucify him again; and have cast a contempt upon the plan of salvation through him. Besides, by their backsliding they have procured a horror of conscience; future judgment is ever before their eyes; have exasperated the Almighty, who considers them as his adversaries, and has, therefore, clad himself with vengeance as with a cloak; his fiery indignation is blown up, and is prepared for the destruction of such adversaries; and, since they have thus treated Christ, the only sacrifice for sin, they are to expect no other atonement, whatsoever, for their offences. If such are the consequences of apostatizing, after men have been instructed in the plan of salvation, and after they have made a visible profession of religion, it is no wonder if it be a hard matter to bring such forward, even as far as they had advanced before they departed from their external profession of piety. We have critically examined two passages, upon which our opponents laid great stress, for establishing the total and final apos-

tasy of true believers; and, consequently, for overthrowing what we have proved, at considerable length, in the former discourse. We have seen they can derive no assistance from them; surely, they will be equally unsuccessful in attempting to draw a proof, for the support of their tenet, from the verses we recited from the writings of the apostle Peter—for the same characters are there drawn: They are such as, by the knowledge and visible profession of religion, having, for a time, ceased to wallow in sin, have turned back, with the dog to his vomit, and with the sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire. We may observe they are still dogs and swine—unclean animals. Of such, the apostle declares, it had been better for them not to have known the way of salvation, through Christ, than, after they had known it, to turn from the holy precepts and directions which were given to them, in order to direct them towards happiness: By which he means, that, in consequence of the pains which had been taken with them, and of the light and knowledge which had been communicated to them, since they had abused them, their repentance would be rendered more difficult; and, in case that did not take place, their future torments would be rendered more dreadful and insupportable. We have then, as yet, found nothing in all our researches, that can speak in favor of the total and final apostasy of believers, and, therefore, we still remain in possession of that for which we have contended. But they tell us *Paul* himself was afraid of apostatizing totally, and finally, as appears by *1 Cor. IX. 27. But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection: lest that by any means when I have preached*

to others, I myself should be a cast-away. In the first part of the verse, he tells the Corinthians how much pains he took in subduing his own lusts and corruptions, and, in the latter part, he assigns the reason for his conduct, in that matter, lest, by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway. This last part of the verse is not well translated. It would be more consistent with the original, and with the meaning of the Word of God, in general, to render it thus: *Lest somehow or other, having preached to others, I myself might be disapproved:* That is, If *Paul* did not, by his own example, teach the necessity and propriety of mortifying his lusts and corruptions, having publicly enjoined these things upon others, he himself would be disapproved by them, and, indeed, by God his judge; for he would have then acted the same part as the Scribes and Pharisees did, who bound heavy burdens upon men's shoulders, and would not so much as touch them with one of their fingers, for which they stand reproved by our Saviour. Nothing, then, can be concluded from this assertion of Saint *Paul* in their favor. He, too, frequently tells us in his writings, of his full assurance of future happiness, to allow us to conclude, that he had the most distant fears of falling, totally and finally, from grace.

But, say our antagonists, we can prove our point by examples taken from Holy Scriptures. *David, Solomon* and *Peter*, fell totally from grace; *Hymeneus, Alexander* and *Judas*, fell totally and finally from it. *David's* sin was very great indeed; but I deny that it was a total fall from grace. For, when he was artfully reproved by *Nathan*, the Prophet, he immediately confessed his crime, and made application

for more grace: Therefore, he earnestly prays to his heavenly Father, *Psalm LI. 11.* in these words, *Take not thy holy spirit from me;* which proves, that the spirit had still a place of habitation in his heart, though he had sinned to the dishonor of God, and to the wounding of his own soul. With respect to *Solomon*, though he multiplied his iniquities very much, yet he did not fall totally from grace; as we learn from a gracious promise, made by God to his father *David*, in his behalf, *2 Sam. VII. 14, 15. I will be his father, and he shall be my son: If he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men: But my mercy shall not depart away from him.* Neither did *Peter* fall totally; which may be proved by the prayer of Christ for him. He prayed that his faith should not fail: As also; because he did not deny his Master out of malice, but through fear; and, because he wept bitterly on account of his sin.

Hymeneus, *Alexander* and *Judas* are brought by our opponents as examples, to prove the possibility of believers totally and finally falling from grace. In *1 Tim. I. 19, 20*, these men, and the crime with which they are charged, are both mentioned by Saint *Paul*. This Apostle had been employed to deliver a charge to *Timothy*, when he was ordained for the work of the ministry, and he tells him to war a good warfare, holding faith and a good conscience; which some having put away, concerning faith have made shipwreck: Of whom (says he) is *Hymeneus* and *Alexander;* whom I have delivered unto Satan that they may learn not to blaspheme. By faith here we are to understand the doctrine of the gospel, and particularly, the resurrection of the dead; which doctrine, many suppose

those men pointedly denied. By a good conscience, we are to understand such a conscience as teaches us to avoid, as much as possible, offending both God and men.

Hymeneus and *Alexander*, say our adversaries, by their bad conduct, and by pointedly denying a principal doctrine of the gospel, fell from grace totally and finally. How came they by this knowledge? Can they prove that they were good men before? They cannot. If by what is said about them, they could draw the conclusion that they fell totally from grace, yet there is not the least ground to say, that they fell finally; for the Apostle says, he had delivered them to satan that they might learn not to blaspheme; that is, that they might correct what was amiss in themselves, which evidently proves that he did not consider their case as desperate. But the truth is, there is no good reason to say either that these men fell totally or finally from grace. The presumption is, that, like many now a days, they had for a time made a splendid profession of religion, and their hearts being as yet unchanged, they revolted from that external profession, and embraced errors diametrically opposite to those things which they had pretended to believe. The advocates for apostasy, total and final, can receive little assistance then from the examples of those men who are noted by *Paul* in his charge to *Timothy*. I am ready to believe they now begin to despair of carrying their point, and had *Judas* never lived, they would now terminate the dispute and say, they were mistaken: But, say they, he was one of the twelve chosen for publishing the gospel: He was a follower and a disciple of the Redeemer of men. These things we grant. But, my friends, let me pose you with one

question—Does there not appear to be something suspicious in the whole of his character? Certainly there does. We hear very little of him as a good, a successful preacher. Very few traits of his zeal for religion are left upon record in Scripture. He appears to have had an uncommon attachment to wealth: He kept the bag and what was put in it. We must then, conclude, he early appeared religious for the sake of worldly gain; and the best reasons we have for thinking so; for, before he betrayed his Master, our Saviour drew his character in a few words—'One of you is a devil,' meaning *Judas*. How then could he be a good man and a devil at the same time? My brethren, I close this part of the subject, by asserting, that if there is a possibility of a believer's falling from grace, totally and finally, it cannot, in my judgment, be proved either by Scripture or Reason.

I come now to the third thing proposed, which is, to make a practical application of what has been said.

1. From what has been said, let us embrace the opportunity of examining ourselves. Are we progressive in our Christian course? Do we grow stronger and stronger in grace? Some of you, my christian friends, I doubt not, can answer these questions in the affirmative, while others of you will be ready to say, we cannot even tell what is meant by them. To both these classes of my hearers, I would address a few things.

First. To you who are bending your course heavenward, and gathering strength as you go forward, I say, be very thankful to God for your present safety, and for the certainty you possess of your future happiness. It is true you live in a world full of enemies, of enemies, too, which meditate your destruction; but you are en-

tirely safe: The Word of God; the attributes of God; your faith; and Jesus your Redeemer, who bought you with his own blood, are all engaged for your present safety. The Lord Christ, O believers! appears in that high court above, as your powerful advocate and intercessor: He sees, and narrowly watches all your determined foes; knows the temptations with which you are tried, and knows your own strength. Remember, he has long since been trampling upon the necks of your adversaries; that he was once tempted as you are, yet without sin, and, that knowing your feeble frames and what you are able to bear, if he permits you to be tried, he will proportion the trial to your strength, insomuch, that you will come off more than conquerors through him that loved you, and will be enabled to sing, Rejoice not against us, O our enemies, for when we fall we shall arise: We can do all things, through Christ that strengtheneth us. If any of you were pursued by a common enemy; if you were hard pressed by him, and were just ready to conclude that you must submit without a further effort to make your escape, and if, as in a moment, all the rocks and mountains in the whole world, were suddenly thrown around you for a munition, would you not think yourself entirely safe; completely defended against the formidable attacks of your pursuer? I know you would. But let me tell you, your safety in that case would be more doubtful, than this is of which we speak. You are held, my friends, in the right hand of God, and none is able to take you from him. Be thankful, then, for this blessing: And be thankful for the certainty you have of your future happiness. You are engaged in a spiritual warfare; you are conquering the nations which beset you, by little and little, and you

certainly will go on and persevere unto the end. Hear then the gracious promise made to you by him who is your life: *Rev. III. 21. To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my father in his throne.*

2. I have a few things to say to you, who are ignorant about matters relative to the spiritual life. Consider, my friends, that you are rational creatures and accountable for your actions. Do you think you were born solely for the gratification of your sensual appetites? Do you content yourselves with the bare form of godliness, while you deny the life and power of it in your hearts? Believe it, my friends, true religion is no chimera; your hearts must be changed by the power of God, if ever you enter into the kingdom of heaven. Consider how liable you are every day to fall away, totally and finally, from the hypocritical profession you make of love to God and his laws. Consider, also, the advantages you will gain, by becoming the genuine followers and disciples of Jesus. Your happiness will then be eternally fixed. Troubles may come; temptations may be thrown in your way; you may sometimes fall to the dishonor of God; but, believe it, you will at last triumph and be crowned with laurels of victory. I cannot but accuse many of you for your neglect of the things which belong to your soul's peace. It is not uncommon to see many of your pews almost empty upon Sabbath days, if the weather is, even in a small degree, inclement. Do you not think you will have to give an account to God for such negligences? Do you not run all risques of contracting disorders, nay, diseases and death itself, and that very frequently, rather than be absent from a ball or an assembly? Surely

you do: And I earnestly pray to God, that you may take shame and confusion to yourselves on account of that preference which you give to the works of darkness. May your consciences, and the word and spirit of God reprove you sharply, even in your private chambers. May you have neither sleep nor slumber till you have yielded up yourselves to be the servants and soldiers of King Jesus. I have been endeavoring to instruct you for many years, and, with respect to some of you, I may say, with God's servant of old—*I am afraid of you, lest I have bestowed upon you labour in vain.*

In conclusion—From what has been said, we have good reason to say, that those are in an error who teach the possibility of true believers total and final fall from grace. Let such consider, whoever they are, that they speak in direct opposition to the general tenor of the Word of God, as we have already proved.—Let them, in future, examine their Bibles more accurately: Let them, also, examine their hearts, and if they are of the happy number who have passed from death to life, they will find their mistake, and, as Christians ought to do, acknowledge it. I hope yet to see and hear of many of them being thus changed in sentiment. I conclude in the words of the text,—*The righteous also shall hold on his way, and he that hath clean hands shall be stronger and stronger.*

Another publication of Dr. Balch, a copy of which is in the library of Princeton University, is entitled:

A Series
Of
LETTERS,
addressed to the Rev. Adam Freeman, a member of the Baptist Church,
By
The Reverend STEPHEN BLOOMER BALCH, A. M.
Pastor of the PRESBYTERIAN CONGREGATION, GEORGE-TOWN.

These letters contain two parts:

I. A Vindication of the right of infants to the Sacrament of Baptism, according to the scripture.
II. Some animadversions on a pamphlet lately published by Mr. Adam Freeman, entitled, "Infant Baptism deceased, or, Seven Mountains over against Seven Mountains."

George-town,
Territory of Columbia:
Printed by Green and English.
(1801)

Mr. Jackson of Georgetown writes:[135]

"Dr. Balch was one of the founders and a member of the board of twelve trustees of the Columbian library about 1803, in which he took an active interest. A dispute arose whether tales, romances and novels should be introduced. Some of the trustees thought them injurious by creating a morbid taste, while others contended their effect was to quicken the imagination. Dr. Balch was opposed to novels, and in his speech remarked: 'You may do as you please, but mark my words the tale shelf will have all the custom.' It was decided, however, by a vote of nine to three that novels should be provided. The preliminaries being settled, the works were purchased in Philadelphia, and in due season they arrived by vessel packed in boxes. The library contained 2,000 volumes, which was afterward increased to 3,500, and was open every Wednesday afternoon from 2 until 5 o'clock, and twice a week during the winter months, books to be returned in fourteen days under a penalty of 6¼ cents. Rev. David Wiley was appointed librarian. The books were kept in the same room with the globes and chemical apparatus used in the school."

Among Dr. Balch's friends were George Washington, who sometimes attended his church, Thomas Jefferson and Albert Gallatin. A few weeks after the death of General Washington, Dr. Balch gave notice that he would speak of the life and services of the dead statesman. He preached in the open air to more than a thousand people, from the

[135] *The Evening Star*, Washington, April 1st, 1893.

last verse of the tenth chapter of the book of Esther, "For Mordecai the Jew, was next unto King Ahasuerus, and great among the Jews, and accepted of the multitude of his brethren, seeking the wealth of his people, and speaking peace to all his seed."

During Jefferson's first administration the French chargé d'affaires, who received for Napoleon the Louisiana purchase money of fifteen millions of dollars, was Louis André Pichon. He and his wife were Huguenots and during their residence in Washington, they attended Dr. Balch's church. The pastor baptized one of the Pichons's children. The next morning Monsieur Pichon handed Dr. Balch a note containing thirty dollars, the diplomat explaining in his broken English, that there were "ten for de leetle boy, ten for de madame and ten for mineself," and he mentioned that in France it was customary to pay for baptisms.

The defeat of Napoleon in his Russian campaign was celebrated in the District of Columbia in 1813, doubtless on account of the friendly relations that had long existed between the United States and the Muscovite Empire.[136]

In the *Federal Republican and Commercial Gazette, Georgetown, (Col.) June 4th, 1813,* the following notice was given:

---

[136] For the diplomatic relations between America and Russia see *Early Diplomatic Negotiations of the United States with Russia* by John C. Hildt; Baltimore, The Johns Hopkins Press, 1906.

THE REV. DR. STEPHEN BLOOMER BALCH'S CHURCH

In Georgetown, District of Columbia.

"GEORGETOWN:

"Friday, June 4.

* * * * * * *

"RUSSIAN VICTORIES.

"The Committee of Arrangements, for the celebration of the Russian Victories, inform the public, that the ceremonies of the day for *Saturday, the 5th of June*, will commence at Mr. Balch's Church, at two o'clock, with prayer, preceding an address to be delivered by Mr. Custis. Dinner will be served at the Union Tavern at four o'clock.

"Gentlemen are requested to call for their Tickets of Admission to the dinner early in the morning.

"A fine Band of Music will attend in the Church and at Dinner.

"JOHN PETER,
ROBERT BEVERLY,
WILLIAM MARBURY,
THOMAS PETER,
FRANCIS DODGE,
JOHN S. STULL,
WASHINGTON BOWIE,
JOHN LEE."

Three days later, June 7th, the following account was printed in the same paper.

"GEORGETOWN, Monday, June 7.[137]

"The Russian Victories were celebrated in this place on Saturday last, with great pomp and feeling. The

---

[137] *Federal Republican and Commercial Gazette*, Georgetown (Col.), June 7th, 1813.

For the oration by Mr. Custis of Arlington on June 5th, 1813, see the *Federal Republican*, June 11th, 1813.

first part of the exercises were performed at Mr. Balch's church in the presence of a large and brilliant assembly of ladies and gentlemen. It consisted of music of an exquisite sort by a selected band of professors, who attended from a distance, and an admirable oration by Mr. Custis of Arlington, which at every touch moved the heart, and was throughout admired and applauded. The oration was preceded and followed by appropriate prayers with intervals of music."

Mr. Custis's full name was George W. P. Custis, see *Federal Republican* of June 16th, 1813.

The Russian Minister, Mr. Daschkoff, was present at the dinner; see his letter to Mr. Custis, *Federal Republican*, June 16th, 1813, third page, in which he says:—

"WASHINGTON, 7th June, 1813.

"SIR:—In delivering your Oration on the occasion of the celebration of the Russian Victories, you have been guided by the motives of an enlightened and independent patriot. The subject of it could not fail to be highly interesting to every friend of humanity and virtue. You must have been much gratified, on perceiving the strong impressions produced upon your respectable audience by the dignified, touching and eloquent manner you presented it to their minds. You succeeded in making them fully to sympathise with the distress of my countrymen, who have so bravely stemmed the fatal hurricane, raised from the revolutionary den of France, & made them magnanimously rejoice with us for having crushed the most impious attempt against our national independence. You may imagine, sir, what effect it produced upon the hearts of those, whose cradles have been burned with their beloved Moscow, and whose tears can only be assuaged by their enemy's blood.

"Permit me to express to you, my gratitude, that of my family, and of all my countrymen, who shall peruse your Oration, for the zeal and interest you have displayed in our cause, and allow me to send a small medal, with the likeness of Alexander I. the only one which is now in my possession. I cannot give you a greater token of the value set on your acquaintance.

"I have the honor to be, with the most sincere and high consideration, sir, your very humble and obedient servant.

"A. DASCHKOFF.

"*To Mr. Custis, of Arlington.*

The dinner was held at the Union Hotel at four o'clock, Governor T. S. Lee presiding. "The Russian Legation and foreign consuls were invited and attended."

In the *Federal Republican* of June 9th, 1813, on the third page, there is this item:—

"The celebration of the festival commemorative of the recent victories of Russia, commenced on Saturday last, at two o'clock at the Rev. Mr. Balch's church," etc.

Dr. Balch was a firm believer in the rights of the individual and was in favor of gradually liberating the slaves and sending them to Liberia. He was opposed to slavery and corresponded on the subject with Wilberforce, and he and his congregation provided for Sunday School instruction for the colored people. He educated seventy-four youths for the ministry. He practiced what he preached: "It is not good that man should be alone," and as an example to others, he married three times. He had a robust, vigorous constitution and "a bold honest countenance." He was a lover of books, and among the classics preferred Horace to Virgil. His personal sacrifices during his long life were numerous. Among them was the destruction in 1831 of his house by fire, and he and his wife barely escaped with their lives. With his house the early Sessional Records of the church, many family and historical papers, and also a valuable

portrait of the Rev. Francis Makemie, were destroyed.[138]

Mr. Jackson, of Georgetown, D. C., says:[139]

"The church which he had erected in 1782 at the corner of 30th and M streets northwest after ten years had elapsed would not seat all who desired to attend divine worship, and it became necessary to enlarge the building by extending the north front in 1793, and with characteristic enterprise he had a steeple erected and a bell placed in it. Soon after the removal of the seat of government to Washington city considerable accessions were made to the congregation, and it was necessary to still further enlarge the church edifice, which was done under the immediate superintendence of Dr. Balch. All protestant denominations worshiped here and received the word of God at the mouth of Dr. Balch, and communed together at the same altar, such was the liberality that prevailed in those days. In 1821, the building being insufficient to accommodate all who desired to attend, it was determined to pull down the old building and erect a much larger edifice, which remained standing until the spring of 1873, when it was demolished and the material used in constructing a new church on P near Thirty-first Street.

"The Presbyterian Church was in fact the mother

---

[138] *The Presbytery of Washington City and the Churches under its care.* Washington, 1888, page 31.

[139] Article on Dr. Balch in the Washington *Evening Star* of April 1st, 1893, by W. S. Jackson, Esq., of Georgetown, D. C.

An important account of Dr. Balch's career is given in a book by Mr. Jackson's father: *The Chronicles of Georgetown, D. C., from 1751 to 1878*, by Richard P. Jackson, a native of Georgetown, and a member of the Washington Bar: Washington, D. C., R. O. Polkinhorn, 1878.

church of the town. Other denominations sought shelter under its roof while their church was being erected or remodeled. When the Methodist Protestant Church was organized in 1829, Dr. Balch invited them to his church and labored and sympathized with them until they found a resting place. He was a friend of Georgetown College in its infancy, and was a frequent visitor to the institution and often dined with the priests of Catholic Trinity Church. On one occasion they apologized for the appearance of the table on fast day. Dr. Balch replied: 'Well, well, brothers; if you call this fast day what do you have on feast day?' He was also instrumental in organizing several Presbyterian churches within the bounds of the Synod of Baltimore, one of them in the city of Frederick, Md., where he often preached.

* * * * * *

"On Sunday morning, September 22, 1833, at nine o'clock A. M., as he was preparing to go to church to perform his official duties, he was stricken with apoplexy and sank to rest like the sun without a cloud to hide his lustre. As the news of his death spread through the town the citizens, irrespective of religious creed, expressed themselves with one accord: 'Well done, good and faithful servant, enter thou into the joy of thy Lord.' A successful plaster cast of his face was taken just after his death. On Monday the Board of Aldermen and Common Council of Georgetown passed the following resolution:—

"'That we have learned with deep regret the death of our aged and venerable fellow citizen, Dr. Stephen Bloomer Balch, who for more than fifty-three years, has been a useful and honored minister of religion in the

town, illustrating the holy profession he made through his long career by a life of uniform piety towards God, and benevolence, liberality and kindness to his fellow men, descending to his tomb full of years, and rich in the reverence, esteem and love of the whole community.

"'*Resolved*, that as a testimony of respect to his memory, the members and officers of this corporation will attend his funeral to-morrow (Tuesday) at ten o'clock A. M.

"'*Resolved*, that the clerk of the corporation be requested to transmit a copy of these resolutions to the family of the deceased.'

"The town was draped in mourning, business places were closed, and all the bells tolled as the remains of this faithful apostle of God were carried from his residence, No. 3302 N. Street, to the church where he had so often performed the last sad rites to hundreds and thousands. Ministers of all denominations, including eight priests, representing the Catholic Church, who had loved and venerated him in life, joined in the funeral cortege. When the hearse reached the church the procession was still forming at the residence.

"The funeral sermon, an eloquent discourse on the life and services of the deceased, was preached by the Rev. Elijah Harrison, of Alexandria, Virginia, from Acts viii. 2: 'And devout men carried Stephen to his burial, and made great lamentation over him.' After the funeral sermon his remains were incased in the front wall of the church.

"His life was checkered with many severe trials. Dug out of one home, flooded out of another and burnt out of a third, yet his fortitude and piety, resignation and cheerfulness forsook him not. Keeping his eye stead-

TOMB OF THE REV. DR. BALCH,

OUTSIDE THE PRESBYTERIAN CHURCH IN GEORGETOWN, D. C.,

REMOVED IN 1873 TO OAK HILL CEMETERY.

fastly fixed on his sacred calling, he was to his expiring day faithful to his Master.

* * * * * * *

"In October, 1835, a handsome monument was erected by his family to his memory in front of the church he founded and so long presided over. It was of white marble, representing a pyramidal tablet resting upon a solid Ionic base against the wall between the doors of the main entrance, with no other ornament than a wreath beautifully sculptured at the top. It bore the following inscription:—

"'Sacred
To the memory of
STEPHEN B. BALCH, D. D.
Who died September 22nd, 1833,
In the 87th year of his age.
He was the founder of this church,
And for more than half a century
Its revered Pastor.
He planted the Gospel in this town,
And his example was for many years
A light to its inhabitants.
He being dead, yet speaketh.

"'Reliquiae mortales
STEPHANI BLOOMER BALCH, D. D.,
Sub hoc marmore
Inhumantur.
His children have erected this tablet
To record
The virtue of the dead and the
Gratitude of the living.'

"In the spring of 1873, when the church was demolished, his remains were reinterred in the Presbyterian cemetery on 33rd Street near the chapel. In the spring of 1874 the philanthropic William W. Corcoran wrote to his children requesting the privilege of removing the remains to Oak Hill cemetery. Writing to his son, the Rev. Thomas B. Balch, he said: 'I knew your father from boyhood, and the sentiments of profound esteem with which at an early age I regarded him were undiminished at the close of his protracted and exemplary life.' And on June 18, 1874, the remains of this apostle of God were reinterred near the Chapel in Oak Hill cemetery. A mural tablet ordered by W. W. Corcoran was mounted on the wall of the Chapel bearing the following inscription in letters of gold:—

"'In honor of
STEPHEN BLOOMER BALCH, D. D.,
Born
On "Deer Creek," near Balt: Md.
April, A. D. 1747,
Came to Georgetown, D. C.
March 16th, A. D. 1780
Died September 22 A. D. 1833.
He planted the Gospel in
Georgetown; Founded
"The Bridge Street Presbyterian Church"
And was for more than 50 years
Its Pastor.
In life he Practiced what he Preached
No Eulogy can add to such
A Record.'"[140]

---

[140] Mr. Jackson at the end of his article wrote:

In 1818, he received from Princeton College the degree of D. D.

The Rev. William B. Sprague, D. D., in 1858, wrote of Dr. Balch:—[141]

"During his residence in Calvert County, he made the acquaintance of Bishop Claggett, from whom he received many kind attentions, and with whom he was ever after in very friendly relations, till the close of the Bishop's life.

"He continued teaching for about four years, and received the greater part of his salary in Continental money—'rather a bright remuneration'—to use the language of his son, 'for fighting with mosquitoes, and for being conquered quite frequently by the Tertian ague.'

"He then went to Pennsylvania, and was licensed to preach the Gospel, by the Presbytery of Donegal, on the 17th of June, 1779. Hearing, about this time, of the death of his father, he returned to the South, and spent some months in travelling as a sort of missionary in the Carolinas. On his way thither, he spent a Sabbath in Georgetown, and preached in the hamlet which had been founded in September, 1751, by George Beall, whose granddaughter he subsequently married. The people invited him to remain, promising to build him a church, but he declined at that time, though he gave some encouragement of returning to them after performing his projected tour at the South.

"It is my desire that this sketch may be the means of arousing not only the Presbyterians of the District, but the citizens of Georgetown, to erect in some public place a monument to this worthy pioneer of religion and education, for many years 'a lamp unto our feet and a light unto our path.'"

[141] *Annals of the American Pulpit*, by William B. Sprague, D. D., New York, 1858, Volume III., page 410.

"While Mr. Balch was itinerating in North Carolina, he was subjected to many privations and hardships. On one occasion, night overtook him when he was in a strange neighbourhood; but he discovered a dwelling not far from the road, which he supposed, from its appearance, must be the residence of some wealthy man. He made his way to it, and was very hospitably received by the lady of the house, though her husband was not at home. Being greatly fatigued, he retired early, and soon fell asleep; but it was not long before the gentleman of the house, who was no less a personage than General Williams of North Carolina, returned unexpectedly, entered his chamber, and intimated to him, in no equivocal terms, that he should allow no one who was not a Whig to sleep under his roof. 'Let me rest in peace then,' said his guest, 'for I was educated under Dr. Witherspoon,—one of the Signers of the Declaration of Independence.' The next day, the General entertained Mr. Balch with a poem which he had composed on the Stamp Act; and, on the following Sabbath, as the enemies of the Revolution laid great stress on the apostolic injunction to be subject to the higher powers, he earnestly requested his clerical guest to discourse upon that passage. He did so, much to the annoyance of the Royalists who were present, while the General, with several pistols in his belt, acted as Clerk.

"Mr. Balch was invited to settle over a congregation in North Carolina; but he had made up his mind to return to Georgetown, with a view to establish there a Presbyterian Church. Accordingly, he went thither in March, 1780, and found as unpromising a field of labour as can easily be imagined. He preached for some time in a room rented for the purpose; and, in

1782, a few individuals interested in sustaining Divine institutions, joined in building a very plain house for public worship. There were seven persons, including the Pastor, who joined in the first celebration of the Lord's Supper. Shortly after this, he was instrumental in establishing a Presbyterian Congregation in Fredericktown, Md.

"The return of Peace, at the close of the Revolution, contributed not a little to the growth of the village in which Mr. Balch was settled. His church gradually increased, and many Episcopalians who resided in the neighbourhood joined in their worship. Still he found his salary quite inadequate to the support of his family; and, in order to meet his current expenses, he was obliged to resort to some other business; and he chose that of instructing youth. Accordingly, he was in the habit, for many years, of conducting the education of young men; and among his pupils were not a few who have since attained to great usefulness and prominence.

"After the removal of the seat of government to Washington City, the Episcopalians, who had been accustomed to worship in the Presbyterian Church, established a church of their own; and thus the number who contributed to Mr. Balch's support was temporarily somewhat diminished. The loss was, however, quickly much more than made up by fresh accessions from various quarters; insomuch that it became desirable that the place of worship should be enlarged. Into this project Mr. Balch entered with great resolution and vigour; and it was chiefly, if not entirely, by contributions obtained through his persevering efforts, that the enlargement was effected. Mr. Jefferson, who

was then President of the United States, contributed in aid of his object seventy-five dollars. He applied to Albert Gallatin, Secretary of the Treasury, but he declined giving, on the ground of the excessive frequency of similar applications. Mr. Balch immediately dropped the matter, and began to converse on general subjects; and among other questions which he asked was one in regard to the success of Napoleon, in subverting the Genevese Republic. Mr. Gallatin said emphatically that his country was gone. 'I am sorry to hear it,' rejoined Mr. Balch, 'for the city of Geneva has produced more illustrious men in Church and State than any other spot on the globe.' He then rose and bade the Secretary good morning; but, before he had proceeded far, was called back to receive from Mr. Gallatin a handsome donation.

"From this time Mr. Balch's congregation gradually increased until 1821, when the old church edifice was taken down, and a more commodious and more elegant house erected in its place. The night before the dismantling of the old building, Mr. Balch preached a sermon to an immense assemblage, in which he discoursed somewhat at large upon the history of the congregation. It was an occasion of deep interest to him; and while he rejoiced in it as marking a favourable epoch in the history of his congregation, it could not but awaken in his mind many sad and tender recollections.

"In the year 1818, Mr. Balch was honoured with the degree of Doctor of Divinity from the College at which he was educated.

"In the year 1831, Dr. Balch experienced a great calamity in the burning of his house. Some time before day, the watchman, in going his accustomed

round, observed a light in one of the front rooms, but did not at first suppose that it was any thing out of the common course. When he came near the house again, he observed that it was wrapped in flames. The fire gained on the building so rapidly that, in a few moments, every way of escape was cut off, except by a slippery shelving roof which was under the window of his chamber. Several fruitless attempts were made to pass the stairway; but, as he opened the door that led to it, he saw nothing but a cloud of smoke mingled with sparks of fire. In this extremity, Dr. Balch, with great self-possession, resolved to lead the way on the roof. When the aged couple were discovered in these awfully perilous circumstances, a feeling of horror ran through the assembled multitude; but when it was perceived that their escape was effected, it gave way to a shout of generous exultation. He escaped with only the garments in which he slept; his apparel, furniture, library, manuscripts,—every thing which his house contained, was burnt to ashes. The loss was one which he ill knew how to sustain; but a circumstance occurred shortly after, by means of which he was saved from the embarrassment to which he might otherwise have been subjected. One of his early pupils suggested to him the idea that he was entitled to a pension, under the then recent law of Congress, providing for Revolutionary claims. An application was accordingly made, his claim was granted, and before his decease he drew the sum of twelve hundred dollars.

"Dr. Balch, after he had passed the age of fourscore, retained so much vigour as to be able to preach occasionally without inconvenience. A few Sabbaths before his death, he had preached three times in Alex-

andria, besides attending a funeral. On the Sabbath immediately preceding his death, on returning from public worship, he showed manifest signs of indisposition, and found himself unable to walk home. He revived, however, and, during the week, evinced his accustomed cheerfulness. The next Sabbath morning, (September 7, 1833,) after having rested well during the night, he awoke and took some refreshment; but was immediately seized with a spasm of the heart, which caused almost instantaneous death. The tidings of his departure produced a great sensation in the whole community. The Aldermen and Common Council of the town passed a unanimous resolution to attend his funeral. The town *Gazette* was clothed in mourning; while funeral badges were displayed not only in the church, but upon the market house, and upon all the stores in the streets through which the immense procession passed. A Funeral Discourse was delivered on the following Sabbath, by the surviving Pastor of the Church; and there was subsequently another before the Presbytery of which he was a member, by the Rev. Elias Harrison of Alexandria. His ministry in Georgetown extended through a period of fifty-three years."

In answer to a request from Dr. Sprague for personal reminiscences of Dr. Balch the Rev. Elias Harrison, D. D., of Alexandria, Va., wrote:—

"ALEXANDRIA, May 7, 1857.

"REV. AND DEAR SIR: It gives me pleasure to comply with your request for my reminiscences of the Rev. Dr. Balch, late of Georgetown, partly because the very intimate relations in which we were placed towards each

other, during the last seventeen years of his life, gave me the best opportunities of knowing him, and therefore enable me to speak of him with great confidence, and partly because my estimate of his character is such that I am glad to co-operate in any effort to embalm his memory.

"The first time I ever saw him was in 1813, when I was a student at Princeton College, in company with his son Thomas. He came there on a visit,—the first he had ever paid to the institution, since he was graduated; and, as was to be expected, it was an occasion to him of much pleasurable excitement. He remained there for several days,—being frequently present both in the common dining hall, and in the recitation room; and moving about freely, as he did, among the students,—with some of whom he was acquainted, he became exceedingly popular. Their attention was particularly drawn to him by the *sly humour* which came out both in his language and in his countenance; while the anecdotes in which he abounded, concerning the scenes and incidents of bygone days, called forth peals of laughter, which were heard from one end of the College grounds to the other. In these explosions he himself always joined most heartily; and it was said that Dr. Green, who was then President of the College, and who was more than commonly tenacious in regard to ministerial propriety and dignity, took him to task in respect to the freedom of his demeanor, intimating that such loud 'horse laughs,' as he termed them, would lessen his influence and injure his reputation. To this Dr. Balch replied,—for he afterwards told me the story,—that for his own part, he always did love a good 'horse laugh;' and that if he (Dr. Green) had indulged himself in that way a little more frequently,

he never would have supposed that his own nose was the nozzle of a tea-pot, or that his head was made of glass—alluding to certain imaginings predicated of Dr. Green, (whether true or false I know not) at a time when he was suffering under the influence of great nervous depression. In the end, however, our venerable President became so much interested in the Doctor and his irrepressible humour, that he not only relaxed somewhat from his accustomed dignity, but actually, in some degree, caught the contagion, and heartily shared in the laugh which at first he seemed to deprecate. Before Dr. Balch took his departure for home, he expressed to the occupants of a certain room an earnest wish to be permitted to sleep there one night, as it was the room which he had occupied during his whole college life, and it was not likely that he should ever be there again. His request was very cheerfully complied with; and this, with other pleasant circumstances, served to leave a most agreeable impression on the minds of the students, and to render his visit among them a delightful episode in the tedious monotony of college life.

"After this I never saw him until I came to this city in the close of the year 1816. It was, I think, the last week in December of that year, when, in accordance with a long established rule for mutual convenience and profit, it was his turn to aid my venerable colleague, Dr. Muir, in the solemnities of the Lord's Supper. I then heard him preach for the first time; and though the discourse could not be called an eloquent one, there was still a *something*, both in matter and manner, that rivetted my attention so closely, as to leave an impression which the lapse of more than forty years has done little to efface. In person, he stood before us,

large, tall, and rather commanding. His countenance, though solemn, seemed after all to have in it a tinge of dry humour. His language, though chaste and well adapted to his subject, was the suggestion of the moment,—for he never wrote his discourses. His method was lucid and natural, and yet peculiarly his own. And his manner was characterized by fervour, unction, and I would say, originality withal. The impression which he left upon me, was somewhat strange indeed, but it was on the whole highly favourable both to his intellect and his heart—an impression, I may add, which none of his subsequent exhibitions ever served to remove or impair. He was a great friend to loud as well as animated speaking in the pulpit; and in this, my first, interview with him, he counselled me most earnestly never to lose sight of that important requisite in a preacher;—adding, in his usual quizzical manner, that young ministers were little aware of its importance, for it was often accepted by the people as a substitute for good sense and sound argument.

"Dr. Balch was also greatly in favour of preaching without a manuscript, and especially without writing at all; and he seemed, at that first interview, to take quite a fancy to me, because I had avowed my determination never to take even short notes into the pulpit, and so far as practicable, to avoid the common practice of always writing fully for the Sabbath. He told me, if I remember right, that he scarcely ever wrote a whole sermon, and had never written the half of one during his whole pastorate; and he certainly gave a somewhat remarkable reason for it. It was this:—When on his way from the Carolinas to the place of his final settlement,—Georgetown, he was invited to preach at a cer-

tain church in Virginia, at which there were several ministers of the Baptist denomination, and a very large gathering of people. The services had been opened by a discourse which, though delivered with great vehemence and boldness of manner, seemed to him very crude, disjointed and illogical. [The Baptist clergy were not then what they have become since—they were doubtless pious and devoted men, but few of them had anything beyond a common education.][142] Inasmuch as he had taken his diploma at College, and withal had several well prepared discourses with him, which he had carefully committed to memory, he indulged the rather self-complacent reflection that, as he was to follow the illiterate preacher, he should, to say the least, not suffer in a comparison with him. He acknowledged that the evil principle within him so far gained a momentary control, that he was expecting to hear his sermon spoken of in no measured terms of approbation; but, instead of that, as he was walking behind a large number of people, after the sermon had been delivered, he heard them speak of it as absolutely so poor a thing as not to be worth the time they had spent in listening to it; while his illiterate predecessor was extolled to the skies. 'From that time,' said the Doctor, 'I firmly resolved never again to attempt either to preach a great sermon, or to write out another sermon for the pulpit'—a resolve to which I believe he adhered, without a single exception, till his dying day.

"It would be a mistake, however, to suppose that he did not *study* his sermons. He did not study them in the ordinary way; and yet the orderly method and compact arrangement by which they were marked,

[142] This sentence is enclosed in brackets in the text.

showed that they were the product of no inconsiderable thought. He generally formed a brief outline of his discourse in the early part of the week, and then occupied himself leisurely in filling it up before the Sabbath. These skeletons were written in very small paper books, made for the purpose, each of which would perhaps hold a hundred or more; but they were never taken with him into the pulpit. I have seen many of them, and have remarked their apparent neatness and freedom from both erasures and blots; but was never able to decipher a solitary line, except by a vigorous effort of the imagination; for his handwriting was scarcely more legible to me than Arabic. His preaching was most frequently doctrinal, and was characterized by great fearlessness and energy. He evidently cared little for the praise of man, and I have sometimes thought, still less for his censure. I am inclined to think that the general character of his pulpit performances was such as to justify the remark said to have been made by a respectable and excellent old lady, that 'it was always very good living.'

"In his disposition he was kind, amiable and eminently social. I never saw him out of temper but once, and then but for a short time; while, during a long course of years in which I was familiar with him, and met him in almost every variety of circumstances, he was pre-eminently good natured, cheerful and buoyant. His exuberance of good humour continued with him till the close of life; and some of his friends of nervous temperament found it an excellent antidote to depression of spirits. He was, in relating humorous anecdotes, absolutely irresistible—neither the dignity of Dr. Green nor the sobriety and quietness of my revered colleague

Dr. Muir, was proof against it. I must confess there was no man whom I welcomed more heartily than Dr. Balch, when I found the *blues* were gathering upon me; for though I was constrained to think, with the venerable President of Nassau-Hall, that his laughing explosions were perhaps too frequent and sometimes too violent, yet he actually did more for me in certain moods than any physician could do; and then there was such an air of naturalness about it, that you seemed to feel that, with such a constitution as he had, it could hardly be otherwise.

"He was very urgent with young ministers to get married, if possible, as soon as they were settled. And as he was often appointed to charge the newly installed pastor, he not unfrequently hinted at what he regarded a duty on this subject, in that solemn exercise. He did so at my installation; and though, on the whole, the charge was very judicious, and unusually solemn, he could not resist the impulse to say,—and with an archness of tone and manner that was marked by the whole congregation, and created a universal smile,—that it would be well for me to remember that 'a Bishop' must not only be 'blameless,' but 'the husband of one wife.' He saw me married not many months afterwards and offered me his congratulations on the occasion, with a heartiness that could not have been greater, if he had supposed that I had got married merely out of respect to the advice he had given me at my installation.

"Dr. Balch's pastoral relation seems to have been a happy one. His charge gradually increased from a mere handful of people to one of the largest congregations of our denomination in this whole region. His people respected and loved him; and those of them

who still survive, never speak of him but with a feeling of profound veneration. He was always welcome in their families; and his open and cheerful manner, and freedom from all stateliness and reserve, made him a great favourite, especially with the young. I believe it is uncommon that a minister, during so long a period, retains in so high a degree the affection of his people.

"A few years before his death, he was affected with a sudden paralytic stroke, while in the midst of his discourse on the Lord's day. It came without a moment's premonition, rendering him both stiff and speechless, but neither depriving him of consciousness, nor changing his bodily position. Taken home, he was soon restored to speech, and in a few weeks, by proper medical treatment, to about his accustomed health. While he was confined to his bed, I called to see him; and finding him at the moment alone, he seemed unusually gratified, and hardly able to express his feelings of joy that an opportunity was once more given him of speaking without restraint. 'For,' said he, 'neither my family nor my physician, though transcendently kind, and earnestly seeking my recovery, have rightly understood my case; they have interdicted all company, and laid an embargo on my tongue ever since it has been restored to use, and I know very well that these two things, if persisted in, instead of curing me, will hasten me out of the world. I must see my friends, and I must talk, or I must die.' And he did talk rapidly, though he saw my alarm at the announcement of the prohibition, and though Mrs. Balch, rushing in at the sound of his voice, urged every consideration she could to prevent it. Strange to say, he recovered rapidly from that hour; and often did he remind me afterwards of that accidental, or rather

providential, circumstance of my finding him alone; 'for I verily believe,' said he, 'it was the means, under God, of continuing my life a little longer.'

"This attack is supposed to have resulted immediately from his discontinuing the use of tobacco; to which he had been immoderately given for more than sixty-five years. In all other kinds of personal indulgence he was very sparing; and had never tasted ardent spirits, to the amount of a spoonful, from the age of twelve years. His physician had warned him of the probable issue of a sudden breaking up of this habit, and advised him, by all means, if he were to attempt it at all, to let it be a gradual process; but, being rather obstinately set in his resolves, when once made, he persisted, until he had well nigh experienced the worst. He then resumed the practice for three or four years, and during the whole period enjoyed uninterrupted good health; when, relinquishing it again, he was again visited in the pulpit of a neighbouring brother with an attack similar to the other, though not so severe or protracted. He then returned to it once more, and continued it in moderation till his death.

"One of the last Sabbaths of his life Dr. Balch spent with me, and assisted me in the administration of the Lord's Supper; and he was apparently in as good health, both of body and of mind, as at any time when I had seen him for a number of years. He preached for me that day twice, and preached also at the Protestant Methodist Church in the evening, in addition to the services rendered at the Lord's table. It was generally remarked that his sermons were not only longer, but far more solemn and impressive than usual; but he suffered no inconvenience from the labours of the day.

He left me apparently in fine health and in excellent spirits, and I heard no more from him until the astounding news came that he was dead; and that was quickly followed by an urgent request that I should come and take part in the funeral solemnities. I did go and meet the sad demand that was made upon me,—sharing the service (so far as the addresses were concerned) with the Rev. Mr. Brooks of the Episcopal Church, with whom Dr. Balch had been in the most cordial relations. I was subsequently called upon by the Presbytery to preach his Funeral Sermon, which I did at its sessions in the First Church in Washington City, and in the presence of an immense audience, which had been attracted to the service from a desire to do honour to the memory of that venerable man.

"I have already intimated that Dr. Balch was tall and well proportioned in his physical structure. His countenance was a fair index to his character. His eyes were rather small, though keen; his face perhaps a little too long for beauty, and his neck too short for the head that was above it. His gait was always slow and cautious, and his movements indicated either that he was very absent in mind, or that his faculties were intensely concentrated on some particular subject. His dress was never of the most fashionable kind; nor was he always so particular in respect to it as to escape the imputation of being a little slovenly; yet, on the whole, his personal appearance was very respectable, and in society he was not lacking in due attention to the rules of politeness. He was an early riser, and would often take a long stroll, before any of his family or neighbours were up; and in all ordinary circumstances, ten o'clock at night would find him either in bed, or in his room

preparing for it. It was doubtless to the regularity of his habits, the cheerfulness of his spirits, and the utter absence of every thing like agitating or corroding passion, quite as much as to his native vigour of constitution, that was to be attributed not only his exemption from the ordinary maladies which prevail among men, but a state of scarcely interrupted usefulness or enjoyment to the close of an unusually long life.

"Notwithstanding Dr. Balch's passion for the humorous and the ludicrous, he thought much and felt much on the subject of personal religion, and to his particular friends, he spoke of it with both freedom and feeling. I never heard him express a doubt of his personal interest in the merits of his Redeemer; and towards the close of life he seemed to dwell upon the prospects of the opening future with a greatly increased interest and solemnity. But the nature and permanency of his religious principles were most effectually tested by the purity of his life, the stern fidelity with which he rebuked the various forms of evil, and his readiness to make personal sacrifices for the cause of Christ. In view of all that I knew of him, I cannot doubt that when he was dismissed from his labours on earth, he went to receive the plaudit, 'Well done, good and faithful servant.'

"Yours very truly,

"ELIAS HARRISON."

Dr. Balch married first, on June 10th, 1781 at Georgetown, Elizabeth Beall of Georgetown, born there in 1762 and died at the same place June 27th, 1827. The ladies of Georgetown being patriotic, positively refused to drink tea during the Revolu-

tion, and so the cups used at the wedding were not much larger than thimbles. She was a daughter of Colonel George Beall (1729-1807) of Georgetown,[143]

[143] Colonel George Beall was the son of Colonel George Beall of Georgetown (1695-1780) and Elizabeth Brooke, his wife, and a grandson of Colonel Ninian Beall (1625-1717) of the Rock of Dumbarton, Prince George's County, Maryland, and Ruth Moore his wife. Colonel Ninian Beall, called the "Covenanter," was born in Scotland in 1625, either in Dumbartonshire or Fifeshire. He was in the Scottish army which fought against Cromwell at Dunbar in 1650, where he was taken prisoner and soon after transported to Maryland. With his knowledge of arms, he became in a short time a man of importance in the military forces of the province. Finally he became a full Colonel and commander of the provincial troops. Much of the land upon which Georgetown, D.C., now stands was granted to him by Lord Baltimore in 1703. Elizabeth Brooke was the daughter of Colonel Thomas Brooke of Brookfield, Prince George County, Maryland, President of the Council and Acting-Governor of Maryland, and Barbara Dent, his second wife, a grand daughter of Major Thomas Brooke (1632-1676) of Calvert County, and Eleanor Hatton, his wife, and a great grand daughter of Robert Brooke, who emigrated from Whitchurch, County Southampton, England, to Maryland in 1650, and Mary Baker, his first wife. Robert Brooke matriculated at Wadham College, Oxford, in 1618, received his B. A. in July 1620, and M. A. in April 1624. He was a member of the Council of Maryland and for a time Acting-Governor of the Province. He was a son of Thomas Brooke of Whitchurch, gentleman, who graduated at New College, Oxford, in 1584, was a barrister at law in the Inner Temple in 1595 and sat for Whitchurch Borough in the Parliament that was summoned to meet at Westminster, March 19th, 1603-4 and was dissolved February 9th, 1610-11; he died in 1612. Thomas Brooke married Susan Forster, daughter of Sir Thomas Forster, who was spoken of in 1587 as a barrister in both Coke's and Croke's Reports, and was called on November 24th, 1607, to the bench as judge of the Common Pleas and sat in that Court until his death May 18th, 1612. Thomas Sutton named him one of the first governors of the Charter House Hospital. His youngest son, Robert Forster, was appointed by Charles the Second Chief-Justice of the King's Bench.

Symonds in his diary of the marches of the Royal Army during the Civil War, thus describes a monument erected to the memory of Thomas Brooke and his wife Susan Forster in the church of Whitchurch.

and Elizabeth Magruder, his wife. Dr. Balch married secondly, on November 5th, 1828, Elizabeth King, who died November 23d, 1828. He married for the third time on November 9th, 1830, Mrs. Jane Parrott, of Easton, Maryland.

"Whit-church Church.

"Against the north wall chancel, a faire monument, the statue of a man in a barr-gowne, and a woman.

' Thom. Brooke, Ar. etat. 52, ob. 13 Sep. 1612. Susanna uxor ejus, filia natu max. Thomæ Forster Militis in parochia Hunsdon com. Hertf.

Quarterly, 1 and 4, Checky, or and azure, on a bend gules a lion passant or [Brooke]; 2 and 3, Argent, a fess embattled sable, in chief two estoils of the second [Twyne]; impaling.

"Quarterly, 1, and 4, a chevron vert between three bugle-horns, sable [Forster]; 2 gone; 3 Argent, on a bend sable three martlets or, *Crest*, on a wreath azure and or, a demi-lion erased or."

The monument is now in the belfrey. They lie outstretched side by side; their heads, collars, hands and cuffs are white; the rest of their dress is black, except that the middle of her gown in front from top to bottom is a light red.

Thomas Brooke of Whitchurch was a son of Richard Brooke of Whitchurch and his wife Elizabeth Twyne. Brasses of Richard Brooke and his wife, together with two smaller ones underneath of their three sons and their three daughters, respectively, the whole mounted by the Brooke and the Twyne arms are affixed to one of the walls of the church of Whitchurch: originally all these brasses were upon the floor of the church. Under the brasses a brass plate bears the following inscription, which I copied myself in September, 1897:

"Pietatis Opus:

"This grave (of griefe) hath swallowed up with wide and open mouth,
The bodie of good Richard Brooke, of Whitchurch, Hampton South
And Elizabeth his wedded wife, twice twentie yeares and one,
Sweete Jesus hath their soules in heaven, ye ground flesh, skin and bone
In Januarie (worne with age) daie sixteenth died hee,
From Christ full fifteene hundred yeares and more by ninetie three,
But death her twist of life in Maie, daie twentieth did untwine
From Christ full fifteene hundred yeares and more by ninetie nine,
They left behinde them well to live, and growne to goode degree.
First, Richard, Thomas, Robert Brooke, the youngest of the three
Elizabeth, and Barbara, then Dorathee the last,
All six the Knot of Natures love, and kindnes keeping fast,
This Toome stone with the Plate thereon, thus graven fare and large

Dr. Balch and his first wife, Elizabeth Beall, had eleven children as follows:—

5. I. Ann Amia Balch, died young.
5. II. Harriet Balch.
5. III. Alfred Balch.
5. IV. Lewis P. W. Balch.
5. V. George Beall Balch.
5. VI. Hezekiah James Balch, died unmarried.
5. VII. Thomas Bloomer Balch.
5. VIII. Franklin Balch, died young.
5. IX. Ann Eleanora Balch.
5. X. Elizabeth Maria Balch.
5. XI. Jane Whann Balch.

5. II. Harriet Balch was born at Georgetown, D. C., June 17th, 1783. As a young girl and later she was very fond of society. "Dr. Cutler wrote to his wife in 1803, of a dinner at the Balchs's, in the

---

Did Robert Brooke, the youngest sonne, make of his proper charge.
A Citizen of London State, by faithful service free,
Of Marchantes, greate adventurers, a brother sworne is hee,
And of the Indian Companie (come gaine or losse) a limb,
And of the Goldsmithe liverie, All these Godes giftes to him;
This Monument of memorie in love performed hee;
December thirtie one, from Christ sixteene hundred and three.
"Anno Domini 1603: Laus Deo."

Robert Brooke who gave these brasses was the uncle of Robert Brooke who came over to Maryland in 1650 in his own ship, bringing his wife, children, and a large number of servants, forty people in all.

See *The Brooke Family of Whitchurch, Hampshire, England, together with an account of Acting-Governor Robert Brooke of Maryland and Colonel Ninian Beall of Maryland and some of their descendants* by Thomas Willing Balch, Philadelphia, 1899. See also *The Founders of Anne Arundel and Howard Counties, Maryland*, by J. D. Warfield, Baltimore, 1905, page 101, for an account of the Beall Family.

company of many members of Congress. Miss Anna King was one of the guests, which revived delightful recollections of the previous winter spent in her father's house in Washington, where the company was very agreeable. 'I very much miss,' he says, 'the amusement Miss Anna King used to afford us, with her forte-piano and excellent voice. She is the most intimate friend and companion of Miss Harriet Balch. They attend together the boarding-school, dancing school, and assembly.'"[144] She married first James R. Wilson, United States Navy, and after his death Major-General Alexander Macomb, commander-in-chief of the United States Army, who fought the battle of Plattsburg in 1814. An oil picture of General Macomb that he had painted for his wife, taken after the battle of Plattsburg and now in the writer's possession, shows the General standing in full uniform and looking into the distance: his orderly holds his horse close by, and in the background the tents of the American Army are seen. General and Mrs. Macomb lived in Washington in a large house which still stood in 1897 on Farragut Square at the northwest corner of Seventeenth and I Streets. Mrs. Macomb died May 22d, 1869.

5. III. Alfred Balch was born at Georgetown, D. C., September 17th, 1785. He graduated at Princeton

---

[144] *Social Life in the Early Republic* by Anna Hollingsworth Wharton, Philadelphia and London, 1902, page 82. Dr. Manasseh Cutter was one of the United States Senators from Massachusetts.

College in the class of 1805, securing the A. M. degree at Princeton, where he was a member of Whig Hall;[145] and then studied for the Bar. In 1813 he went to Nashville, Tennessee, upon legal business. There he remained, and soon gained the friendship of Andrew Jackson, which lasted until the death of the hero of New Orleans. Jackson, when President, named him Commissioner of Indian treaties, and in 1840 Martin Van Buren appointed him United States District Judge for the middle district of Florida:[146]

"I nominate to the Senate Alfred Balch, of Tennessee, to be judge of the United States for the middle district of Florida, for the term of four years, in place of Thomas Randall, whose term of service has expired.

"M. VAN BUREN.

"WASHINGTON, March 10th, 1840."

In a letter addressed from Nashville, Tennessee, in 1818 to "William Jones, Esquire, President of the Bank of the United States, Philadelphia," Judge Alfred Balch advocated the establishment of a branch of the bank in Nashville:

"NASHVILLE, 4th March, 1818.

"SIR:

"Understanding that some hesitation exists as to the propriety of locating a Branch of the Bank of the

---

[145] *Catalogue of the American Whig Society in the College of New Jersey, 1769*, Princeton, N. J. Published by order of the Society, 1893, page 10.

[146] *Executive Proceedings of the Senate*, Vol. IV., page 265.

United States at this place, I have thought it might be very proper to state to you the reasons which should induce an immediate adoption of this measure.

"The late law of our Legislature taxing all banks created in this State by an authority other than that of this State, has produced a great excitement in this part of the country—it has called forth the strongest expressions of disapprobation against those who passed it from almost every influential man in this quarter, and their sentiments have been re-echoed by the great mass of the people. Since the beginning of the year, an universal expectation has prevailed here, that a Branch of the United States Bank would be immediately located in Nashville, and it would seem to be bad policy to disappoint this universal expectation, especially if it is intended ever to establish a Branch in this State. In addition, at our last session of our legislature a law was passed creating eleven new banks, one at this place. Notice was given that books for the subscription of the stock would be opened on the 17th of last month, but previous to that time it was understood that a Branch of your institution would be speedily in operation in this place, and instantly the notice was countermanded. With regard to eight of the remaining ten there has been the same result from the same cause. Feeble or almost abortive attempts have been made to set up the remaining two in the hope that they could be made Branches of our State Bank. I believe most confidently that a Branch of your institution here, will destroy the wishes and the hopes of all persons who have been friendly to these new Banks, for all men here regard their establishment as injurious to the country, because of the limited circulation of their paper, their

conflicting interests and consequent dissentions, and their total inability to make for the State a circulating medium calculated to transact the business by effecting the exchanges and facilitating the commercial enterprizes of a population that is spread over an unduly extended territory, and which is pushing by the aid of their adventurous spirit their capital and products to the lakes on the one hand and to the Gulf of Mexico on the other.

"We have scarcely any Banking capital amongst us. We hold nearly one twentieth of the whole population of the Union and yet we have not one million of Banking capital in our whole State. The District of Columbia has three millions. Our population is continually increasing as well by emigration as by natural means. Our exportations of tobacco are becoming very great. For the want of Banking capital our merchants are compelled to dispose of their drafts upon the north from the south, many times at considerable loss. The augmented quantity of the products of our soil requires an additional capital for its purchase and transmission to a safe and profitable market. The scarcity of circulating medium in the State renders the currency and credit of your notes perfectly certain, and a large amount superadded in circulation would at once develope the resources of the country, and quicken the industry of the people, and secure a large profit to the mother Bank at Philadelphia.

"This then is a most propitious season for the creation of an establishment which will secure these objects not the least of which is the prosperity of a section of the Union that is every day becoming more interesting, more populous and more commercial.

"But should you forbear to adopt this measure, the new Banks will be forced by necessity upon the people.

"Permit me further to observe. This place receives annually from the merchants of Philadelphia one million of dollars worth of goods. Our great market is New Orleans. Where we *sell* our staple commodities we look naturally for those which we wish to *buy*. It is a thousand miles from this place to New Orleans by water. Our steamboat navigation will roll the floods of the Mississippi back on their sources. It is the interest of Philadelphia to connect us and it together. To link our interests, to annihilate the distance which separates us, to supply us with our luxuries and articles of necessity as she has done for the last thirty years.

"As to the law of our Legislature taxing a Branch of your Bank if put into operation here, almost all men agree that it is impolitic and unconstitutional, and no man here has ever dreamed that the feeblest effort would ever be made to execute it.

"The deep interest which I have in the prosperity of this place and this section of the country must be my apology for troubling you with the foregoing observations. If they shall assist in any the least degree to a proper decision upon our interests and those of the institution over which you preside with such distinguished ability, it will give me sincere pleasure. On the entire correctness of the *facts* which I have stated you may confidently rely.

"With great respect, I remain your obt. servt.

"ALFRED BALCH.

"Wm. Jones, Esqr.,
"Philadelphia."

Judge Balch died at his country place, Rose Mont, near Nashville, on June 21st, 1853. He married: first Mary Lewis, and after her death, Anna Newman. He had one child:

6. I. Alfred Newman Balch, who died in 1840.

5. IV. Lewis Penn Witherspoon Balch was born at Georgetown, D. C., on December 31st, 1787. He graduated at Princeton College in 1806, receiving the A. M. degree, where he was a member of Whig Hall,[147] and then studied law with his kinsman (afterwards Chief Justice) Roger Brooke Taney.[148]

From a letter to "Richard Smith, Esq., Bank of the U. S., Washington," we learn that Mr. Balch took an interest in the political events of the day.

"FREDERICK, June 21, 1831.

"DEAR SIR:

"When you can see or communicate readily with Geo. C. Washington, I wish you to put into his hands at least the one hundred [torn here] of McDuffie's report,

---

[147] *Catalogue of the American Whig Society instituted in the College of New Jersey, 1769*, Princeton, N. J., printed by order of the Society, 1893, page 10.

[148] *The Brooke Family of Whitechurch, Hampshire, England, together with an account of Acting Governor Robert Brooke of Maryland, and Colonel Ninian Beall of Maryland*, by Thomas Willing Balch, Philadelphia, 1899.

Memoir of Roger Brooke Taney, LL.D., Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States 1836–1864,, by Samuel Tyler, LL.D., Baltimore, 1872.

Chief Justice Taney's relation to the Federal Constitution and his influence thereupon, by George W. Biddle, Philadelphia, 1889.

Roger Brooke Taney, a paper read before the Law School of Dickinson College, March 10, 1899, by Walter George Smith, Philadelphia, 1899.

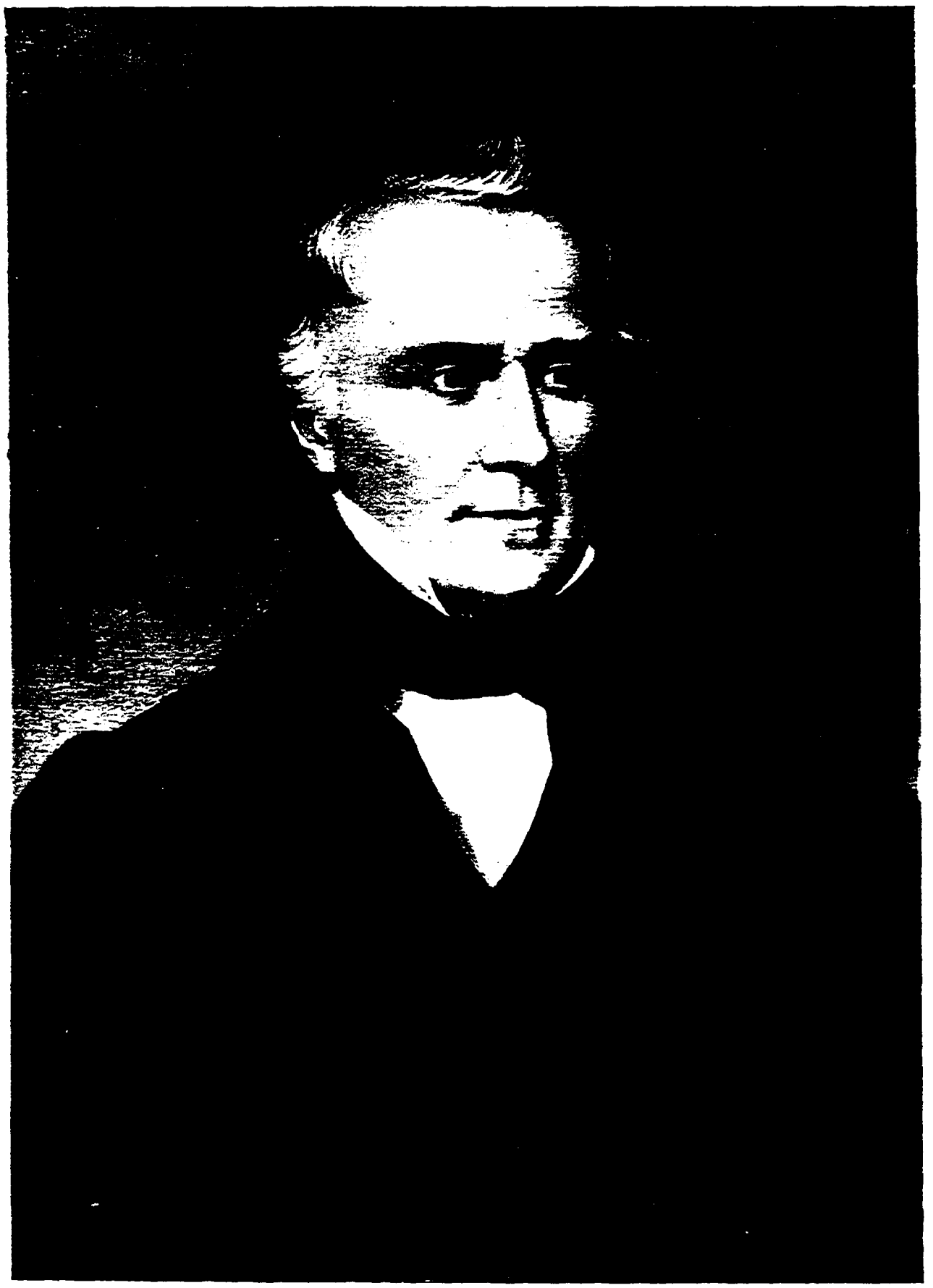
for distribution on the *east* side of Monocasy. As to our side I will try to take care of that. I wish you also to impress on his mind the duty and necessity of being very active during the campaign. Our success depends on rousing the party. Urge him to impress the minds of the people with the pro [torn here] of turning out at the *electoral* election in September. That is the most important of all, not only because the Senate continues for five years, but also because whichever party triumphs then, must succeed in October. We shall certainly do our duty in this County. Since I saw you, I have been out somewhat among our friends and find them ripe for the contest.

"Could you not by some means, hunt me up one copy of Clark's address? Perhaps some person in the City may have it. Enquire of Muton. I think he may succeed in finding it. Send it to me as soon as possible. I wonder if any of the numbers called 'Politics for Farmers,' published by Niles last year can be had for distribution? Enquire.

"With great regard y^r^ friend

"L. P. W. BALCH."

In 1834 he took to Baltimore twenty-two slaves he had freed and offered to send to Liberia at his own expense. When Mr. Balch's mission became known to the merchants of Baltimore, they sold him what was necessary to fit out these twenty-two negroes for the voyage to Liberia, at cost price, thereby contributing about fifteen hundred dollars to the purpose. On that trip to Baltimore, Judge Balch took with him as an aid in looking after the



JUDGE LEWIS P. W. BALCH.

slaves, his eldest son Lewis, and his young son, Thomas, then a boy only of thirteen years of age.

The following letter of Reverdy Johnson, a leader of the Baltimore Bar, addressed to "L. P. W. Balch, Esqr. Atty. at Law, Frederick Town," is endorsed on the outside "Reverdy Johnson's letter when his house was in ruins."

"BALT. 17 Augt. 1835.

"MY DEAR SIR:—

"In the midst of all my troubles tears have never come from me until reading your most kind letter. There is something so touching in a heartfelt sympathy, that I was entirely overwhelmed by it. What I have lost in property is to me comparatively of no value. I would at any moment cheerfully sacrifice all to stand unimpeached before my fellow citizens, and I must hope that so far I do retain with a large portion of them my reputation for integrity unimpaired. I am entirely unable to say how deeply sensible I feel for your kindness. My heart is too full to suffer me to describe my feelings. Any effort to do so would be more than useless. There is only one thing more that you can do to make me if possible still more warmly grateful to you than I am already. My professional character is better known to my brethren than to any other class of the community. And an expression of opinion from your hand would be most highly gratifying to me.

"I suggest it with diffidence and feel that you duly appreciate my motives.

"Truly yr. friend

"REVERDY JOHNSON.

"L. P. W. Balch, Esqr."

The following paragraphs are extracts taken from the diary of Judge Balch.

"Married April 10, 1839, by the Right Rev. Bishop Onderdonk of the Diocese of New York, the Rev. Lewis P. W. Balch rector of St. Bartholomew's church, New York, son of Lewis P. W. Balch, Esq., of Frederick, Maryland, to Miss Anna Jay, oldest daughter of Hon. William Jay of Bedford, N. Y.

"Nov. 17, 1839. I hear this morning that Gen. Harrison is nominated as Whig Candidate for the Presidency by the Harrisburg Convention—vote in all 254, Harrison 143, Clay 90, Scott 16. It is greatly to be regretted that a military chieftain is to supersede the great orator and statesman of the West. I fear the precedent. Congress not yet formed, all is confusion, no message, nothing done."

"1840, March 3. The greatest political meeting of the Whig party I ever saw met this evening in the Court House. I addressed the people for an hour and a half. Universally praised."

"April 4, 1840, Saturday. Letter from Thomas at New York via Washington of the 23rd ult. informing us that he is now the second scholar in Columbia College. Oh Lord be praised and bless thy name for this evidence of thy favor and pray that we may all be humble."

"From the Baltimore *Patriot* of Dec. 22, 1841:

"Married Tuesday the 21 inst. at St. Peters Church Baltimore by the Rev. Mr. Balch of St. Bartholomew's New York, Dr. Charles H. Stephen son of the Hon.

Judge Stephen of Maryland to Miss Virginia Balch daughter of L. P. W. Balch Esq. all of Leetown, Virginia."

"Genl. Macomb died in 1841."

"Jany. 27, 1842. This day I received from Josiah Bayley, Esq. Atty. Gen. of Md. a commission of deputy Atty. Gen. for Frederick County in place of James Raymond, Esq., resigned. The office is worth perhaps $1500 per annum but may be the means of increasing my other professional business. * * * Bless the Lord Oh my soul and all that is within me bless his holy name."

[New York.] "Dec. 29, 1843. Attended morning services in the church (St. Bartholomew's). Lewis read prayers. Mr. Cambreling [Stephen Cambreling of the New York Bar] and others called on me. Warm eulogiums on Lewis by various persons. Visited Mrs. Banyear and Miss Jay, aunts of Anna.

"Saturday Dec. 30. Thomas and I walked down to the battery at the foot of Broadway, saw the fine bay and the blue line of the mighty Atlantic.

"Sunday 31. For the first time I saw my beloved son in his own pulpit preaching to his devoted and affectionate flock. He was dressed in his surplice and afterwards in his robes. How beautiful and splendid the sight to my aged eyes. But a few years since he was on my knee or riding on the pommel of my saddle. Now he is preaching the word of life to a numerous, intelligent assembly; to men of all ages and ranks, from the gray head to those of middle and youthful life.

"Monday Jan. 1st, 1844. Attended prayers in the church this morning. Lewis read. After this we were constantly engaged in receiving company; four hundred I suppose were there. It was indeed a most pleasant sight, so many cheerful faces. All seemed to admire and venerate their rector. This is an immemorial custom in this great city. I wished it prevailed over the United States as it is productive of much good feeling.

"On Tuesday the second I dined with Dr. Lyel, Bishop Onderdonk and others."

"Wednesday Jan. 14, 1844. I read last night an account of the death of two old friends, Richard B. Magruder and Capt. John Rose. The first was nearly of my age—school fellows—Whigs [members of Whig Hall] at Princeton. The second was married to my mother's sister, Anna Beall, in 1792 or thereabouts by my father in Georgetown, D. C. I was so small at the time that a negro woman held me in her arms to witness the ceremony."

"Monday April 29, 1844. I started at 8 A. M. for Baltimore to attend the Gubernatorial Convention in which I represent this County (Frederick) in part.

"Tuesday 30. Convention meets at the Universalist Church, every delegate there, a hundred and one in number. Much harmony. M. G. Pratt of Prince George County, the nominee."

"Extract from the *Frederick Herald* of August 3, 1844.

'Married on Tuesday the 30th July by the Rev. Mr. Balch rector of St. Bartholomew's, New York City, the

Rev. Freeman Clarkson, rector of St. Anne's Church, Fishkill Landing, New York, to Catherine eldest daughter of Lewis P. W. Balch, Esq. of Maryland.' "

Here is a letter from a fellow student of Judge Balch at Princeton, Theodore Frelinghuysen, of New York, who was the candidate for Vice-President in 1844 of the unsuccessful Whig Party.

"NEW YORK Octr. 27, 1848.

"*L. P. W. Balch, Esqr.*

"MY DEAR SIR:

"Your kind favor of August 12th arrived during my summer vacation and rural ramblings, and when I came to the city, I concluded to defer a reply until I had the pleasure of nominating your worthy son for a D. D. to our Council, which I did on Wedy. Evg. last, and from the approbation from which it was apparently met, I have no doubt of its confirmation for the next commencement in June. By our laws a nomn. must lay at least three months. I will attend to it. And I am glad of the occasion, as I deem your son, in all respect deserving of such notice. I thank you my kind friend, for the interest, I hold in your recollections and prayers. It is very pleasant in a world of many and sore trials, to think of you in the [torn off here] relations of christian friendship and hope. I wish that we could visit you in your tranquil retirement. I often long for such retreat. Mrs. F. joins in kind remembrances.

"Yrs. very truly, in the best
of bond

"THEO. FRELINGHUYSEN."

An additional extract from Judge Balch's diary tells of his eldest son's trip to Europe.

"June 12, 1850. Wednesday; Lewis and his second wife, formerly Miss Emily Wiggin, and Augusta and Mr. and Mrs. Robert Ralston of Philadelphia, start this day from Boston, via Halifax to Liverpool, and thence to the residence of Mr. Wiggin, father of Emily.

"They arrived at Liverpool on Saturday 22nd June at seven o'clock A. M. The steamer *Europa* left the dock for New York as the *Asia* entered."

Judge Balch voted for Henry Clay for President, for General Fremont, and also for Abraham Lincoln both times. All through the war of Secession he was for the Union, and in March, 1865, he was chosen a State Circuit Judge for the northeastern counties of West Virginia, and served in those troublesome times with credit until the following March. He contributed to the *Southern Literary Messenger* a number of biographical sketches—on Roger Brooke Taney, Daniel Sheffy, Samuel Cooper, Robert White, Jeremiah T. Chase, Lawrence Everheard and others. He died August 29th, 1868.[149] On March 14th, 1811, he married Elizabeth Willis Wever, daughter of John Adam Wever (originally von Weber) of Virginia. She was born May 10th, 1790, and died July 7th, 1874.

Judge and Mrs. Balch had twelve children;

---

[149] He also wrote *A Ride to Graceham*, *Southern Literary Messenger*, Volume XV., 1849, page 121.

they were all born at Leesburg, Loudon County, Virginia.

6. I. Adam Weber Balch, born March 31st, 1812, died July 30th, 1813.
6. II. Lewis Penn Witherspoon Balch.
6. III. Catharine Elizabeth Spencer Balch.
6. IV. Virginia Melancthon Balch.
6. V. Harriet Cornelia Balch, born Dec. 26th, 1819, died Aug. 5th, 1820.
6. VI. Thomas Balch.
6. VII. Anna Beall Balch, born May 25th, 1823, died Sept. 12th, 1824.
6. VIII. Sylvester Whitefield Balch, born March 9th, 1825, died June 22d, 1825.
6. IX. John Wilson Balch, born July 22d, 1826, died Aug. 15th, 1826.
6. X. Frances Carter Balch, born July 10th, 1827, died July 28th, 1827.
6. XI. Alexandrine Macomb Balch.
6. XII. Stephen Fitzhugh Balch.

6. II. Lewis Penn Witherspoon Balch was born at Leesburg, Loudon County, Virginia, February 1st, 1814. He entered West Point in 1831 and graduated at Princeton College in 1834, receiving the A. M. degree, and at the General Theological Seminary, New York, in 1836. At Princeton he was a member of the American Whig Society.[150] Or-

[150] *Catalogue of the American Whig Society instituted in the College of New Jersey, 1769*, Princeton, N. J., Printed by order of the Society, 1893, page 15.

dained a Deacon of the Protestant Episcopal Church by Bishop White, he was for ten months in charge of St. Andrew's Church, Philadelphia. He was ordained a priest by Bishop Meade. From 1837 to 1850 he was Rector of St. Bartholomew's Church, New York. He was Rector of Christ Church, Baltimore, for five years; Rector Emmanuel Church, Newport, R. I., from 1859 to 1866. In sight of his home at Newport, which was between the first and the second beaches, was Berkeley's Rock, where Bishop Berkeley (1684–1753) is said to have written the lines—

"Westward the course of empire takes its way;
The four first acts already past,
A fifth shall close the drama with the day;
Time's noblest offspring is the last."

Dr. Balch named one of his sons born at Newport after the author of the above quotation. In 1866 Dr. Balch was Rector of St. Michael's Church, Bristol, R. I. He was Secretary of the House of Bishops of the Protestant Episcopal Church from 1853 to 1866. Canon of the Cathedral of Montreal and Chaplain to the Metropolitan from 1866 to 1871; he was also Clerical Secretary to the Montreal Diocesan Synod. On September 13th, 1868, the day after the funeral of Bishop Fulford, First Bishop and Metropolitan, Canon Balch preached the sermon in Christ Church Cathedral, Montreal, on the work of the dead Bishop. From 1871 to

1873 he was Rector of the Church of the Ascension at Baltimore. Afterwards, he was Rector of Grace Church, Detroit, from November 1874 to June 4th, 1875. He died at Detroit, Michigan, June 4th, 1875. He was buried at Plymouth, New Hampshire, June 9th, 1875. In 1849, he received from Union College, New York, the degree of D. D.

Here follows a letter that he wrote on the proposition to colonize the Republic of Liberia with American Africans as a happy solution of the slavery problem in our country, which caused the Civil War of 1861–65:

"COLONIZATION.[151]

"At the recent annual meeting of the Colonization Society, in this city, the following interesting letter was read:—

"BALTIMORE, May 13, 1857.

"MY DEAR BISHOP POTTER:—I am laboring under the effects of a severe cold, and, with extreme difficulty, preached to-day. I am satisfied that it would be perilous, and, in the face of the prohibition of my physician, I cannot venture to travel to Philadelphia and speak to-morrow night at the anniversary of the Pennsylvania State Colonization Society.

"May I ask you to do me the favor to read this letter, and what will be better still for the cause we love, supply my deficiencies, and expand and enforce which is here only imperfectly given, for I am writing from a sick bed.

[151] *American and Gazette*, Philadelphia: Wednesday, May 13, 1857.

"It was with no ordinary satisfaction I received and accepted the invitation of the committee to address the meeting of your society. Colonization has an hereditary claim on my feeble services. My venerated grandfather [the Rev. Dr. Stephen Bloomer Balch] was one of its original founders, and more than twenty-eight years ago I recognized that claim, and founded the first juvenile Colonization Society which has been formed in this country.

"Later still, my maternal grandfather assigned to me the pleasing task of conveying from Virginia to Baltimore twenty-two colored persons, most of whom had been born on his estate, and all of whom he liberated, and at an expense of nearly $1000, comfortably fitted out and sent to Liberia. Through Commodore Perry and Bishop Payne I learn that they and their descendents are among the most useful and respectable citizens of the Colony. The letters which we receive from time to time indicate their appreciation of the advantages which they enjoy. And a comparison of their social, political and religious condition in Africa, with the same conditions of eleven colored persons liberated by my father, and remaining in this country, would, if any doubt existed on the subject, abundantly satisfy me of the great benefits which colonization presents to the African race.

"In connection with this fact, there is an incident not without interest, and quite suggestive, which you will permit me to relate. Their number and appearance attracted attention and excited inquiry and when the merchants of Baltimore learned who they were, and what was their destination, without an exception, they threw off the profits, and in many cases added valuable

presents. The goods and presents, at market value, were probably not less than $1500. More recently still I was honored by the board of managers of the American Colonization Society, with the appointment of commissioner to visit, in behalf of colonization those countries whose governments had acknowledged the independence of Liberia. I think, therefore, on the score of ancestral interest in this cause as well as some humble personal efforts in its behalf, and the declared confidence of the able and efficient board entrusted with the management of this vast plan of benevolence, that I am fairly entitled to credit when I say that I deeply regret my inability to be present at the approaching anniversary.

"To my apprehension, the object of your meeting, is not to discuss the abstract question of African Colonization. The day has gone by when that can be considered an open question. Its essential element has so pervaded the families of the earth, and become the characteristic feature of the present generation, that it might almost give name to the age. To colonize a nation in Australia or California excites no more surprise than the formation of State after State by the vast tide of emigrants rolling to the West. It matters not what causes may have produced these great results; whether religious intolerance, like that which drove a gallant band to the deck of the *Mayflower*—or the *res angusta domi*, which sends multitudes to the ore beds of California—or the social inequality and disfranchised lot of the lower classes of Europe, which compel them to seek the freer institutions and fertile plains of this western continent—in every case colonization has proved the effectual remedy for the evils. It has done more. It has demonstrated its practical benefit as the means

ordained of God to throw new sources of comfort, usefulness, and happiness to whole races of men. And it is difficult to imagine on what principle of logic or philosophy the African race alone is to be excluded from this salutary development of Providence. Slowly but surely will the evils which attend slavery to both races force into the hearts and consciences of the civilized world the conviction that colonization is the remedy not only for the evil as it exists in this country, but that it is, humanely speaking, the only possible way in which the millions of Africa can be enlightened. And the sternest prejudice must yield—the most determined hostility to the cause be changed into friendship, as state after state of the republic of Liberia wheels into line, and the Ethiopian nation asserts its rank among the kingdoms of the world.

"Already there stretches along the western coast of Africa for seven hundred miles, a republic, recognized by many of the most powerful governments. In agriculture, commerce, arts, and sciences, as well as in morals, she will compare favorably with the early colonial history of this or any other country. And all this has been done by the American Colonization Society.

"All honor to the men who formed this Society. They were their own prophets. They had minds to grasp some of the results now achieved. They had hearts to cling to the widespread beneficence of the scheme, even though it should be baptized in the blood of its early friends. The wisdom of their plan—the ability of the scheme to accomplish the result sought, is no longer an open question. The general verdict of mankind will sooner or later set to its seal that the true friend of the African race is the A. C. S.; whilst

the gracious approval of God must become apparent to the most sceptical, by the manifestations of his Providence. Hence I conceive that the real object of such meetings as the approaching anniversary is to hear what has been done, and see if any new light has been shed by Providence to encourage and animate the friends of colonization.

"The complicated nature of those acts and expressions of God's will, which we term Providence, and the remote causes which sometimes combine to produce its most striking results, whilst, on the other hand, they make us cautious in reaching conclusions, yet, on the other, startle us with their extraordinary simplicity and power. Franklin, as he floated on the water, drawing the electric fluid with his kite, little dreamed that he was a co-worker with Morse in joining the eastern and western hemispheres by the electric cable.

"We cannot separate the wonders of science and their application to the laws of trade from the direct control of God. And the formidable problem of the ultimate removal of the African race to their native land, seems to me about to be served by one of the simplest laws of trade.

"Whenever emigration to Africa, like emigration to America, shall become self-paying, the work is done—at least it becomes then only a question of time. And then the repulsive power of slavery in America, and the attractive power of freedom in Africa, will combine to produce the result. And no thoughtful man can look at an Irish laborer in America, without feeling that the time must come, when by reason of the increased speed, cheapness, and facility of commercial intercourse with Africa, the colored race will have no

more difficulties to overcome, in returning to the land of their fathers, than European emigrants conquered in seeking a refuge in the United States. This is the law of trade to which I allude. And our God has, in this instance, bound up with the law and united to its power the two controlling facts, that the real interest and happiness of the African lie in his own country. Once take this position as a centre, and how many radiating lines are there issuing from and returning to it.

"The noble gift of a packet ship to the society by the late Mr. Stephens, of Maryland—the effort in the same direction in Maine—the incipient measures, only delayed, not abandoned, to induce our government to establish a mail service to Africa—stated frequent steam communication with Europe—a rapidly increasing and valuable commerce—the exploration of the interior—the recent successful experiment of the Rev. John Seys, demonstrating the fact that an entire expedition of colonists can be settled in the interior without the loss of a single one, and without suffering from the acclimating fever; these, and other facts which might be cited are among the indications of Providence which encourage the friends of this cause.

"But there are sterner elements moving us to action. Recently this country was convulsed as it never was before by a political contest. The element of bitterness which gave intensity even to the virulence of party strife, sprang from slavery. And but a short time before the unseemly spectacle was presented to the world of the doors of an American Congress for a long time closed by the manacled hand of slavery.

"It has entered as an element of discord not merely into political life, but into the sacred enclosures of

social relations, and the still more holy precincts of religion. For the first time, that terrible treason, disunion, seemed to assume a palpable shape and form, and statesmen, philanthropists, and patriots, are alike roused to the necessity of earnest effort to settle this vexed and vexatious question. These I regard as warnings of Providence, whose effect must be to create a deeper interest in the colonization cause. We do not claim that it is free from defects. Time and experience will indicate where its operations may be improved. But its mission to some extent has been accomplished beyond the power of man to frustrate.

"The foundations have been laid, and as one contemplates that vast temple being erected on the continent of Africa, one is forcibly reminded that, like that of Solomon, its several parts have been fitted and framed in distant lands, then borne by the Providence of God and placed almost without the sound of a hammer. Nor can we doubt that the head corner stone of that spiritual building, elevated so as to catch the earliest ray of the rising sun and retain the last beam of fading twilight, is none other than the same Divine Being who said, 'Ethiopia shall soon stretch out her hands to God.'

"The present is full of promise—the future is bright with hope. Let every friend of the cause possess his soul with the assurance it is of God, and will succeed.

"Believe me, my dear Bishop,

"Ever faithfully and affectionately yours,

"LEWIS P. W. BALCH.

"Rt. Rev. A. Potter, D. D.,

"President of the Pennsylvania State Colonization Society."

The Rev. Dr. Balch was married first on April 10th, 1839, by Bishop Onderdonk to Anna Jay, daughter of William Jay of New York, and granddaughter of John Jay, first Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States.[152] She died in 1848. Dr. Balch and his wife had five children:

7. I. Augusta Balch, born December 26th, 1840, and died April 30th, 1888. She married on April 20th, 1881, George Augustus Peabody of Salem, Mass.

7. II. Lewis Balch, died young.

7. III. Elizabeth Balch. She was born April 20th, 1843, and died May 23d, 1890.

She wrote, *Zorah, A Love Tale of Modern Egypt*, printed in 1887, and shortly before her death, she published *An Author's Love, being the unpublished*

---

[152] As early as 1665, Pierre Jay, a prosperous merchant, was settled in the old Huguenot town of La Rochelle. By 1685, a year "memorable for the revocation of the Edict of Nantes," Pierre Jay, who was strongly attached to the principles of *l'Église Reformée*, found that expatriation from his native land, or the abjuration of his religious faith were the distressing alternatives presented to him. In the summer of 1685, troops were introduced into La Rochelle and quartered upon the Huguenots. Dragoons were placed in the house of Pierre Jay "to live and act at their discretion." Finding the situation intolerable he preferred expatriation for himself and his family to the alternative of giving up their religious beliefs. The family first sought a refuge in England and subsequently in the British North American colonies. And thus it was to the short sighted policy of Louis the Fourteenth, in contrast with the more liberal views of Cardinal Richelieu, that France lost a family which gave to the United States of America in John Jay the first Chief Justice of their Supreme Court.

See *The Lives and Times of the Chief Justices of the Supreme Court of the United States*, by Henry Flanders of the Philadelphia Bar, Philadelphia, 1881.

letters of Prosper Merimée's "Inconnue," in which she answered the letters of Merimée to his "Inconnue."[153] In the Epilogue, she wrote: "By the tideless sea at Cannes on a summer day, I had fallen asleep, and the flashing of the waves upon the shore had doubtless made me dream. When I awoke the yellow paper covered volumes of Prosper Merimée's *Lettres à une Inconnue* lay beside me; I had been reading the book before I fell asleep, but the answers—had they ever been written, or had I only dreamed?"

7. IV. Anna Balch, died young.

7. V. Lewis Balch, born July 7th, 1847. In 1866, he began the study of medicine at McGill University, Montreal, Canada. The next year he continued his medical studies at the College of Physicians and Surgeons, the medical department of Columbia University, taking the M. D. degree in 1870. In 1873 he settled in Albany, N. Y., where he lived until 1898. In a letter to the writer he says:—

"I became in 1875, I think attending surgeon to St. Peter's Hospital, afterwards Consulting Surgeon, followed by, in later years the appointments of attending surgeon to the Albany Hospital, the Homeopathic Hospital, the Child's Hospital and the Day Nursery; Professor of Anatomy, Albany Medical College, 1876 to

---

[153] Prosper Merimée born at Paris in 1803, died at Cannes in 1870. He was elected a member of *l'Académie Française* in 1844. His *Lettres à une Inconnue*, Mademoiselle Jenny Dacquin, extending from 1841 to 1870, were published in 1873, three years after his death. See the *Nouveau Larousse Illustré*, Paris.

1887; Professor Medical Jurisprudence and Hygiene, 1887 to 1898; Health Officer of Albany 1884 to 1898; Secretary State Board of Health 1886 to 1894. At one time, I was on the Consulting Board of the State Hospital at Poughkeepsie; at another time an examiner of the Medical Applicants before the Regents of New York State. Sometime in the eighties, I do not remember the year, I received an Honorary Degree of Ph. D. from Union University, to which the Albany Medical College was attached, and also an honorary degree of M. D. from the Medical College itself. Soon after graduation in 1870, I entered the National Guard of New York as Captain and Assistant Surgeon in the 37th Regt. of Infantry, was transferred to the 71st Infantry, became Major and Surgeon, resigning in 1873 when I moved to Albany. In 1877, when the great railroad strikes were on, I again entered the Guard as Major and Surgeon of the 10th Inft. and served in that capacity until 1896 or 1897, when I was transferred to the Surgeon General's Office of the State. In April 1898, I went out with the 2nd New York Volunteer Infantry as Major and Surgeon. May 23rd, I was detailed as Chief Surgeon, 2nd Division 3d Corps, at Chickamauga, was relieved early in June and went to Tampa with the regiment, acting as Brigade Surgeon until June 12th or 14th, when I was detailed as Chief Surgeon, 2nd Division 4th Corps. I served until about August 3rd or 4th, when I was relieved and ordered to Fernandina to join my regiment. About September 1st, the command was ordered to Troy, New York, to muster out. I was relieved from duty with that regiment and ordered to examine 3rd New York Volunteers for Muster out. On 3rd November, 1898, I was made Brigade Surgeon United States Volunteers resigning my commission as

surgeon of the 2nd New York, November 8th or 10th and ordered to Harrisburg, Pennsylvania, as Chief Surgeon, 2nd Brigade 2nd Division 2nd Corps. Order changed at Harrisburg to Macon, Georgia, as Sanitary Inspector 1st Division 1st Corps and to go with first troops to Cuba. I sailed from Savannah, Georgia, December 1st and landed at Trinidad, Province of Santa Clara, December 6th. Took station toward end of December in Aerifuegar on staff of Major General John C. Bates. January 14th, ordered with Major John A. Logan to Sangua La Grand. We took the trip across Cuba on horseback, examining into the condition of the country as we rode. May 1899, ordered to Matanzas as Sanitary Inspector in Department of Matanzas and Santa Clara on staff of General James W. Wilson. August 1899, I was relieved and ordered to New York, receiving on arrival orders to go to San Francisco. Reported there in September and sailed the 30th of September for the Philippines, arriving the 28th October. Ordered as Brigade Surgeon, 2nd Brigade, 2nd Division 8th Corps (General Grant). Served there, going on campaign or what we used to call a 'hike,' until after Christmas, when was relieved and ordered to Zamboaryo, island of Mindanao as Chief Surgeon of the Military District of Mindanao and Jolo. Served until April 18, 1900, when we went on board hospital ship "Relief" ill. Sailed for home on transport "Grant" from Manila, May 15th, 1900. Arrived San Francisco June 10th. Granted four months sick leave in July, went to Rhode Island where November 13th, 1900, I was 'honorably mustered out by order of the President.' After that it was merely trying to recover my health, not doing any-

thing 'till I took hold of Herbert's school after his death to close it up. Last winter I was from September 'till June acting Professor of Military Science at the Rhode Island Agricultural College, Kingston. On June 21st, I was appointed on the Sanitary Corps for the Canal, landed here the 28th of June and on July, the 8th, assigned as health officer of Panama which same I am at present."

In 1897 he published *A Manual for Boards of Health and Health Officers*. He married, November 2d, 1870, Jane Byrd Swann, at Hartford, Conn.

8. I. Lewis Balch, born May 3d, 1872. He was married November 2d, 1904, at Wakefield, Rhode Island, to Sally Rodman Thompson, daughter of Robert Thompson, and granddaughter of General Isaac P. Rodman, who fell at Antietam.

The Rev. Dr. Balch (see *ante* page 228) married secondly, April, 1850, at St. Andrew's Church, Philadelphia, Emily Wiggin. She was born October 15th, 1825, and died April 2d, 1891. She was the daughter of Timothy Wiggin and Catherine Holme, his wife.[154] Catherine Holme was descended from Edward Holme and Jane Hastings, his wife. Dr. Balch and his second wife had ten children:—

7. VI. Alfred Holme Balch, born February 28th, 1851, died June 7th, 1898; he married in 1887, Ruth Flanders Paxton.

---

[154] The Holme family predigree is traced back to Raudelphus Fitz Norman, who possessed the Manor of Holme. One of his descendants was Robert de Holme, from whom descended Burncustan Holme, Esq., (1664) of Keursley, County Lancaster.

7. VII. William Ralston Balch, born December 9th, 1852. He wrote and published *The Life of James A. Garfield*, Philadelphia, 1881, *The Mines, Miners and Mining Interests of the United States*, 1882, and *The Battle of Gettysburg; an historical account*, Philadelphia, 1885.

7. VIII. Catherine Holme Balch, born October 20th, 1854.

7. IX. Henry Herbert Balch, born May 7th, died February 19th, 1902; married November, 1891, Clarissa Tilghman Fleming.

They have two children:

8. I. Henry Herbert Balch, born October 25th, 1892.

8. II. Clarissa Anne Balch, born April 17th, 1894.

7. X Emily Balch, born April 8th, 1858, died April 25th, 1890.

7. XI. Ernest Berkeley Balch, born January 15th, 1860.

7. XII. Adeline Balch, born August 9th, 1861; she married August 9th, 1887, Joseph Howland Coit, Jr. They have one son:

8. I. Henry A. B. Coit, born May 26th, 1888.

7. XIII. Ellen Mary Balch, born February 25th, 1864. She married August 31st, 1887, Oliver Whipple Huntington.

7. XIV. Edith Cazenove Balch, born May 29th, 1866. She married July 1st, 1897, the Rev. Clifford Gray Twombly.

7. XV. Stephen Elliott Balch, born March 5th,

1869. He married May 1st, 1903, Josephine Martyn Radcliffe.

6. III. Catherine Balch, born November 28th, 1815, and died July 1st, 1850. She married the Rev. Freeman Clarkson.

6. IV. Virginia Balch, born March 18th, 1818. She was married at St. Peter's Church, Baltimore, by her brother, the Rev. Dr. Balch, of St. Bartholomew's Church, New York, in December, 1841, to Dr. Charles H. Stephen, son of the Hon. Judge Stephen, of Maryland.

The following item appeared in one of the Washington papers, probably the *Evening Star*, in 1898:

"Mrs. Virginia Balch Stephen on her eightieth birthday last week was given a surprise party. Friends made it a red letter day with gifts, floral offerings, letters and congratulatory visits. Mrs. Stephen is the granddaughter of Rev. Dr. Balch, the first minister in the District of Columbia. When on a visit to her aunt, Mrs. General Macomb, Sir Charles Vaughan, the English minister gave her a dinner on her eighteenth birthday, with the privilege of inviting all her friends, among whom she included Daniel Webster, Henry Clay and other celebrities of that day. On her recent birthday not only relatives and friends called, but some of the clergy and Baron Riedl de Riedenau, secretary of the Austrian legation; Wu Hsueh-Lien and Fung Ping Wan of the Chinese legation. The evening was very pleasantly concluded by musical selections rendered by Miss Power."

Dr. and Mrs. Stephen had one daughter:

7. I. Elizabeth Juliana Stephen, who married Dr. James R. Rogers and had two children:—

8. I. Charles Stephen Rogers born in 1870, and died young.

8. II. Katherine Elizabeth Rogers born in 1872.

6. VI. Thomas Balch was born July 23d, 1821. He entered Columbia College (now Columbia University), New York, in 1838, with the class of 1842. At the end of his Freshman year he received from the college a silver medal for standing at the head of his class in geometry. Abram S. Hewitt, a classmate of his, said that "Tom Balch was the master of English style in the class." At the beginning of his Senior year he became ill, and so was unable to keep up with his class. In addition, owing to his father having manumitted his slaves in 1834, he was unable to count on further help from home, and he found it, therefore, additionally difficult to put off the study of a profession. Accordingly, he began soon after his illness the study of the law with Stephen Cambreling and was admitted to the New York Bar, January 17th, 1845.[155] In 1849 he went

---

[155] "By the Honorable

"Samuel Nelson, Esqr. Chief Justice

(of the)

State of New York.

"*To all to whom these PRESENTS shall come*, Greeting:

"Be it Known that Thomas Balch having been duly examined and regularly admitted as an Attorney in the Supreme Court of the

to the "West" to examine land titles and look after other interests represented by Mr. Cambreling. For this purpose he visited Detroit, Chicago, and other towns, and made a tour in Wisconsin of several hundred miles. For this last trip he fitted out at Chicago, where he engaged an Indian guide. While in Wisconsin, at one time he spent eleven days with the Indians without seeing a "Pale face." During this tour he shot three deer for food. At the end of 1849, owing to the development of his legal practice in Philadelphia, he settled there and was promptly

---

State of New York in the present Term of January in the Year of our Lord one Thousand eight Hundred and forty-five I do hereby authorize and License the said Thomas Balch to appear in the said Court and there to Practice as an Attorney according to the rules and customs of the said Court and the Laws of this State.

"GIVEN under my Hand and Seal the seventeenth day of January in the Year of our Lord one Thousand eight Hundred and forty-five, in the sixty-ninth year of the Independence of the United States of America.

"SAMUEL NELSON."

[Upon the back of the above certificate the following is inscribed].

"BE IT REMEMBERED that on this seventeenth day of January in the January Term in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and forty-five, Personally appeared in open Court the within-named Thomas Balch and took and subscribed the oaths as an Attorney of this Court as required by law.

"CHS. HUMPHREY
"*Clerk.*"

"BY THE HON. REUBEN H. WALWORTH,
"CHANCELLOR OF THE STATE OF NEW-YORK:

"*To all to whom these Presents shall come.*

"KNOW YE that Thomas Balch having been duly examined and regularly admitted as a Solicitor in the Court of Chancery in the State of New York, on this seventeenth day of January, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and forty-five I do hereby

The above phototypes show the two sides of a silver medal given by Columbia College in 1839 to Thomas Balch. The inscription on the obverse side is: "Curat. Coll. Col. Nov. E. B. Bale F$^{t.}$" The inscription on the reverse is: "Virt. et Dil. P. R. Æ. M. T. W. Balch In Geom. Pract. 1839"

admitted to the local Bar.[156] There he knew well Charles Chauncey, one of the leaders of the Philadelphia Bar, Henry C. Carey, the economist, Henry Paul Beck, Dr. Charles Frederick Beck, Edward Shippen of the Philadelphia Bar, and later Henry Carey Baird. His card of invitation to the assembly balls for the season of 1849-50, when three Assem-

---

authorize and license the said Balch to appear in the said Court and there to practice as a solicitor according to the rules and customs of the said Court, and the laws of this State.

"Given under my Hand, and the Seal of our said Court on the seventeenth day of January one thousand eight hundred and forty-five.

"R. HYDE WALWORTH."

Upon the back of the above certificate the following is inscribed:

"STATE OF NEW YORK, *ss.*

"On this seventeenth day of January, 1845, the within named Thomas Balch appeared in open Court before the Chancellor, and took and subscribed the oath of office prescribed by the Constitution, as a Solicitor in the Court of Chancery of said State.

"JOHN M. DAVIDSON, *Register.*"

[156] "BE IT REMEMBERED, that at a Supreme Court of Pennsylvania holden at Philadelphia in and for the Eastern District before the Honorable John Bannister Gibson, Esquire, Chief Justice, and his associates, Justices of the said Supreme Court, on the tenth day of December Ao Di. one thousand eight hundred and forty-nine.

"THOMAS BALCH Esquire was on motion of William B. Heiskell, Esquire, Sworn and admitted to practice as an Attorney and Counsellor of said Court.

"*In Testimony Whereof* I have hereunto subscribed my name and affixed the seal of the said Court at Philadelphia, this twenty-first day of December, Anno Domini, 1849.

"T. SIMON COHEN
"*Prothonotary.*"

blies[157] were given at Musical Fund Hall, has been preserved and is thus inscribed:—

"ASSEMBLIES.

"The honor of Mr. Thomas Balch's

"Company is requested for the Season.

"John M. Scott,	Managers.	James H. Blight,
Thomas Cadwalader,		B. W. Ingersoll,
Joseph Swift,		William T. Twells,
Charles Willing,		Alexander Biddle,
Richard Vaux,		William W. Fisher,
M. G. Evans,		Bernard Henry, Jr."

During these years Mr. Balch wrote some short essays, romances and poems. A part were printed in the *Southern Literary Messenger*. Of these the following are examples:—

FLIRTATION.[158]

BEING AN ESSAY BY A NEW CONTRIBUTOR.

Without thee, what were unenlightened man?
A savage, roaming through the woods and wilds—
Nor moral excellence, nor silent bliss,
Nor grace, nor love were his.—*Thomson's Seasons.*

There is so little stirring now-a-days, that we feel disposed to discourse a trifle upon a subject much talked of, but little understood.

---

[157] The balls known as the "Philadelphia Assemblies" were started in 1748–49, with fifty-nine subscribers. The managers that season were John Swift, Lynford Lardner, John Wallace, and John Inglis.

[158] *The Southern Literary Messenger, Devoted to Every Department of Literature and the Fine Arts.* Volume XV. Richmond, Virginia, 1849, page 345. Other articles were, *Discipulus, a tale of St. Valentine Eve I.*, Volume XVI., 1850, page 666; *Ibid II.*, Volume XVII., 1851, page 175; *Gœthe's Wilhelm Meister*, Volume XVII., 1851, page 431.

In saying that Flirtation is a subject much talked of, but little understood, we make no rash assertion. Every science has its pretenders, and none has more ignorant worshippers than this. Be it ours, writing from a chair, which, like its occupant, has seen better days; be it ours to expound some of its mysteries for the benefit of youthful "hearts *now* pregnant with celestial fire."

In the first place then, Flirtation is not lovemaking, nor anything like it. For in the one case, a man starts on a voyage at the commencement of which he casts aside the rudder of reason and trusts to prosperous breezes and the favor of the gods for reaching in safety "the haven where he would be." In the other, like the experienced mariner sent to explore a hitherto unknown coast, he approaches it warily, sounds the depths and shallows, sends out boats hither and thither to make observations, takes the bearings of the headlands and inlets, carefully notes them all in his log-book; and, when all has been explored, sails away to other lands. In an expedition of this kind, however, there is no mistaking icebergs for continents, as the English journals say was the case with our famous Exploring Expedition.

Nor in the next place, is Flirtation to be mistaken for Coquetry. The foam of champagne is not that of the juice of night-shade, though the one resembles the other. There is some difference between an exhilarating beverage and a deadly poison. We need not caution our own sex, however, against the practice of coquetry. This belongs by prescriptive right only to women. The theory on this subject is, that there are no broken hearts amongst them; that they do not sur-

render their tender affections until their Papas have been duly consulted; but, as soon as leave is asked and obtained, that then the gentle feeling darts like lightning into their souls, subduing, controlling and changing their characters. But to them we would address a word of warning as to the use of this power, for we have known some manly hearts, beating high with generous aspirations, completely wrecked in this way; and the curse of a wounded spirit never fails to cling.

Nor in the next place is Flirtation to be mistaken for friendship. They are not only distinct, but in most respects, antagonistic. Perhaps I cannot better explain this principle to the students of this science, than by relating the following narrative. They can also sharpen their wits by studying it.

Mr. A., a young law-student, left a certain town to the Eastward, for the purpose of attending a law-school. Whilst there, he became acquainted with Miss B., who had much to recommend her; at least sufficient to cause him to fall in love with her. He had reason to suppose that she was not indifferent to him, but being proud and unpossessed of fortune, whilst she was very wealthy, he tore himself away, pursued his studies elsewhere, and on obtaining his license, cast anchor in one of our large cities, there to struggle with those trials and mortifications, to suffer those anxieties, those sickening hours of hope deferred, which only a young, unfriended lawyer can fully know, and which drive some to the fearful guilt of self-destruction.

Nearly two years had elapsed, from the time that he first saw her, when she, whose image was graven on his heart, made an unexpected visit to the city in

which he resided. He called to see her. She was cold and distant. Still something in her manner bade him call again. He went, went frequently. At last he addressed her. She refused him. He threw himself back on his pride, and although gentle and friendly in his demeanor, yet he laid aside his love for her altogether. She appeared perplexed. The period fixed for her visit expired, yet she lingered. At last she went, and they parted *friends*.

They met twice or thrice during the two years next succeeding. From each interview they parted *friends*. Another year passed on. They met again. Something in her tone brought back old times. His heart told him that he had not made due allowance for her wounded pride—that he should have said something in explanation of his abrupt departure from the law-school, before addressing her. So he once more stood before her as a lover.

"It was too late," she said. "Once she had admired—perhaps loved him—but it was too late."

No matter what happened further at that interview, nor what happened subsequently. As she well said—"it was too late"—but the heart of an ambitious and distinguished lawyer often turns despondently to dreams of the past, and to think of his *friend*.

We ought in the next place, after having shown what Flirtation is not, to define what it is. But Mephistopheles truly says—"he who wishes to define any living thing, seeks first to drive the spirit out of it. He then has the parts in his hand, only the spiritual bond is wanting." Such a catastrophe we by no means desire, for Flirtation we consider not only a spiritual thing, but one essentially and entirely spiritual. To

drive the spirit out of it then would not even leave the parts in our hand. So we will proceed to consider the various shapes in which this "living" thing developes itself.

And here we premise that a flirtation, like man himself, is the creature of circumstances. The relative position of the parties is always so modified by the accidents of birth, wealth, personal appearance and the like, that it would be vain to attempt laying down rules invariably to be followed. But certain maxims, the result of experience and observation we may disclose, which if shaped a little to suit the occasion, may prove of service to those ambitious of becoming masters in a science of so much delicacy and dexterity as Flirtation.

As the first of these, we would say: Let no man enter on a flirtation with a lazy mind—*Cogenda mens ut incipiat* says Seneca, and in nothing is this precept more true than in matters of this kind. The intellect must be aroused, the faculties strained, memory made to yield up its hoarded stores of information, imagination to shed its varied lights over passing scenes, perception awakened to every tone of voice, to every light and shadow which passes over the countenance, while the will, like a strong man armed, must preserve a calm, serene composure within.

We admit that all this is difficult to attain. But let no one suppose it unworthy of his best efforts. In point of fact, woman constitutes, in one way or another, the principal object of man's existence during that long period, which reaches from boyhood to the grave, from the hour that we form dim, fantastic visions of happiness to be realized through her instru-

mentality, to the time when we look back with sorrowful hearts over dissipated delusions and dwell in those recollections which are "pleasant but mournful to the soul."

And here let an "old fellow" (as we are familiarly called by the wanton juveniles around us,) let one, who is no longer an actor in gay scenes, say somewhat as to the pleasures of memory. They are after all the most certain. We soon learn that the phantoms of hope glide delusively before our eyes; that to-morrow may deceive us; that the once loved may prove faithless; that change may come even to the wanderer, weary with his too long sojourning on earth.

But of the past, nothing can rob us. It changes not. Yesterday cannot deceive us. The well-known voice, the friendly face, the trusty hand, are ours forever. But a truce to our digressions.

We were saying that a flirtation was worthy of a man's best efforts. We deliberately repeat our assertion. No man can enter upon one with a woman of talent and feeling, without being greatly improved thereby both mentally and morally. To illustrate our meaning.

Many years ago, a friend of ours, about one-and-twenty, good looking, intelligent, and ambitious of improvement, had occasion to visit one of our large cities for some three or four months. Soon after his arrival there, he became acquainted with two young ladies, one of whom was staying at the house of the other on a friendly visit. My friend had his evenings entirely at his command, and as they told him that they approved highly of innocent Flirtations, he determined to try his powers by encouraging two sprightly girls

at once. A bold man, truly! But he succeeded, and returned to his home in appreciation of character and capacity to use his powers ten years older. Such had been the mental exercise to which he had been subjected.

My friend is one of those who are disbelievers in the theory held in polite society, that women never die of broken hearts. Accordingly he tells a touching story of one of these girls, which I cannot forbear relating briefly. It has a moral in it; besides which it has the rare merit of being true.

She was just seventeen the night he first became acquainted with her. Her portrait, which we have seen, bespeaks her as eminently beautiful, and yet all who ever knew her say, that it wants the holy lustre which shone upon her countenance. The beauty of her person, the charms of her conversation, the fascination of her manner, proved too much for my friend. He was young. His will was not yet the strong man armed. He loved and was loved.

She was to return some two or three weeks before the time fixed for her departure. The evening before she left, she sang to him once more the plaintive melodies which had so often delighted his ear, for not the least of her attractions was a sweet voice. She shed many tears at the thought of parting, for a presentiment that they would next meet in sadness came over her.

In the morning a little package reached him. It contained a lock of hair and a note, in which she prayed to the God, who is ready to answer the petitions of the pure in heart, that He would bless the object of her love.

He was hurried off to a distant part of the country.

"The Southern breeze was on his brow."

Travelling and exciting occupations soon changed the current of his thoughts, and he came to regard the whole affair as one of those childish attachments, which spring up like a flower and are just as short-lived.

But towards the close of the summer, chance made him acquainted with a gentleman from the place where the girl resided. She became the subject of conversation, and then my friend learnt that her family thought she was dying of consumption.

He had matters to detain him where he then was, but he cast all considerations aside other than the thought of ministering to her grief. He hastened as rapidly as possible to her father's house. It was late in the afternoon when he reached it. He paused as he lifted the latch of the wicket. The honey-suckle and the jasmine gave forth their perfumes, and the roses and lilies displayed their beauties.

He sat down for a moment, for he was sick at heart. But nerving himself, he entered the house. Was she indeed dying? No! She was only more beautiful than ever.

Several hours were spent together that evening—hours of fearful anguish and self-accusation on his part, of truthful forgiveness and gentle blessings on hers. She had never doubted him. She had only blamed herself. Day after day did she take less and less interest in the amusements of society, in the occupations of study. Her only recreation was to sing over, so long as the physicians would allow her, the songs which he had loved. Her only consolation was to dream that the past was no longer the past, but was once more the present. Night and morning had her prayers ascended to the throne of grace in his behalf.

She was happy now, and felt that she should soon get well, for he loved her.

Ere the dawn of the next morning had fairly broken, my friend was called to her room.

She was dying. The death damps were on her brow, and yet her eye lighted up with something of its former glory as she turned to gaze on him. A few words of parting—a promise to watch over him through life—an entreaty so to live that she might welcome him to Heaven when he came to die—a prayer for his happiness—and her angelic spirit had left its mortal abode.

Three days of watching beside her corpse,—more than beautiful in death,—three days of that agony which man can know but once; one night beside her grave; and then—out again into the wide world.

But to return to my maxims. Another general maxim is—be careful to select a woman in a transition state. My language must appear as mystic as that of the Delphic oracle; but I will do what the Pythoness never did. I will explain.

"One who is formed," says Goethe, "there is no such thing as pleasing; one who is forming will always be grateful." For example: take a young girl before she fairly embarks in society, to whom all things promise enjoyment, who hastens impetuously to snatch the pleasures which mother earth spreads so bountifully before her, and if you can so command your powers as to render yourself agreeable to her, I know few things more likely to afford a summer's amusement than to study the developments of her mind, the fluctuations of her feelings, and your mutual action and reaction upon one another.

Another maxim is—that a flirtation in the country

differs essentially from one in town. In the latter case, the comparative unfrequency with which the parties meet, and the variety of topics afloat, enable the gentleman to go always prepared; whereas, in the former, he is thrown back on his own resources, and is compelled to affect sentiment and to cherish a taste for the beauties of nature. On the other hand he seldom derives as much improvement from a flirtation in the city as from one in the country; because, in the city, he sees the lady chiefly in the masquerade which "good society" teaches its members to wear; but in the country he can enter more deeply into her character, explore more accurately her motives of action—and, by the way, if wise, he will make some of these discoveries a staple of conversation.

Speaking of conversation—let him be careful to cultivate a sportive, half-quizzing mode of talking, even upon the most seriously sentimental subjects. The most daring propositions may be made in a jocose manner with perfect impunity. The least touch of the lachrymose and a man is gone. He has given up "the ribbands." Besides, women admire that graceful way which some men have of passing over the dull and dwelling only on the sprightly parts of a subject. The way in which a man talks is, with them, of more consequence than the matter. Let him not, however, forget the remark of De Staël (a great authority in these things)—*en toute chose c'est la froideur qui offense, et l'imagination, au contraire, a presque toujours de la bonhommie.*

"A knack at rhyming" is also quite necessary and must be cultivated. A little satire, or a bit of tenderness, or raillery, when put into tolerable verse, will often

prove of most essential service. As examples: here is something for an over-confident belle.

[159]Here's to broken hearts a plenty!
Bravo! fill the goblet high!
Never, until maids are scanty,
Never cease to woo and sigh.
Theirs' are hearts were made for breaking
Fragile things indeed are they—
Don't then disappoint the making,
But in flirting pass the day—

Who in woman's faith believeth?
Let the fool his cap put on—
Her glory is that she deceiveth
Trusting hearts too quickly won—
But to him who her well knoweth,
Who in her doth not confide,
At his feet she lowly boweth,
Lays aside her "female pride."

Truth and Honor heaped upon her
Are like water, poured on sands
Thirsting 'neath the suns of summer—
Truth and Honor buy no lands.
But bring wealth, and straight you'll gain her
"Quick! my lady's carriage call"—
Magic words those are to win her—
Take her to your lofty hall.

And here is something for a sentimental Miss.

---

[159] These verses have been set to the music of an air from the opera of *L'Elisir d'Amore*, Io co rico.

I care not for Fame,
  I care not for wine,
I care but for woman,
  In her beauty divine.
I know that good wine
  Its pleasure can give,
But with woman's dear love
  In rapture we live—
    So give me not Fame—
      Give me not wine—
    Give me but woman
      In her beauty divine.

I know Madam Fame
  Her glory can shed
O'er the brows of the living,
  And the tombs of the dead.
Still glory is but fleeting
  And fadeth away,
Like dew of the morning
  Before coming day—
    So give me not Fame—
      Give me not wine—
    Give me but woman
      In her beauty divine.

I ask but in dying,
  On her bosom to rest,
In her white arms folded,
  To her beating heart prest—
To feel the tear falling
  From her soft beaming eye—
To know that she drinks in
  My last earthly sigh.

So give me not Fame—
  Give me not wine—
Give me but woman
  In her beauty divine.

Or by way of mystifying some would-be man-killer, verses like these might be sent.

Oh, Leslie's Kate! Oh, Leslie's Kate
  When first with thee I met,
I little thought 'twould be my fate
  A lesson strange to get—
But ever since I thee have known—
  I know no reason why—
Thy face upon my path hath shown
  Like stars in twilight sky.

Oh, Leslie's Kate! 'twill not be soon
  That I forget the dance,
When to thy side I bent me down
  To catch their earnest glance—
And then the pleasant morning call,
  When by your side I sat—
You hinted that of all the ball
  You only thought of that.

Nor, Leslie's Kate! will time so soon
  That evening's spell efface,
When magic tricks and arts were shown
  To childhood's wondering gaze—
For me, enchantments had no charm;
  The arts did idle seem,
For near me breathed the living form
  Of some bewitching dream.

We met no more in such gay hours—
For soon affliction came—
More potent far that life of ours
To nourish my wild flame.
I knew now that it lurk'd within—
But in my pulse it stirr'd
Till other eyes were all unseen,
And other tones unheard.

I dream'd that Honor, Faith and Truth,
All in that bosom dwelt—
Ah! shattered was the dream of youth,
And 'fore my God I knelt—
I prayed that I might thee forgive,
This world I might forget,
And in his awful presence live
Though but too sinful yet.

I wandered 'neath those sunny climes
Rich in the gems of art—
The music of Cathedral chimes
Stole o'er my broken heart—
But not the halls where genius dwells
Could wake life in my breast;
And to mine ear the old church bells
Spake of eternal rest.

Sad, solemn thoughts steal o'er me now—
We'll meet not as we've met—
For Death upon my youthful brow
His icy seal hath set.
Yet happy are the early dead—
In peaceful graves they sleep—
But may life's sweets on thee be shed
And God thy spirit keep.

These are given, not for their merit, but by way of specimens to the reflecting student. Valentines also come very well into play in their proper season. We once knew a very doubtful field carried by a judicious use of this species of artillery. Like verses, however, they should be spicy rather than sentimental.

Another maxim is—rather under, than over, dress. This may seem a startling paradox; nevertheless it is true. That passion which St. Paul has so appropriately called "the lust of the eye" has but little more than a momentary influence over women. A dazzling exterior may produce a first impression but no one, who is merely "varnished over with good breeding," as Sir Fopling has it, can hope to effect any thing more thereby.

The attentive student, however, will carefully note the dress of women. Nothing perhaps is so indicative of female character as female costume. From the ill-made, awkwardly put on gown and unbecoming hat of the elderly Puritan female, whose heart is overflowing with the "milk of human kindness," to the "gay and debonair" attire of the fashionable belle, which is so well calculated to display in luxurious freedom the charms of the wearer; female fancies, tastes, feelings and principles are disclosed to the discerning eye in ribbons, flowers, jewels, and frocks. There are indicia to be found here from which conclusions may be drawn with almost unerring accuracy. The Philosophy of Female dress is yet to be written. One of these days a little entreaty from my young female friends may extract something from me on the subject. One thing I will now say: Let my student behold yonder

girl. The neat straw hat, so delicately yet so tastefully trimmed, that ten minutes after she has left your sight you cannot say whether it was trimmed or not; the quiet yet well-chosen color of that dress, so modestly made, so neatly fitting, coming up close to the well-formed throat which emerges from a little frill of lace, like the bust of Iris from the lotos leaf: the well-arranged hair, gracefully brushed back from the temples, giving thereby the clear line of that part of the face where genius most loves to dwell, and disclosing the small white ear sitting close to the head: the little edging of lace cuff just falling on the well-selected glove: the snowy stockings and the neat but easy slipper scarcely, yet still, visible beneath a dress neither too long nor short: let him behold her well, then flee away. Depart! Let him not seek lessons of her. It may not be. She is too earnest and beautiful of soul. She looks upon life with too trustful an eye, too confiding a heart. Like the sensitive plant she may not be touched without suffering, and though too gentle doubtless to express her feelings in words, yet let him beware. The curse of a wounded spirit never fails to cling.

I have not even opened this subject. I had something to say on the Italian adage *Donna che prende, tosto se rende*, and quite a little sermon to deliver on that pithy, pregnant remark of Mephistopheles to Faust:—

> Mein guter Freund, das wird sich alles geben;
> Sobald du Dir vertraust, sobald weisst Du zu leben.

I had something to say about the various classes of women, the prude, the blue, the belle, *et omne id genus;* and the different modes of approaching them; some more maxims to suggest, and some more tales to tell. But I am not expected to say so much as to take up a whole number of the *Messenger*, and therefore I will say no more at present. But I have left my address with my friend, the Editor, who will duly forward all packages, and I stand ready to counsel with any one disposed to seek and take the advice of an elderly gentleman.

One word, however, before I close this essay. We all remember the tale in the Arabian Nights, in which Ali Baba (I believe) goes to the cave of the thieves, and on pronouncing certain magical words, the door opens and he enters a store house full of curiosities and treasures. Thus, I confess, human nature appears to me a vast receptacle of wondrous mysteries of hidden oracles,

οὐδε
Μην ποτε λαθα κατακοιμασει
Μεγας εν τουτοις ΘΕΟΣ.

prophecies, eternal in their nature, with Divinity mighty in every line. To *this* cave,—filled with mournful truths, unexplained problems, unsatisfied desires, unheeded sympathies,—Flirtation is the key, the "open sesame" by which we gain admittance. If we are wise we will return to our homes laden with jewels and all manner of precious stones.

This song was written upon the death of his favorite sister, Catherine, Mrs. Clarkson, in 1850:—

---

[160] Sophocles.

SONG.[161]

From "The Pilgrims," an Unpublished Poem.

I.

The hand so often clasped in mine
  Lies lifeless by thy side—
And sadly rests my lip on thine
  Which oft I've press'd with pride;—
The loving voice, from which so oft
  I consolation drew,
Responds not in thy tones so soft—
  My beautiful, my true.

II.

Yet why should I repine when Death
  A better life hath given,
And led thee by the hand of faith
  To rest for aye in Heaven?
No! whilst on earth I linger on,
  Let this my comfort be—
Though I in chains still strive alone—
  Oh loved one! thou art free.

PHILADELPHIA.

In the *Messenger* there also appeared anonymously—

LINES[162]

Sent to a Lady with a bouquet of flowers on Christmas Eve:—

---

[161] *The Southern Literary Messenger, Devoted to Every Department of Literature and the Fine Arts.* Volume XVI., Richmond, Virginia, 1850, page 209.

[162] *The Southern Literary Messenger, Devoted to Every Department of Literature and the Fine Arts.* Volume XVI., Richmond, Virginia, 1850, page 624.

1.
'Tis said, that from man's earliest birth
Two spirits unto him are given,
To guide, to tempt him whilst on Earth,
And lead to Hell or Heaven.

2.
I know not of the legend's truth,
But this to me my soul doth tell,
That thou couldst guide my steps on Earth,
And lead to Heaven as well.

3.
It may not be. Thou canst not love.
No earthly thoughts within thee rise;
Thine eyes are fixed on things above;
Thy hopes are in the quiet skies.

4.
Yet kindly take these buds from me;—
'Tis but a Christmas gift I send
To say, I only ask to be
Thine earnest, humble, faithful friend.

PHILADELPHIA.

In 1853 he was elected one of the Domestic Secretaries of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. In 1854 he was one of the founders of the Philadelphia Cricket Club,[163] and the same year he helped to organize the Seventy-Six

[163] "FIFTY YEARS OF CRICKET.

"PHILADELPHIA CRICKET CLUB TO CELEBRATE ITS SEMI-CENTENNIAL.

"The Philadelphia Cricket Club will celebrate its fiftieth anniversary on February 10th. A club dinner will be given at the clubhouse, at Wissahickon, at which several of the original founders of the club and many of the older representatives of other cricket

Society,[164] an association formed to publish and reprint manuscripts and rare books.

He took much interest in the Franklin Institute of Philadelphia, and in 1854 delivered the address at the close of its exhibition that year.

REPORT OF THE TWENTY-FOURTH EXHIBITION OF AMERICAN MANUFACTURERS, HELD IN THE CITY OF PHILADELPHIA, FROM NOVEMBER 14 TO DECEMBER 2, 1854, BY THE FRANKLIN INSTITUTE OF THE STATE OF PENNSYLVANIA, FOR THE PROMOTION OF THE MECHANIC ARTS; TOGETHER WITH A CATALOGUE OF THE ARTICLES DEPOSITED PREVIOUS TO NOVEMBER 14, 1854: AND THE ADDRESS DELIVERED AT THE CLOSE OF THE EXHIBITION, BY THOMAS BALCH, ESQ.

Philadelphia: Barnard & Jones, Printers, 1855; pages 79–84.

---

clubs will be present. The Philadelphia Cricket Club is now the oldest club in the country. It was organized on February 10th, 1854, at a meeting held at the office of William Rotch Wister, Esq., and among the names of those enrolled as founders were John H. Atwood, William S. Blight, Thomas Balch, William M. Bradshaw, Thomas Hewson Bache, James B. England, William Logan Fisher, Jr., Morton P. Henry, George Harding, Dr. William Hunt, G. R. Ingersoll, Hartman Kuhn, Dr. Francis W. Lewis, John Lambert, Richard C. McMurtrie, Dr. S. Weir Mitchell, Benjamin W. Richards, John Samuel, J. Dickinson Sergeant, William Rotch Wister and Henry Wharton." *Philadelphia Evening Bulletin*, January 27th, 1904.

Some Reminiscences of Cricket in Philadelphia before 1861 by William Rotch Wister, Philadelphia, Press of Allen, Lane and Scott, 1904, page 23.

[164] The Seventy-Six Society was formed in 1854 by Edward D. Ingraham, Henry J. Williams, Henry Pennington, William Duane, Thomas Balch, Townsend Ward, Charles F. Beck, John Jordan, Jr., and five other gentlemen. It was very successful until owing to the Civil War it was broken up. The society published four books in all:—*Papers Relating to the Case of Silas Deane* (1855), edited by William D. Ingraham; *The Examination of Joseph Galloway, Esq., by a Committee of the House of Commons* (1855), edited by Thomas Balch; *Papers Relating to Public Events in Massachusetts preceding the American Revolution* (1856); and *Papers relating chiefly to the Maryland Line during the Revolution*, edited by Thomas Balch (1857).

ADDRESS.

LADIES AND GENTLEMEN:—

The pleasure of addressing you this evening is one which I did not anticipate until within a few days. The invitation extended by the Committee was, however, regarded by me, as too agreeable a compliment to be declined; yet, I must trust to the kind feelings, which I entertain for both the Institute and many of its members, to suggest to me some thoughts on this occasion, to which you may not be unwilling to listen.

It seems to me, that this Institute, rightly interpreted, has a significance far beyond that of a mere association for scientific purposes, a meeting of gentlemen employed in kindred professional pursuits, at which they can exchange ideas, or pick up the latest mechanical gossip of the day; for it illustrates the difference between the mode in which those engaged now-a-days in artisan life, follow their occupations, from that of their predecessors. Prior to the sixteenth century, when the general mind of Europe was disturbed alike in Religion and Philosophy; a disturbance which in religion was developed into the Reformation, and in Philosophy was manifested by an active discipleship of the inductive method; here and there shown a bright intelligence which shed some light over the dreary darkness. Some scholar emended or explained a text in a neatly written manuscript, which was strongly bound, and carefully put away on the shelves of his monastic library, there to repose in undisturbed security until, after the lapse of a long tract of time, some other lonely, ingenuous student should take it down and hold communion with the kindred spirit. Here and there a discerning man, disgusted with the subtleties of the Schoolmen, despising the frivolities of

the Logicians, proclaimed some genuine addition to the actual wisdom of mankind as the results of his labors. But he also "stood alone; master in his art; without disciples; without fellowship." Nay, fortunate were they, both Scholar and Philosopher, if they escaped with neglect and contempt only, and were not denounced as heretic and necromancer, and punished by the dungeon and the rack.

Let us consider for a little while the life and labors of a man of science during the Dark Ages, such a one as was Roger Bacon, and contrast in your mind, as we go along, the sufferings and difficulties which beset his career, with the means and appliances afforded in these latter days to a votary. Compare the long and weary imprisonments inflicted on him by the Church, the scorn and contumely with which he was regarded by his warlike kinsmen and acquaintances, compare them with the friendships formed, the kindly associations engendered, the rewards and emoluments, which now await the successful competitor in the industrial arts. Wholesome reflections cannot fail to occur to you in so doing; gratitude to the Giver of all good for having cast your lines in pleasant places, thoughtful recognition of the solemn responsibility, which rests on the men of this generation, to do each his part towards the progress of his race, to strive to the uttermost in aiding to free humanity from error, to teach and act forbearance and justice, to extend mutual assistance. Verily, unto whom much has been given, of them shall much be required.

Roger Bacon was born in the year 1214, near Ilchester, in the County of Somerset. He was of an ancient and respectable family, and as such, he should, according to the opinion of the age, have given himself to martial

pursuits. Everywhere around him was heard the clash of arms, and blood, shed in civil war, flowed most freely. The mere mention of the names of Henry III. and Edward I., recalls the sanguinary wars waged by Gloucester and Pembroke and Hurbert De Burgh for power in England, by Wallace and Bruce for freedom in Scotland. The times invited him: the path of glory was open.

The Church was wealthy and powerful. The priesthood was ignorant and corrupt. Some were sunk in sensual indulgence. Others had no object beyond the aggrandizement of their Order; an object which they endeavored to attain by any measures, no matter how cruel or unrighteous. The debasement of the laity was deemed essential to the perpetuity and extension of the hierarchy; and thus every effort for the increase of knowledge was discountenanced or punished by the Clergy.

To devote himself to science under such circumstances was indeed a dismal and perilous resolution. But Bacon had within him a law, which warred with prejudices and superstitions, and compelled him to yield himself a willing victim. Doubtless the spirit, which God always bestows on those whom He intends for leaders in the untrodden pathway of man's progress, opened a clear vision of the triumphs of him who should add to human comfort, alleviate human suffering, overturn old errors, disclose new truths. Doubtless he well understood how much nobler is the mission of the benefactor than that of the destroyer; how much more glorious is the liberator than the enslaver; and, thus sustained, he earnestly yet serenely did the work appointed for him to do.

Bacon began his studies at an early age at Oxford, whence, according to the fashion of the day, he went

to the University of Paris, then in the highest repute. Here he greatly distinguished himself, and after receiving the degree of Doctor of Laws, returned to Oxford, in 1240. The reputation, which he had by this time acquired, procured for him some generous friends through whose liberality he was enabled to purchase books, construct apparatus, and make experiments, more expensive in their character than his own means could have afforded. He devoted himself to Natural Philosophy, and such was his assiduity, so varied were his labors, "that he left more than eighty works, treatises on grammar, philology, mathematics, physics, optics, geography, astronomy, chronology, chemistry, medicine, logic, ethics, metaphysics, theology, and sundry miscellaneous subjects." He proposed a reformation of the Julian calendar substantially that which was subsequently adopted. To him is ascribed the invention of the air-pump, the diving-bell, the camera-obscura, of optical lenses and the telescope, the discovery of gunpowder and, most probably, of phosphorus. Many of his partially developed discoveries in chemistry and practical mechanics have since been realized. In his treatise "Of the Cure of Old Age," written expressly but unsuccessfully to soften, if possible, the heart of Pope Nicholas IV., and obtain his release from imprisonment, he makes observations which are now asserted as principles of phrenologists; and so analyzes the respective nutritive qualities of vegetable and animal food, that modern vegetarians might almost claim him for one of themselves; whilst, though he objects to frequent bathing as turning the hair prematurely gray, hydropaths may well say, that he was a warm advocate of the wholesome effects of pure water.

Bacon, it seems, boldly avowed that the principles which laid at the bottom of all his treatises were these: that the investigation of phenomena is the true way of ascertaining the laws which govern them; that the cultivation of natural science leads to juster conceptions of moral truth. Such enlightened views, such elevated aims aroused the fiercest ecclesiastical wrath. He was forbidden to read his lectures to the students. He was imprisoned and denied necessary food. He retaliated by denouncing the ignorance and corruption of his monkish persecutors to the Pope. But he appealed to Christ's vicegerent in vain. At length Clement IV. ascended the Papal throne. This wise and liberal-minded churchman protected and encouraged him. In token of his gratitude he prepared the "Opus Magnus," a collection made from his principal writings, and dedicated it to Clement. The persecutions he had undergone, the malicious stories circulated by his enemies of the Brazen Head, of his magical practices with Bungay, of his dealings with the Devil, had only served to extend his fame throughout Europe, and attract attention to his writings. Nicholas III., succeeded Clement; and Jerome D'Asculo, the then general of the Franciscans, prohibited the perusal of Bacon's works and imprisoned him, although then in his sixty-fourth year, and, lest he should appeal to the Pope, obtained beforehand a confirmation of the sentence. After the lapse of ten years, he was, through the intercession of some Englishmen, released from his cruel confinement, and in 1294, "the wonderful doctor," as he was called by his contemporaries, expired, having spent his long life in the service of his fellow creatures.

It is not mine to portray in fitting colors this great

and good man's struggles and labors and sufferings; to follow him into his cloister and laboratory and dungeon; to show how it was his

"to hope till Hope creates
"From its own wreck the thing it contemplates."

Sooner or later some eloquent pen will pay to his memory its just tribute. His chiefest glory was his intelligent advocacy of that kind of philosophical investigation since known as Induction. Some centuries later a persuasive, perspicacious exposition of it sufficed to give lustre to his otherwise dishonored namesake. Yet in fact it is not to the corrupt Chancellor, but to the persecuted Friar that men owe the greatest debt of gratitude.

Such men never live in vain. Their labors are never without fruit. A little while, and Faust, and Guttenberg, and Schäffer, were casting types and printing the Mazarine Bible. How great, how glorious, the change wrought by this invention. Thenceforth neither priests nor Kings could arrest human progress. Thenceforth "no good deed could die tongueless," but one discovery certified another. Heroes have wept because there were no more worlds to subdue; but through all ages and all climes, the moral force of types will go forth conquering and to conquer. To-day, hosts of fighting men "are loud with life." To-morrow, "kind earth has swallowed up their foot prints." To-day, the tranquil thought is first uttered, the persuasive song is first heard. To-morrow, a thousand heads ponder over the one, a thousand hearts respond to the other. Thenceforth they can never perish, but centuries hence men will best appreciate their truth and power.

The English mind, essentially practical in its charac-

ter, eagerly seized upon the inductive method when once it became fairly known. The American mind, equally practical but more enthusiastic, moreover entirely freed from European prejudices, has devoted itself to its development. No one, who has cast his eyes even occasionally over such publications as the *Journal of the Franklin Institute* and the *Scientific American*, no one who has ever visited one of the Annual Exhibitions which have done so much honor to this Institute and its members, could fail to be impressed with the general and healthy attention to practical science and mechanics manifested by our people. Not only in the cotton gins, in steamboats, in telegraphs, in Virginia reapers, and in the ten thousand kindred inventions, is the genius of the nation shown; but all men have heard something of wooden clocks and Yankee notions. The planing machine has done much to diminish the expense of erecting buildings, but the records also show, that not long before it a patent was granted for "an improved mode of paying our national debt."

What, it may be asked, is to be the ultimate result of this national disposition? No mortal eye can scan the future but we are permitted to judge of it from the past. That teaches us that nations, as well as individuals, have each a particular mission. May we not then hazard a conjecture for answer? May we not indulge the hope, that the mission of the American people is to free man from the necessity of mechanical drudgery, and leave him at liberty to give his powers, both of mind and body, to labor which requires intelligence? Perhaps this hope may not prove false. Perhaps this may explain our growing tendency to gather in large cities, and live by our wits rather than to earn our

bread by monotonous, unintellectual toil; a disposition contemplated by some of our profoundest thinkers, with solicitude, if not with apprehension. If such be indeed our mission, then have we one as noble as any yet given to a nation. But let us not forget that with its dignity comes a corresponding responsibility; that with the power of doing great good to our fellow creatures comes the duty of making the best use of it. Then let us as citizens, as members of the industrial classes, as individuals, labor earnestly yet cheerfully in our respective spheres of action.

In 1855, upon motion of the Hon. Thomas Ewing of Indiana, Thomas Balch was admitted as a Counsellor of the Supreme Court of the United States, over which his kinsman, Chief Justice Taney, presided.[165] The same year he edited for the Seventy-Six Society the *Examination of Joseph Galloway by a Committee of the House of Commons*, and at the request of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania,

[165] "E PLURIBUS UNUM.

"SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

"THOMAS BALCH, Esquire, of Philadelphia, State of Pennsylvania was, on motion first made to the Court in this behalf by the Hon. Thomas Ewing, duly admitted and qualified, as an Attorney and Counsellor of the Supreme Court of the United States, on the fifth day of January in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and fifty-five, and of the Independence of the United States of America the 79th.

"*In Testimony Whereof*, I, William Thomas Carroll, Clerk of said Court, have hereunto set my hand and affixed the seal of said Court, at the City of Washington, this fifth day of January, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and fifty-five.

"WM. THOS. CARROLL
"*Clk. Sup. Ct. U. S.*"

Letters and Papers relating chiefly to the Provincial History of Pennsylvania with some notices of the writers. As a great number of the letters included in this collection were written to or by members of the Shippen family, notable in colonial days, the book became known as "The Shippen Papers."

In 1854 he was elected as a Democrat to the first Common Councils of the newly consolidated city of Philadelphia sitting in that body for two years. He lived on Girard Street, that ran from Eleventh to Twelfth between Chestnut and Market Streets, and was elected from the then Ninth Ward, a Whig stronghold. For various reasons, one being that he was a "Free Soiler," he ran far ahead of his associates on the Democratic ticket in that Ward and was one of the few Democrats elected in the city in that contest. In those days party organization was not so developed as now, and candidates could assert their own individual views more than now; and, in the words of John Austin Stevens, Mr. Balch "was called to preside over important committees, where he displayed moral courage and firmness in difficult situations."[166]

His services in the City Councils were referred to in an editorial entitled "Good City Government," in the Philadelphia *Evening Telegraph* of December 6th, 1894, which said: "If the people of Philadelphia really wish good municipal government, they will

[166] *The Magazine of American History*, New York, June, 1877.

have to make some personal effort to get it, and they will have to begin with City Councils. There was a time when citizens of the highest distinction, as Horace Binney, Peter McCall, Colonel James Page, Henry Paul Beck, George M. Wharton, and Thomas Balch, were proud to hold seats in Councils. These men were all eminent for ability and public spirit. They were pecuniarily interested in honest, economical, sagacious government, and they had, and showed they had, a broad interest in the welfare of the city." In 1856 he took an active part with George William Curtis and other gentlemen in the presidential election in behalf of General Fremont, and so originated a warm friendship with the "Easy Chair" that only ended with death.[167] In 1857 he edited for the Seventy-Six Society *Papers relating chiefly to the Maryland Line during the Revolution.*

In 1859 Mr. Balch and his family went to Europe. They crossed on the Cunard S. S. *Persia.* On the ocean, approaching Europe in a dense fog, the *Persia*

[167] George William Curtis was born at Providence, R. I., February 24th, 1824, and died August 31st, 1892, on Staten Island. Among his early books were the *Potiphar Papers* and *Prue and I.* In 1863 he became the political Editor of *Harper's Weekly.* From month to month he contributed from 1853 to 1892 to *Harper's Monthly* under the title of "The Easy Chair," brief essays on topics of literary, social and political interest. He was president of the Metropolitan Museum of Art and filled other important posts. His writing was always direct, clear and forcible; his fairness of mind and sweetness of temper were invincible. See *Orations and Addresses of George William Curtis*, edited by Charles Eliot Norton, 1894. *George William Curtis*, by Edward Cary, 1894.

passed the west-bound Cunarder, the *America*, very close. Both ships were coming on at full speed, running twelve to fourteen knots an hour. The lookout of the *Persia* shouted "Iceberg. Hard aport." Both ships sheered, and then passed within a hundred to a hundred and fifty feet of each other.

From York, England, he wrote to his mother:—

YORK, July 4th, 1859.

MY DEAR MOTHER:

I begin a letter here, but shall not probably finish it until we reach Edinburgh.

To begin with when I left off in my last letter to Henry Beck from London, I mentioned, I believe, that Emily and I lunched one day with Mrs. Beaumont, that being the English mode of giving an early dinner—for you have at the luncheon the same courses of fish, flesh, fowl and sweets that you have at dinner—wines, etc. We had a very pleasant time. Mr. Mowbrey, Mrs. Ralston, Mr. and Mrs. Cochrane were there. On our way we saw the Queen coming from Windsor. She looks like a plain, unaffected gentlewoman, an impression increased by subsequently seeing her at the Haymarket Theatre, where Mr. Seward had invited Emily and myself to go with him.

Another evening I went with Governor Seward to Lord Palmerston's reception; and besides the Dallases saw Charlie Hutchinson there. There I saw all the men who are so famous on our side of the water: Lord Clarendon, Marquess of Lansdowne, Duke of Devonshire, Duke of Newcastle, etc. None of them came up to my idea of a thoroughbred English nobleman like Lord

Clarendon—graceful and gracious, elegant in attire, courteous in manner, pleasing in conversation, he was indeed a finished gentleman. Lord Lansdowne, whose political career as Lord Henry Petty father can acquaint you with, was a meek, gentle old man, exactly the reverse of the resolute statesman I expected to see. Lord Palmerston is a sprightly youth of fourscore! more lively far I found, than many of the young men I saw. Lady John Russell is a buxom dame. One could hardly realize that she was the dame of the little man in the huge white hat whom we saw riding in the Park in the morning. The women were to my taste well dressed. They all looked so clean and neat, fairly shining. I saw no one there that I knew except Mrs. Dallas. Very few were pretty, some were stylish looking. In point of beauty they do not compare with Americans.

On Friday, June 24th, I went to the Fishmongers' dinner at five o'clock. Mr. Boddington sent me the invitation. It was a grand affair given by one of the chief guilds of London. Admiral Sir Charles Napier, Major General Napier, Mr. Mure, M. P., Mr. Hanbury, M. P., made speeches. Mr. Hanbury sat next to me. I found him very agreeable. We discussed the West Indian emancipation. Tasted Turbot and White Bait for the first time, exceedingly nice. The room in which we dined was of princely dimensions. After the dinner an immense golden bowl, filled with rose water, was sent round. The guests dipped their napkins in and washed their faces. The bowl is three hundred years old and inscribed with the names of the Prince Wardens as each one goes out of office.

On Tuesday the 28th we dined with Mr. Coleridge,

whose father, Sir John Coleridge,[168] the eminent lawyer, was there. After dinner we chatted awhile. A very nice dinner. They do not sit and drink wine after dinner as formerly. They adjourned quite soon after the ladies retired. We sat down about eight. The French fashions have completely exploded the old English habits—an hour or an hour and a half at the utmost, and the light French wines and dishes make up the time and viands.

Next day we started off for Matlock Baths, which we found to be a most picturesque village. The neighborhood abounds in charming excursions. We visited Chatsworth, the magnificent seat of the Duke of Devonshire. A vast park, through which herds of deer, flocks of sheep, and numerous cattle were wandering and feeding—huge old trees, some very fine, surround a mansion for which art has done even more than nature. The Derwent winds around the base of the hill on which the house is built. As you cross the bridge, you see "Queen Mary's Bower," so loved and frequented by that unhappy lady, when a prisoner at Chatsworth, and driving down to the gardens, you pass the charming residence of Sir Joseph Paxton, member of Parliament, builder of the Crystal Palace, Head Gardener! You may judge of the style in which Chatsworth is kept up, not only from the importance of the head gardener, but also from the fact that at the kitchen gardens sixty-three gardeners are employed. From this place a pleasant drive takes you to the house, where a porter with livery

[168] Sir John Taylor Coleridge, nephew of the author of *The Ancient Mariner*, was born in 1790 at Tiverton. Graduated at Oxford, he was called to the Bar in 1819, and in 1835 was appointed one of the Judges of the King's Bench. In 1852, Oxford gave him a D. C. L. and in 1858, resigning his judgeship, he was made a member of the Privy Council. In 1869 he published his *Memoir* of the Rev. John Keble, that reached a third edition within a year. He died in 1876.

finer than our militia regimentals opens the gate and conducts you in grand style and solemn flourish to the main hall, and then a guide, female, takes you through the State apartments, picture galleries, and especially the Hall of Statuary. For myself I dwelt mostly on the famous bust of Napoleon by Canova, a fine bust of Byron, and a Cupid with a butterfly. However, there were many other beautiful sculptures. The vases were fine, particularly a Blue John considered the most perfect specimen extant. From the orangery you are taken by one of the floral gardeners through the grounds and gardens and conservatory. The great conservatory covers an acre of ground and has some palms equal to those at Kew Palace. The artificial cascade was put on for our amusement, and it was very pretty when turned on, though it looked rather droll to see the cataract "getting up". One part of the grounds is called "the American", and there have been gathered rocks, trees, everything in fact, to resemble as near as possible an American glade. And in the sunny spots are Rhododendrons and other flowers native to us. Now let me add the most curious thing of all. The owner of this splendid estate, who can ride for miles in every direction, and not leave his own land, scarcely ever visits it. He has so many other mansions! and this chiefly enjoyed by his people and visitors. "Lord, what is man?" Duke or no duke? I saw his grace at Lord Palmerston's, a more modest, unpretending gentleman, rather retiring in fact, you could not find. So exactly the reverse of a pompous, purseproud *nouveau riche*.

The children dined at Edenser, a lovely little spot. After they had finished, we drove over to Haddon Hall, a ruin, though in perfect condition. It belongs to the

Duke of Rutland, and here it was that Queen Elizabeth was entertained so sumptuously. From there we had a drive back through a most lovely valley, where the waters of the Avon and the Derwent meet. Next day we went to Crich, a curious old village mentioned in Domesday Books. Winfield Manor, the decayed old palace of the Earls of Shewsbury, also claimed a visit, and there, as at Kenilworth, we found nettles and weeds and trees growing in the halls once filled with the beauty and nobility of England, and the apartments of the knights and men-at-arms occupied by horses, cows and asses. Above, on the ruined turrets, coats of armor and all the pomp of heraldry; below heaps of dung. So much for earthly greatness. But a short time ago, the last Earl of Shrewsbury, the premier Earl of England, was gathered to his fathers,—a youth, whose short span of life was one struggle with death. Now, another Talbot holds the princely possessions.

On Saturday we came here to York, and lost no time in a visit to the Minster, which is considered the finest in England. But it did not impress me as much as Westminster Abbey. We walked on the city walls, visited all the gates, the ruins of Saint Mary's, of Saint Leonard's, gazed upon the old Roman tombs and the monkish relics. York has a solemn air. The monuments of Roman and Feudal greatness are so many and complete, the town is such a dull cathedral city,—the narrow streets, the old houses with gables projecting over the footwalks—all conspire to give it a funereal tone. The liveliest things I saw there were the corbels on the pinnacles and turrets of the cathedral. They represented the effects of the various deadly sins, and the variety of grotesque forms and expression is infinite.

From 1859 to 1873, Mr. Balch lived in Europe, residing chiefly at Paris, at 48 Avenue Gabriel, at the corner of the Avenue Matignon and overlooking les Champs Elysées.

In 1860 he took a trip to the Pyrenees, of which he left the following notes.

On the 15th of August at Biarritz, I visited a convent in the neighborhood, where the nuns are vowed to perpetual silence and seclusion. It was impressive to see them kneeling with their faces all covered, utterly excluded from the world, not seeing, not speaking even to one another until death comes to take one of their number. On the 17th I drove over in a closed carriage with the Marquis de Montesquieu to Saint Sabastian to see a bull fight; for a while it rained in torrents; afterwards it cleared off and the scenery was glorious. At Irun visited Château or Maison of Louis XIV., where the nuptials with Ann d'Autriche were celebrated. At Irun much trouble about the passports as Monsieur Montesquieu had none and he was obliged to travel as my courier. Breakfasted at Fonda of San Juan at Irun; very good. Met two young Madridians who said sport at Saint Sabastian was very poor. Reached Saint Sabastian at 2.45; visited Cathedral which was full of gilded altars, virgins, saints, etc. At the bull fight the Alguazil, whose saddle was expensively plated read a proclamation. Music struck up and the sport began. A miserable, sickening, disgusting butchery. Two bulls ran away, four were killed; two horses were killed. The crowd seemed angry and called out "Malo, malissimo." Left at 7.30. At Irun more difficulty about the passports. Got a piece of bread and a

glass of sour wine. Nothing else till this morning. Reached here at 3 A. M.

On August 25th started with my family in a carriage for Irun. Got a Spanish breakfast there. Eggs cooked in oil, etc. Good sherry. Took post horses and Spanish driver. The horses were harnessed with rope. Went to Fuenterrabia, a curious decayed old town, with deserted old palaces and fortifications tumbling to pieces. Old church filled with gilded shrines, painted images, a Christ in the tomb, and over it the Mater Doloroso, all dressed in black and lace. Several virgins with *poupées* dressed in ridiculous finery. A woman showed us the priests' robes, kept in a piece of exceedingly old furniture, and under the protection of an image of a virgin with a sword run through the heart. Left Irun at 3.15, and a mounted gendarme rode with us to the bridge over the Bidassoa, and handed us over to the French authorities. The resemblance of gendarmes and alguazils to the officials described by Gil Blas are marvellous. They looked as if they had stepped out of its pages. At the French custom house, the officials examined the carriage very carefully, and made us all dismount. The scenery was magnificent. Many of the hills covered with verdure like early spring. Vast fields of maize and great improvements everywhere on the French side. Along the road on the Spanish side particularly, there were many crosses marking spots of murders. On one side were the Pyrenees, on the other the ocean.

August 31st. At Lastello. We left Biarritz on the 27th and drove to Pau by way of Orthez, where we saw a fine château. From Pau we drove to Eaux-Bonnes, then to Eaux-Chaudes. While there we had a heavy rain storm, which passed away and at night the

moon shone gloriously over the rocks. Our rooms hung right over the Gave and the torrent made such a noise that I could not sleep. The scenery is very varied in the Pyrenees. The Val d'Ossau is very beautiful, terminating in the rugged Pic du Gers. The fine road to Eaux-Chaudes is very wild and savage. We were fortunate in our view of the Pic du Gers. The sun was setting on it, showing snow and rugged top. We were equally fortunate in seeing the Pic d'Ossau in a brilliant sunshine. Half an hour after clouds shut out his cloven head.

Mr. Balch wrote to his family at Paris:—

HOTEL D'ANGLETERRE.

CAEN, Saturday morning.

[1861.]

I had a very pleasant though somewhat dusty ride, at least as far as Lisieux, where we found it raining. The country is beautiful and the whole route has churches, cathedrals, ruined abbeys, châteaux, or other objects of interest to a traveller. What struck me most was the great number of "improvements" (as we call them in America) that is new buildings going up, or recently constructed. Some of them were very fine. Normandie is a country which reminds one of parts of Maryland and Pennsylvania in its tillage and the general features of the landscape.

Caen is a most interesting city. I took a long walk last evening after my arrival. The streets are filled with old houses with Gothic fronts, and everywhere you see the shop-women busy making lace, which is the principal article of manufacture. I went to the Château, an old feudal, now a barracks, and the Bourse, a beautiful front in the Italian style. In the evening I visited the church of Saint Jean.

The hotel is tolerably good though I don't like stone floors to my bed room. The people are very civil; but Paris spoils one for travelling. I got up at six this morning, so as to write this letter, and am just about starting for Lion-sur-mer.

In France he saw much of Guizot,[169] and was often a visitor at le Val Richer, the old Huguenot's country home in Normandy. He described le Val Richer in a letter as follows:—

VAL RICHER, Feb. 24, 1862.
Tuesday.

We had a very pleasant journey indeed to Lisieux. Little Pierre made a famous traveller. He let his Papa and myself read and talk as much as we chose without interrupting us, or complaining of fatigue. We did not look at anything in Lisieux yesterday, because we are going there this morning, and I shall have full time to see the cathedral, the old Norman houses, etc. At Lisieux the carriage met us. M. Guizot's house is about twelve kilometers, through beautiful country. His house was an old *abbaye*, which he has changed and improved very much and rendered very comfortable. M. de Witt has built a wing to it. The library is a very handsome room, that is, if one may call any part particularly the library, for the books

[169] François Pierre Guillaume Guizot, the historian and one of the Prime Ministers of Louis Philippe, was born at Nimes, October 4th, 1787, of a Calvinistic family. He was educated at Geneva, settled in Paris in 1806, and died at le Val Richer in Normandy in 1874. He was a member of *l'Académie Française* and a great power in the consistory of the Protestant Church in Paris. He was a voluminous writer. The best known of his works is *Histoire de France racontée à mes petits-enfants.*

are all over the house. But what is to me one of the most agreeable features, is a very long gallery in which the monks used to promenade in the olden times. Sensible people those old monks! They took good care of their health as well as their pleasure.

This morning after a cup of tea I took a walk to see the Château la Roque, an old Norman building with a moat, or little lake all around it. You go over a bridge to get into the court yard. Yesterday we had a very pleasant dinner and M. Conrad de Witt's children are nice. Marguerite, a little girl, is charming. She speaks English perfectly. Although we had seven children at table, and one only two years old, we had not a word, nor the least noise and disturbance. They all sat up and behaved like little ladies and gentlemen.

He also knew intimately Cornélis de Witt,[170] Michel Chevalier,[171] the economist, Pierre Antoine Berryer,[172] the leader of the French Bar, and Prévost-Paradol of *l'Académie Française*, the author

[170] Cornélis Henri de Witt, historian and *deputé à l'Assemblée nationale* (1871–1876), was born at Paris in 1828 of a Protestant family. He married M. Guizot's second daughter, Mademoiselle Pauline Guizot. He was the author of *Histoire de Washington*, etc. He died at le Val Richer in Normandy in 1892.

[171] Michel Chevalier was born at Limoges, January 13th, 1806, and died in 1881. He was the author of many works on finance, *Cours d'économie politique fait au Collège de France* (1842–1850), *Lettres sur l'organisation du travail et la question des travailleurs* (1848), *La Question de l'or*, 1852, *De la baisse probable de l'or*, 1859, etc. He voted in the *Corps Législatif* in 1870 against the declaration of war with Prussia. He wrote for *Le Journal des économistes*, *La Revue des Deux-Mondes*, and *Le Journal des Débats*. He negotiated for France with England the Chevalier-Cobden Commercial Treaty, 1860.

[172] Pierre Antoine Berryer was born at Paris, January 4th, 1790, and died at Augerville, November 29th, 1868. He was for many years the unquestioned leader of the French Bar. A visit that he paid to Lord Brougham in 1865 was made by the benchers of the Temple and of Lincoln's Inn the occasion of a banquet they gave in his honor.

of *La France Nouvelle* (1868).[173] À propos of the last time Mr. Balch saw Prévost-Paradol, he left the following note:—

"I parted with Prévost-Paradol the day before he left for Washington, and he assured me that he had every reason to believe that there was no fear of the storm of which I fancied I heard some distant mutterings. He dreaded and deprecated, more than any one I knew, a conflict between France and Germany. He believed that his country was utterly unprepared in a military

[173] Lucien Anatole Prévost-Paradol, the brilliant author of *Essais de politique et de littérature* (1859, 1862, 1863), *Quelques Pages d'Histoire Contemporaine* (1862–1866) and *La France Nouvelle* (1868), and a member of *l'Académie Française*, was the leading writer in the *Journal des Débats* and the *Courrier du Dimanche* against the autocratic Empire. He was born at Paris in 1829 and entered the École Normale in 1849. In the days of the Imperial censorship, as some one said, "Prévost-Paradol excellait avec J. J. Weiss dans l'art de tout faire entendre sans tout exprimer." Subsequently, when Emile Ollivier assumed under the *liberal* Empire the responsibilities of Government, Prévost-Paradol accepted under him the post of minister to the United States. Upon hearing of the declaration of war with Germany, against which Prévost-Paradol had argued with all his power in *La France Nouvelle*, overwhelmed by his certainty of the crushing defeat of his country, Prévost-Paradol killed himself at Washington. In *La France Nouvelle*, he expounded and advocated the advantages of a liberal constitutional government. In the last chapter, *De l'Avenir*, he reviewed the growing influence of the English and the Slavonic languages in the world, the more rapid increase of the German race than the French, and urged with clearness and force that France, in order to maintain her influence and power among the nations in the future affairs of the world must develop her colony of Algeria and further extend her sway over Tunis to the eastward and Morocco to the westward. Time has amply proved how clearly Prévost-Paradol reasoned and saw into the future.

Concerning Prévost-Paradol's career, see the excellent study of him by his friend Octave Gréard, also a member *de l'Académie Française: Prévost-Paradol, étude suivie d'un choix de lettres*, Paris, 1894. For Taine's letters to Prévost-Paradol see *H. Taine, sa vie et sa correspondence*, Paris, Hachette, 1902, *passim*.

point of view, and he spoke most sadly and sorrowfully of the political-moral condition of his fellow citizens. He regarded the large majority in favor of the *plébiscite* as absolute proof that political life was so thoroughly extinguished among the French, and that they were so thoroughly disorganized, that it would need at least another score of years of real contest to train them and give them the moral and political vitality necessary for a great struggle.

"The only thing that made Prévost-Paradol hesitate to accept Ollivier's call to represent France at Washington was the uneasy feeling about war, in which he thought the Gallic race, in its then demoralized condition, would go to the wall. Only the day before he left Paris (for Washington) we bade each other good bye, and then again, he said he would not leave France were he not so positively assured by the Emperor that there was no danger of war. We parted; he to take the train for Havre, and I to start the same evening for Spa, in Belgium.

"As I passed out of the door, I met General Changarnier entering to make his *adieux* to the young diplomatist whom he held in great esteem."

Mr. Balch also knew well during his sojourn at Paris many other notable Frenchmen, E. de Parieu, Président du Conseil d'Etat, the Marquis de Noailles, historian and diplomat, Général L'Hérillier, Edouard Laboulaye, the historian and novelist, Général Favé, commandant de l'École Polytechnique Impériale, the Comte de Sartiges, at one time French Minister at Washington, Henry

Moreau, avocat à la cour d'Appel, Général le Marquis de Galliffet, who led the charge of the French cavalry at Sedan, and commanded the expedition that occupied in 1872 the oasis of El Goléa,[174] and Dr. Kern, ex-President of the Federal Council of Switzerland, and for many years Swiss Minister to France.

Early during the Civil War the Consulship at Paris became vacant. That was before the Atlantic cable was in operation and at the request of William L. Dayton, United States Minister to France, Mr. Balch took up for a short time the duties of United States Consul at Paris, on August 26th, 1861, until a permanent successor could be appointed by the authorities at Washington.

During a large dinner at the Tuileries in the early sixties, to which among other foreigners the Emperor Napoleon the Third invited Mr. Balch, the latter happened to be looking towards the Emperor as Louis Napoleon's favorite drink, syphon and claret, was prepared for him. A waiter filled the Emperor's tumbler half full of claret, and a second one then came up with the syphon. But he pressed the handle of the syphon bottle so hard, that the mixture of claret and syphon flew over the table cloth and the Emperor's clothes. Napoleon turned his head away from the waiter and

---

[174] *Le Sahara, Le Soudan et les Chemins de Fer Transsahariens* par Paul Leroy-Beaulieu, Paris, 1904, page 15.

in addition raised his hand, so that he could not see who had so awkwardly spoilt his apparel.

During a visit home in the latter part of 1864, Mr. Balch visited the Headquarters of the Army of the Potomac, and wrote this letter to his children at Paris:—

"HEADQUARTERS ARMY OF THE POTOMAC.

"Nov. 25th, 1864, Friday.

* * * * * * *

"Here is Papa seated in Gen. Collis' tent, who is in command of this Brigade, a very nice fire blazing in front of him, the band of the Zouaves playing airs from Trovatore, and playing them very well too—Not very far are the enemy's pickets and now and then they amuse themselves by firing shells and bombs just to keep our troops on the alert. You may fancy that it is not very quiet here, when the cars pass by ramparts thrown up to keep them from being struck by the shells, and as we came along one set of our batteries is called Fort Hell and the other Fort Damnation. The Southern sharpshooters are so clever, that if you put your hand up over the fortification you get a bullet through it in an instant. The men in the pickets sometimes for fun, stick a cap on a bayonet, put it up and down as quick as possible, but it does not escape a bullet hole in it. But as you see I am getting ahead of my story.—On Tuesday as I wrote to your Mama, I went to Miss Agnes Robinson's wedding to Capt. Charles Chauncey. The wedding went off very well. At Mr. Robinson's request I took up Mrs. Judge Cadwalader. Mrs. W. Camac asked after you all and says you must not forget your old playmate Willie. I left quite early and on going

back to the hotel met Emily and Mary Cadwalader, who asked me up to Trenton to dine on Thanksgiving day, which I declined, having made up my mind to accept a 'Pass' which Mr. Dana, Adjutant Secretary of War, had sent me to visit the Army of the Potomac. I saw Frank Barton. He and Mr. Sam Shober were also going down the Potomac by invitation from Gen. Gibbon. So we arranged to meet in Washington on Thursday at 12. Next day I saw your Uncle Edwin, who talked a good deal about you both. I then went on to Baltimore by the 12 o'clock train—reached there at 4 P. M., went to your Aunt Virginia's, found your cousin Bettie much better, her knee not so stiff. As I wanted to see Mr. Preston Smith, who had sent me an invitation to his box at the opera and sent his son for me, I went there and heard part of Faust exceedingly well sung. I arranged some matter with Mr. Smith. Next day early train to Washington, met Barton and Shober and took the *Thomas Collyer*, a very fast steamer and went down to Fortress Monroe and from there by the James River to City Point, where are Gen. Grant's headquarters. There were a number of nice officers on board and I had a pleasant time. I was invited by the Provost Marshall to his rooms where I found a party of 'stumps,' that is, every officer there has lost a leg or an arm—all hastening back to their comrades as a battle is now expected almost hourly. I hope it will take place while I am here—It must be a magnificent spectacle, two or three hundred thousand men in battle array. Westover and other nice places along the river are quite changed, tents swarm all along the shores and around the houses. The Carters are now living very quietly at Shirley, unmolested by our troops. At

City Point, I fell in with Gen. Collis, or rather he found out I was there and came after me and brought me to his headquarters where I now write. Camp life is a thing very different from any scenes through which I have passed. I have been among the Indians and roughed there much harder than here in one way, but the exposure here is of a different sort—to a civilian like myself, who is not in danger unless he uselessly goes into it or lets himself be run over by an orderly or something of that sort; there is merely a little more cold, a little less good cheer, and sleeping in a tent under a blanket, instead of a roof and in a bed.—This evening, after the music, Gen. Collis took me over to Gen. Meade's. He lives in a tent, plainly enough as you may imagine. He was very gracious, apologized for not being at home to-morrow, but hoped to see me on Sunday, if I could stay over. It was a gay sight to see the fires of the guardhouses and in the tents all through this part of the encampment. It looked so cheerful that one could hardly suppose that two vast hostile armies are here, ready like two tigers to spring on each other, and with danger so around, that Gen. Meade, as well as other officers, cautioned me very earnestly not to get shot. Drums are beating as I now write, near eleven o'clock at night, and it may be that something is going on, though it is hardly possible that any great move can be made under a week, as the ground is too much cut up by the late rains. Still there is no certainty, and I hope to have the pleasure of writing to you that the last great battle of the war has been fought and gained. It will be a frightful struggle when it does come off.

"When we passed Fortress Monroe I got off for an

hour. It was a glorious sunrise and our boat took us right by our great Armada, one hundred and sixty-three vessels in all. The *Ironsides*, and many other splendid vessels, Monitors and all other kinds,—among others, the *Florida*, about which so much fuss is now being made, was equipped and ready to sail. The *Atlanta* which Commodore Rogers captured in such a brilliant fashion at Mobile, was also ready, and a formidable craft she is. Admirals Porter and Farragut are to command. Both of them brave, gallant and experienced officers. General Sherman, it is now thought, will certainly take Savannah or Charleston, and Farragut will probably co-operate with him.

"General Grant's line of battle extends over thirty-five miles. It lies something in this fashion, and if you will take the atlas you will see on the map of Virginia something of the geography and study it out against I get back. You will realize how close the lines of General Lee are when I tell you that they talked to one another and even agree not to shoot and exchanged papers and so on. But I must close.

* * * * * * *

"Ever your affectionate

"FATHER."

Towards the close of the Civil War, the temper of the American people against England was thoroughly roused, and a hostile demonstration at Washington would have met with a hearty response throughout the country. The situation was not encouraging for a peaceful settlement. The English Government throughout had assumed an attitude such as to preclude, apparently, all hope of an adjustment.

THOMAS BALCH.

1821–1877.

In 1864, Thomas Balch, who was present at Cherbourg during the fight between the *Kearsarge* and the *Alabama* (June 19th, 1864),[175] proposed—

---

[175] On Thursday, June 30th, 1864, some of the American colony in Paris gave a dinner, at short notice, to Captain Winslow, at Phillippe's on the Rue Montorgueil, at that time the leading restaurant of Paris. Besides Captain Winslow and a few of his officers, there were present: Mr. Dayton, the American Minister to France, John Bigelow, the American Consul at Paris, Thomas Balch, Mr. Beckwith, John Camac, Mr. Chadwick, G. H. Coster, William L. Dayton, Jr., W. E. Johnston, Mr. Jones, Mr. Langdon, V. F. Loubat, John Monroe, Mr. Pennington, John Reubell, George T. Richards, Joseph Swift, Stewart Thorndike, J. J. Vanderkemp and others.

The dinner that was served to, as one of the participants put it, "Our Hero of the *Kearsarge*," was as follows:—

MENU.

Potage à la Bisque et Consommé Quenelles et Laitues.

Relevé.

Turbot deux sauces. Filets Orly sauce tomates.

Jambon d'Yorck aux épinards.

Entrées.

Filet de Boeuf à la jardinière. Poulardes braisées truffées.

Côtelettes d'agneau Maintenon fin.

Salade à la russe. Mayonnaise de homard.

Punch à la Polonaise.

Rôt.

Dindonneau nouveau. Canetons à la rouennaise.

Entremets.

Haricots flageollets maitre d'hotel. Pois à la française.

Croutes à la parisienne et aux ananas.

Macédoine de fruits glacés.

Dessert.

Mr. Dayton's letter accepting the invitation of the committee was as follows:—

"THURSDAY, A. M.,
"6 Rue de Presbourg.

"MY DEAR SIR:—It will give me, as well as my son, much pleasure to join you at dinner at Phillippe's this (Thursday) evening at six o'clock.

"Very truly yours,
"WILLIAM L. DAYTON.

"Thos. Balch, Esq.,
"48 Av : Gabriel."

after mature reflection and looking up the works of Grotius, the Duc de Sully, Castel de Saint-Pierre, Leibniz, Bentham, Kant and many other writers and numerous precedents—Thomas Balch proposed to various continental jurists, that the differences between the United States and England arising out of the cruise of the *Alabama* and kindred causes, should be argued before an International Court of Arbitration. In November, 1864, Mr. Balch, during a visit home, urged upon some of his friends, among them General Nathaniel P. Banks, the submission of the Anglo-American differences to such a court.[176] General Banks requested Mr. Balch to see President Lincoln, and arranged an interview. The President questioned Mr. Balch, then lately returned from Europe, largely about trans-Atlantic affairs. The President ridiculed the Mexican Empire and said that he considered it "a pasteboard concern on which we won't waste a man nor a dollar. It will soon tumble to pieces and, may be, bring the other down with it." To Mr. Balch's suggestion that the difficulties with England should be argued before a Court of Arbi-

[176] *International Courts of Arbitration*, by Thomas Balch, 1874. Reprinted at Philadelphia, 1899. Henry T. Coates and Co., page 9, note 6.

The Alabama Arbitration, by Thomas Willing Balch, Philadelphia, Allen, Lane and Scott, 1900, *passim*.

General Nathaniel P. Banks, who was elected Governor of Massachusetts in 1857, 1858 and 1859, served three years in the Civil War; in 1864 he was elected to Congress, and except that he failed of re-election in 1872, continued to serve in the lower House until 1877. For a number of years he was chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations.

tration, the President said that he thought it might be possible in the future, that it was "a very amiable idea, but not possible just now, as the millennium is still a long way off." But he added: "There is no possible risk of a quarrel with England, as we have enough on our hands. One quarrel is enough for a nation or a man at a time." As to the proposed Court of Arbitration he said: "Start your idea. It may make its way in time, as it is a good one." On arriving in London, on Christmas Day, 1864, Mr. Balch spoke of it to several friends, but found no one except Richard Cobden,[177] to treat it other than as the conceit of a well-meaning enthusiast.

---

[177] At the beginning of January, 1865, Richard Cobden wrote to Mr. Balch:—

"MIDHURST, 3d January, 1865.

"MY DEAR MR. BALCH:—I was very sorry to miss the opportunity of seeing you in London. There are very many topics on which I should have liked to have talked with you. * * * I think it depends entirely on the discretion of your own authorities at Washington to remain at peace with all the world until your civil war is ended. I do not say that you have not grievances; but one quarrel at a time, as Mr. Lincoln says, is enough for a nation or an individual. With the British Government I do not think, on the whole, you have as much to be angry about as to be grateful for what it has refused to do in conjunction with France and other powers. Against *individual* British shipbuilders and capitalists I admit you have very just grounds of grievance and I have said as much publically. The French Government has no doubt given you just ground of complaint by their occupation of Mexico. But I don't think your Congress shows much wisdom in trying to push Mr. Lincoln into hostilities on that subject at present, and I hope he will give the 'House' a hint that they may find full employment in domestic affairs, particularly in their finances, for the present. The Canadian affair will be peaceably arranged. * * *

"Very truly yours,

"R. COBDEN."

Finally, Mr. Balch made his plan public in an open letter. More than one editor refused to publish it. But Horace Greeley, who feared no unpopularity where a cause was entitled, as he thought, to a hearing, gave it a place in the columns of the *New York Tribune*, May 13th, 1865.[178] The letter was addressed to the able and conscientious correspondent of that journal at Paris, Mr. W. H. Huntington, and was as follows:—

Here is an extract from another letter of Richard Cobden to Mr. Balch:—

"MIDHURST, 17th Feb., 1865.

* * * * * * * *

"There never was a more absurd canard than that invented by the Southern sympathizers—that England and France contemplated an intervention. And there is almost as great absurdity in the programme which the same party has cut out for you when the war ends—viz., that you are to begin a war with France or England or all the world. Now, I have a very different work in store for you. When the war ceases, you will be like two line-of-battle ships after a desperate struggle; all hands will be required to clear the wreck, repair damages in hull and rigging, look after the wounded and bury the dead. There will be great suffering among all classes before you return to a normal state of things. You have been in a saturnalia of greenbacks and Government expenditure, which may be likened to the pleasant excitement of alcohol. But peace will be the headache after the debauch, with the unpleasant tavern reckoning."

Some of the letters that passed between Lord Palmerston and Lord John Russell upon the question of intervention show that they thought of joining Napoleon the Third against the Union.

The *New York Tribune*, April 21st, 1865, page 8. *International Courts of Arbitration*, by Thomas Balch. Edition of 1899, page 18, note 14.

[178] This letter will be found in the *New York Tribune* of May 13th, 1865, on the fourth page, in the upper right hand corner. The *Tribune* of that date can be found in the New York Public Library (Astor, Lenox and Tilden Foundations), the Library Company of Philadelphia, a number of other American libraries, and in the British Museum.

"ENGLAND AND THE UNITED STATES:

"A letter from Thomas Balch.

"PARIS, March 31st, 1865.

"MY DEAR SIR,—You asked me to put in writing the observations which I made to you yesterday touching the outstanding questions between England and the United States. I should be sorry to make you read all that you so kindly listened to. It would be to tax you rather too severely. But the current of my remarks was to this effect:

"I. That both England and the United States preferred claims which, if not judiciously managed, might and perhaps would lead to war.

"II. That the American claims were chiefly the depredations of the *Alabama*, whilst it seemed from the tenor of Mr. Layard's recent speech, that the British claims were also such as to rest upon questions of law. Neither set of claims was strictly national; they were rather those of individuals, merchants, shipowners, and others.

"III. That as to such claims, war was a barbarous manner of enforcing them; that the most successful war would after all be a most expensive and unsatisfactory process of litigation; and that the civilized and Christian way of ascertaining their validity and extent should be by arbitration.

"IV. That the best manner of composing such a Court of Arbitration would be, that each party should select some competent jurist, those two to select an umpire. The claims to be presented, proved and argued before this Court, whose decisions should be final and without appeal.

"V. That such a proposition, proceeding from our Government, would, without doubt, receive the countenance and support of all intelligent Englishmen. It is true that some of the speeches recently made in Parliament about us and Canada are of a nature to discourage such expectations. On the other hand, it must be borne in mind that these gentlemen form a class apart; that it is their political faith to believe and say unseemly things of Republican institutions, of the men, habits of life, and principles of action developed under them. But it was long ago that the wisest of men gave us the measure of such people, and the experience of mankind has confirmed his judgment.

"VI. Such a proposition from our Government would at once quiet all the foolish alarms which have, or appear to have, taken possession of so many persons in England. It would also uphold and strengthen all the advocates of progress. It would give greater force to their arguments in favor of just reforms and liberty; and this not only in Great Britain, but throughout Europe. The abandonment of the old system of arbitration by a reference to a Sovereign, more or less unfit from the very nature of his position, and the introduction of a tribunal, almost republican in its character, whose decisions would have a weight as precedents, an authority heretofore unknown as expositions of international law, would be no trifling events in the march of Democratic Freedom.

"VII. Such a proposition would also be in accord with our traditional policy of peace and goodwill towards men.

"The most serious objection that has been urged, so far as I have heard, against such a Court of Arbitration, is the difficulty of finding gentlemen not already biased by their feelings or in some way committed in their opinions.

"This objection applies, however, in a measure, to all human tribunals; it would apply to arbitration by a sovereign, and would leave us no solution other than the dread arbitrament of war. For myself, I cannot believe that there are not to be had in England and America gentlemen of the requisite learning, experience, and impartiality for a position so dignified and useful. At all events, there are many eminent men in Europe in every way qualified for this high duty. I have in my mind's eye a Swiss publicist, who, after having filled the most responsible stations at home, is now worthily representing his people in their most important diplomatic post.[179] The decisions rendered by him and gentlemen like him would be such as two great and free nations could accept with satisfaction. I dare say he has friendly feelings towards the Republic, but he cannot be wanting in like sentiments for the old Champion of Liberty. The preferences of such enlightened statesmen could not possibly be of a character to influence their judgments, and the parties most interested might well be content to abide their award.

"Believe me, my dear sir, yours sincerely,

"THOMAS BALCH."[180]

---

[179] This referred to that most worthy, high-minded gentleman, Dr. Kern, formerly President of the Federal Council, of Switzerland, but then Minister to France. He was born at Berlingens in 1808, and was chosen President of the Federal Council in 1850.

[180] In 1874, Professor James Lorimer, the Regius Professor of Public Law and of the Law of Nations in the University of Edin-

The publication of this letter proved that the proposition was not popular at that time in the United States. Writing seven years later of this event Mr. Balch said: "At home I was met in a less

---

burgh, wrote to Mr. Balch a letter concerning International Arbitration, in which he said:—

"Considering the interest which is everywhere taken in International Arbitration at present, and more especially with a view to the discussion that will take place at the meeting of the International Institute at Geneva in October, I think it very desirable that you should republish the letter which you addressed to the '*New York Tribune*' in 1865, adding to it such suggestions as your observation of subsequent events may enable you to offer.

"I do not know to what extent that letter, or anything else you said or did, may have led to the negotiation of the Treaty of Washington, by which the threatened war between our countries is believed by many to have been averted; but certain it is, that the letter was a very remarkable anticipation of the treaty which was negotiated six years afterward. The tribunal which you suggested almost exactly corresponded to that appointed under Article XII. of the Treaty, and even the great tribunal which sat at Geneva under Article I. was only a fuller realization of your original conception, by a larger infusion of the neutral element than you had contemplated, into the Court. In this respect it certainly was an improvement. But for the presence of the neutral judges it is doubtful if the work would have been brought to a successful issue, and I think it very worthy of consideration whether, on all future occasions, the Commissioners ought not to be appointed exclusively from neutrals."

See the *New York Tribune*, April 11th, 1874. *International Courts of Arbitration* by Thomas Balch, 1874. Reprinted at Philadelphia, 1899, Henry T. Coates and Co., page 28.

In the above letter Professor Lorimer points out how closely Mr. Balch's suggestion was followed in the Treaty of Washington, as may be seen by a comparison of the letter printed in the *Tribune* on May 13th, 1865, and Articles XII. and I. of the treaty.

In Article XII. of the Treaty of Washington (1871), after a statement of some matters other than the *Alabama* claims that should be referred for settlement to three Commissioners, provision was made for the appointment of the Commissioners in the following manner: "One Commissioner shall be named by the President of the United States, one by Her Britannic Majesty, and a third by the President of the United States and Her Britannic Majesty conjointly; and in case the third Commissioner shall not have been so named

satisfactory manner. The Civil War was near its end, and the passions aroused by it were at their highest. I received more than one angry rebuff, and sometimes the contempt which the idea ex-

---

within a period of three months from the date of the exchange of the ratification of this treaty, then the third Commissioner shall be named by the Representative at Washington of His Majesty the King of Spain. In case of the death, absence, or incapacity of any Commissioner, or in the event of any Commissioner omitting or ceasing to act, the vacancy shall be filled in the manner hereinbefore provided for making the original appointment; the period of three months in case of such substitution being calculated from the date of the happening of the vacancy." *Treaties and Conventions concluded between the United States of America and other Powers since July 4th, 1776.* Department of State. Washington: Government Printing Office, 1889, page 484.

In Article I., the Court of Arbitration to consist of five Arbitrators to try the "*Alabama* Claims" was provided for as follows:—

"One [Arbitrator] shall be named by the President of the United States; one shall be named by Her Britannic Majesty; His Majesty the King of Italy shall be requested to name one; the President of the Swiss Confederation shall be requested to name one; and His Majesty the Emperor of Brazil shall be requested to name one.

"In case of the death, absence, or incapacity to serve of any or either of the said Arbitrators, or, in the event of either of the said Arbitrators omitting or declining or ceasing to act as such, the President of the United States, or Her Britannic Majesty, or His Majesty the King of Italy, or the President of the Swiss Confederation, or His Majesty the Emperor of Brazil, as the case may be, may forthwith name another person to act as Arbitrator in the place and stead of the Arbitrator originally named by such head of a State.

"And in the event of the refusal or omission for two months after receipt of the request from either of the high contracting parties of His Majesty the King of Italy, or the President of the Swiss Confederation, or His Majesty the Emperor of Brazil, to name an Arbitrator either to fill the original appointment or in the place of one who may have died, be absent, or incapacitated, or who may omit, decline or from any cause cease to act as such Arbitrator, His Majesty the King of Sweden and Norway shall be requested to name one or more persons, as the case may be, to act as such Arbitrator or Arbitrators." *Treaties and Conventions concluded between the United States of America and other Powers since July 4th, 1776.* Department of State. Washington: Government Printing Office, 1889, page 479.

cited was not always civil. Some good people went so far as to say that I had lived so long abroad that I had become 'a ——— Britisher.' Not encouraging for my idea of a mild-mannered way of cutting the knot of difficult national questions." Still Mr. Balch did not despair, and continued to work among his friends and acquaintances, both at home and abroad, and soon he found in James Lorimer, of the University of Edinburgh, and Prévost-Paradol, of *l'Académie Française*, two powerful helpers.

Mr. George H. Yeaman, United States Minister at Copenhagen, sent to Mr. Balch the following letter:—

"LEGATION OF THE UNITED STATES,
"COPENHAGEN, 26 March, 1867.

"DEAR SIR:—I have read with much interest your letter of the 13 May, 1865, to the Editor of the New York *Tribune*, and now published in the 'Social Science' for this month, which you have kindly sent me. In that letter you propound what seems to you the best method of amicably settling the pending controversies between the United States and Great Britain.

"Omitting all discussion of the propriety and feasibility of now referring the matters in dispute to arbitration, the mode you advocate, I only desire to express my decided approbation of your suggestion as to the mode of selecting and organizing tribunals of arbitration, in cases where the powers interested agree to a reference. That the tribunal or arbiter shall not be the executive head of a government, but a small

number of jurists of acknowledged character and learning.

"I have never believed in the durability and efficacy of any of the schemes for an international tribunal to settle all disputes and prevent all wars. Whether it is well or unfortunate, it is quite clear that in the present stage of the development and practice of political science, there can be no reference but by agreement, and the agreement must be had in each case as it arises, and the tribunal or arbiter must be selected for the occasion.

"While this remains the only practical mode of securing the benefits of a reference, every sound reason is against the ordinary plan of selecting a crowned, or other executive head of a government, and sustains the plan of selecting a tribunal composed of those who make the understanding and the elucidation of law, in its largest sense as the science of justice, the study of their lives.

"It is no disparagement of those generally found at the heads of the executive governments of the civilized world, to say that they are not generally those best acquainted with jurisprudence; and that every government, of whatever form, nearly always contains within its limits, a number of jurists more learned in their profession and better qualified by their habits of thought to conduct such an investigation than the executive head of that government. Neither is it any impeachment of their probity or their desire to render a just judgment to say that executive rulers, are, from their position, more apt to be influenced by motives of policy, or of personal or political partiality, than a court of international jurists would be; while some, who might render real service in that capacity, would occasionally decline

to act on account of the delicate embarrassment in which any action might involve them. And those who consent to act, no doubt often refer the case, for investigation and advice, to a subject of their own selection, one unknown to the parties, at least not agreed upon by them; and though the award may come formally as from the crown, it is really the opinion of some person not embraced in the reference and who neither incurs blame nor makes reputation by his judgment. Thus the parties are put in the position of abiding by the award of one selected for them by another; they know not what influenced the selection, and however learned the advisor may be, the parties have not had the advantage of a consultation and comparison of views. These objections manifestly do not apply to the case of an umpire selected in advance by referees in view of the possibility of their own disagreement.

"Thus the advantages of learning, and of freedom from all improper influences are on the side of a select committee or board of jurists. From their breasts selfishness, jealousy, partiality and refined policy, as applied to the matter before them, are all excluded. They work out their conclusions in the light of usage, precedent, right reason, natural right, *science*. What of ambition they may have is constrained to be innocent and laudable, for it can only be gratified by building a reputation, which, in their vocation, can have no other foundation than justice and truth. The judgments of such tribunals would be sought for and recognized as the highest evidence of what the law is; and they would develop, polish, and make symmetrical the law of nations, as the judgment of Hardwick, Eldon, and Mansfield have done the law of England, and as the judg-

ments of Kent, Marshall and Story have done the law in the United States.

"I have been much impressed with your observation that this 'would be no trifling event in the march of Democratic Freedom.' It would accelerate and illustrate the progress of democratic freedom, a freedom that is far more secure against license than any scheme of personal government or irresponsible power can be, because it would be a tribute to the dominion of mind, intelligence, reason, science, over accident, force and tradition in the affairs of men. The struggle for that domination is the beginning, and its full consummation is the highest and fairest fruit of democracy. If that element in government has been the most rare and the least successful, it is because that while appearing to be the most simple, it is really the most difficult, and it is the most difficult because the conditions of its success are the highest and the least frequent among men.

"Very respectfully,

"Your obedient servant

"GEO. H. YEAMAN.

"*Thomas Balch, Esq., Paris.*"

He continued to urge this solution of the difficulty, until the negotiation of the treaty of Washington (1871) was an accomplished fact. In May, 1869, while at home for a few months, he pressed this idea upon Senator Sumner, and Secretary Fish and President Grant.

In 1868 he published a pamphlet on the *Fusil Roberts: exposé du système du Général Roberts: ex-*

traits des rapports officiels commandés par les gouvernements de la France et du Brésil.[181]

In the spring of 1869, he made a trip to Egypt :

I left Paris, Monday evening, February 8, 1869, at 7.15 P. M. by fast express train, which was very crowded. I was in a *coupé* with Monseigneur l'Archevèque d'Avignon who evidently *au fond du cœur* desires a war with Russia. He quitted us at Avignon. Arrived at Marseilles at 11.30. Breakfasted at the station very well, after which we drove a little in the new parts of the town.

Went on board *La Peluse*, a fine large vessel of 2100 tons. The Captain, Jauet, is an officer in the French Navy, lieutenant de vaisseau. Left at 5 P. M. precisely. Weather magnificent. Fair dinner, only nine at table; not many first class passengers. So far from being seasick I smoked three cigars before going to bed. I am as comfortable as possible, as my cabin is for six persons, while I am alone.

February 9th, 12.45 P. M. A most magnificent day. The ship has been running for some hours at 11.6 knots. We are passing through the Straits of Bonifaccio. Pyramid erected as a monument to mark the spot where a French frigate was lost in February 1855. There were 750 soldiers and 250 crew on board; not a soul saved.

Our party on board begins to make acquaintance. A young Scotchman of the Indian civil service, now on his way to Mauritius says "Docks, roadstead of Mauritius etc. very fine, but no commerce; kept up at expense of the British government." Passing through Strait noticed a stone exactly resembling a bear.

---

[181] Paris, Legras, Libraire-Éditeur, 27 Boulevard des Capucines, 1868.

4 P. M. We have gone safely through the Straits, which are very narrow in some parts. The coasts of Sardinia and Corsica are rugged and rocky, with sharp dangerous promontories jutting into the sea. Dangerous navigation, yet here it was that in spite of its peril Nelson delighted to shelter his fleet, watch for the French and pounce upon them when least expected.

Thursday, February 11. Weather warm, sun intense. But as air comes from south it is a little moist. At breakfast to-day the Captain said the flights of quail were exceedingly curious to witness. One troop will come from Egypt by way of Candia, another from Tunis by way of Sicily, another from Morocco by way of Spain. They fly from 24 to 28 hours without stopping, at an average rate of 20 miles an hour, and when they reach the coast they are almost dead with fatigue and starvation. They are caught in great quantities in nets and fattened for the market. Once landed they spread all along the coast and into the interior. Their flight to Africa is in the fall and to Europe in the spring. The broods hatched in Africa, being untouched by sportsmen, are greater in number than those going from Europe.

He also mentioned a curious incident that happened to him a few weeks ago. A flight of swallows was seen in the air. The three leaders stopped on his ship and in ten minutes more the side and ropes in fact every spot where a bird could sit was black with the birds. There were tens of thousands. He gave orders not to disturb them; next morning early the leaders rose into the air, twittered and called for a minute or two, issued orders in fact, and in five minutes more not a bird was left on the ship; all were on the wing southward to Africa.

At 2.30, sighted Stromboli; then passed through the Lipari Archipelago and left Stromboli smoking and looking like an old giant. At night the waters are always lit up by these fires. Reached Messina about 8 o'clock. It was very gay to look at from the boat. The Straits are very narrow—a rifle shot from side to side. Boats filled with passengers came along side. As soon as the boatmen had got rid of the passengers and their luggage, the boatmen lit up their boats and took out lots of coral necklaces, bracelets etc., but the prices were so exceedingly small that I concluded they could not possibly be genuine. But their cries and the fashion in which they chaffed one another, the lights, the boats rocking on the swells of the Straits, made the scene most picturesque.

Friday morning. Three young Englishmen from Montreal came aboard at Messina. They say my brother (the Rev. L. P. W. Balch) has the respect and esteem of everybody in Montreal, and that he is called upon to be foremost in all important enterprises and has done a great and noble work in paying off the debt of the Cathedral.

Monday, February 15. We arrived in time to see the Pharos last night. The Pharos founded by Ptolemy, the first of the kind ever built. The night was magnificent, moon bright. There was a dense fog this morning, so we could not enter the harbor until 1 o'clock, as there are many sunken rocks. The approach to the port was interesting. Numerous vessels of different nations, Egyptian warships, an English gun boat and many small boats and feluccas were about. The moment we anchored crowds of Arabs rushed on deck, but we had the government boat waiting for us and escaped much of the annoyance. We got our luggage through

the Custom House without any difficulty, and drove to Abbat's Hotel. Afterwards I drove to Cleopatra's Needle, Pompey's Pillar, the Vice-Roy's Garden and the Canal, which is a fashionable drive.

Tuesday morning, Alexandria. Pini Bey *fils* sent his *coupé* for me and then drove me to the arsenal. We saw two regiments of soldiers drilling and one battalion firing by platoons; they made some good targets. Stopped at the Bourse coming back and it was curious to see people of all nations and colors buying and selling, cotton, corn, stocks, etc. In the afternoon he took me to see his father's palace, which was a present from the late Vice-Roy. It resembles a palace in Germany or Holland and has a pretty garden.

It is quite impossible to convey one's first impression of Egypt. The odd mixture of human beings of all nations and colors; the variety of costumes; the long lines of dromedaries, the "no end" of dogs and donkeys, altogether one feels for a day or two, at least, as if one were taking part in some comedy on an immense scale, and wondering when the curtain will drop and the thing come to an end. Alexandria is being rapidly Europeanized, and reminds me, with its long rows of streets unpaved but flanked by handsome houses, of Chicago when I was there in 1849, and gives me the impression that there is the same brilliant future, and why not, since like Chicago, cotton and corn are sent from her port to all the world. We had a capital dragoman from hotel; Henry Busutil.

Wednesday, February 17. We left at 8 o'clock; fine day, not hot. Went by Lake Mereotis; large but shallow. First impressions of Arab villages very curious. Vast numbers of wild duck, teal, snipes, etc.,

on lakes and ponds. Wheat growing luxuriantly like a green sea. At 9.30 A. M. arrived at Damanur: here Delta begins and Nile ends. Crossed the Nile at Kafar-zeyat by a splendid bridge. The country swarms with population. Green turbans, which indicates that the wearer has been to Mecca, are to be seen occasionally. All along the banks of the new Canal are swarms of little tents, each of which is alive with children. Passed a string of twenty-seven camels, each carrying two bales of cotton, slung like saddle bags. Near Gaylouh (?) had our first view of the pyramids forty miles off.

Arrived at Cairo at 12.30. His Excellency, Pini Bey minister etc., and his son came to the station to meet us, and took us to Sheppeard's Hotel in his carriage, giving me the place of honor. The young man is extremely handsome.

This afternoon met Mr. Henry M. Stanley of the New York *Herald*, who had been its correspondent during the Civil War, and afterwards made quite a name by his zeal and cleverness as its correspondent at Abyssinia. He is a short, thick set, sturdy young man of twenty-eight to thirty. He was often cited in the English papers for dispatches from Abyssinia several days ahead of Lord Napier's telegram. He then went to Greece and Crete and to Spain during the Revolution. He was then sent to Aden *en route* to Zanzibar to meet Dr. Livingstone, but at Aden met a British ship returning with news that there was no chance of Livingstone coming back that way. Pursuant to orders he came to Cairo to organize an expedition to meet Livingstone on the Nile, but here met Dr. Kirk's (map?) and now returns to New York via Paris.

Thursday, February 18. Tasted butter for the first

time since I left Paris. It looked exactly like hogs' lard, but did not taste badly. Set off at 8 in a jaunty carriage. Crossed a bridge where the draw was open, but for a roupee the captain had it shut up, leaving all the boats to wait until I had crossed. Very pleasant drive through a most fertile country. The Vice-Roy has built or is building four new palaces on that side of the river; the railway to Thebes is also on that side and will be open next year, it is thought.

The pyramids, the desert, the sphynx have been so often and well described and one has seen so many engravings of them that all that is left to the modern traveller is to note his own special sensations. Beyond a doubt nothing of human work produces so nearly the sensation of awe such as that with which we regard the manifestations of God's great power as these wonderful monuments which have existed for so many generations. The advances of the desert are heaping piles of sand upon the sphynx, but it is impossible to express the singular emotion, sympathy I may say, which I felt when gazing at it. I have never seen anything, not even a great cyclone on the ocean, which has more strongly appealed to my feelings.

Friday, February 19. This evening I was presented to the Vice-Roy, after the first act of the theatre. A small, rotund man of fifty, or thereabouts, with keen bright eyes. We exchanged a few words. He was very civil, and told me that if my visit could be made more pleasant by orders from him to inform him.

Saturday, February 20. To Mosque of Mehemet Ali by way of Bazaars. Exceedingly curious and industrious population. To the Citadel. At the Mosque the floors were covered with thick carpet. Three thou-

sand lights. Priests were reading the Koran about the tomb of Mehemet Ali; had to put slippers over my shoes. Beautiful fountain in the centre of sacred court, where people wash head, hands and feet before entering mosque for prayers. Marble courtyard with alabaster pillars; thence to Joseph's well. Returning saw Arab letter writer and indicted letter to children. Back to Arab bazaars, visiting Mosque of Hassan and others *en route*, very old; not over clean in corridors, etc. In the afternoon to Choubra palace of Halim Pasha; younger son of Mehemet Ali; a hundred and ninety acres; 2 palaces for his wives; 25 in each says Achmed. If he were to put them all together they would certainly quarrel. Beautiful palms surrounded by colonnades of marble. Went into various apartments; amongst others the room in which the great Mehemet Ali breathed his last.

Sunday, February 21. Up early and down to museum at Boulak, thence to Embebah, thence to palace of Hassan Pasha to see the Nilometer. The palace is at the end of the island and built on sea wall. Afterwards to old Cairo. Saw a Coptic church and down in vault, the place where the Virgin Mary lodged during the flight into Egypt. Then to the Mosque of Sultan Amron, which must have been magnificent. It was much destroyed by a Pasha who took 300 columns of marble for his palace. Past the Mosque of Melech Adhel *en route*, and the palace of Mustaffa, much pulled down. Then to another old Coptic church where paintings were very curious. In the afternoon drove out to see obelisk at Heleopolis and then to Joseph's sycamore, where I saw one of the Vice-Roy's sons, good looking, but rather scared sort of expression. Quite a number

of visitors of all sorts including three very fat Greeks. In the evening to the circus. The Vice-Roy was there, for which reason no programme was printed or announced. There was a trapeze performance by two brothers, which was so daring and dangerous that the audience fairly screamed with excitement.

Monday, February 22. Received a letter from Mr. Vernon "Pour introduire Monsieur Thomas Balch, qui se rend dans l'Isthme pour visiter la ligne des travaux. Veuilez, je vous prie, lui donner toutes facilités pour la visite qu'il se propose de faire, ainsi que tous les renseignements qu'il vous demandera sur la marche, la conduite et les détails de nos travaux." Left at 9.30. Breakfast at Zaggazig. I was alone in a car with a commercial agent of the Messageries Impériales. He described the mode of doing things in Egypt most humorously. The revenues of Egypt are about $200,000,000, of which nearly, or quite one-half is spent in *gas-pillage*. More than 2000 heads of cattle pass daily by Suez. The revenue is 2000 piastres daily. The government gets 400 piastres a month. The rest is a pure robbery. The magnificent establishment of Alexandria for railways, etc., has the most complete collection of tools and machinery possible, but nothing which will work.

At Ismailiah M. de Lesseps and a large party got in, among others the engineer of the Pen. and Or. Co., Mr. Stone. He was very polite and after finding out who I was he took my letter to M. de Lesseps in the adjoining compartment. On getting to Suez, M. de Lesseps asked for Mr. Balch in a clear loud tone. He took my hand in both of his and invited me to go with him to-morrow. To P. and O. Hotel where M. de Lesseps

ordered room for me, number 33. Queer dinner; variety of things all served helter-skelter by Hindoos. We had rather a jolly crowd however. Three years ago the population was not quite 3000, now it is upwards of 30,000. Three years ago all the water was brought from the Nile in skins on the backs of camels and sold for half a franc a bottle.

Tuesday, February 23. Up at 5.30. Found M. de Lesseps down stairs. He was exceedingly kind. We breakfasted at Chalouff very well and mounted some on horses, some on donkeys, and a most romantic and picturesque calvalcade we made streaming along the sides of the canal, twenty or more Arab boys dressed in white with gay scarfs leading. The rest followed. Arrived late at Ismailiah.

Wednesday, February 24. Received the following general letter of introduction from M. de Lesseps:—

"COMPAGNIE UNIVERSELLE DU CANAL
"MARITIME DE SUEZ.

"DIRECTION GÉNÉRALE DES TRAVAUX.

"NOTE.

SUEZ, le 24 février 1869.

"Mr. Balch, citoyen des États-Unis d'Amérique est spécialement recommandé sur toute la ligne de travaux.

"Les moyens de transport et l'hospitalité lui seront fournis par les agents de la compagnie.

"Mr. l'agent supérieur directeur gal. des travaux, Mrs. les ingénieurs de division et chefs des services voudront bien se mettre à sa disposition.

"Le Président

"FERD. DE LESSEPS."

Across the sand to El Guize (?), thence to Shally and V. R. (?), built by Said Pasha just before he died and round by Lake Timsah to the water works. At El Guiez there is a little town built because this was the high point between the two seas. It is curious to note here at Ismailiah the fraternity and good feeling of the employees. No castes nor beaurocracy. Also that the people who have built Ismailiah come to love the desert as the sailor does the sea. A French gentleman, Mr. Voisin, told me he found three months too long at Paris and pined for the sun.

Thursday, February 25. Left at 6.30 A. M. in a little steamer; glorious sunrise. Crossed Lake Timsah, which three years ago did not contain a drop of water and now is a great salt lake. Mr. Nicholais agent of Lloyd steamers, described the canal six years ago as a "petite rigole maritime." Day bright but cool. Breakfasted at Tamtarah, where Moses passed with children of Israel. Tamtarah means bridge or passage. Reached Port Said at 2.30. Lloyd's Austrian agent met me and we went to the Phare, which we mounted and where we had a view of the town and the Port. Then in a barque to the breakwater; walked along it; it is made of artificial stone 122,000 each weighing 20 tons. The wind outside was so strong that the waves dashed clear over the breakwater. Left Port Said at 9.30 P. M. Just now there is great trouble here about the attack by certain desperado Greeks on Dr. F. of the French Navy. He was stabbed in several places and beaten over the head last night and his life is despaired of.

Friday, February 26. Reached Cairo at 5.30 P. M.

Saturday, February 27. Visit to the Kalipha's Tombs. Of the tomb of the Mameluques my dragoman Achmed

said "When Mohammed killed them he bring all de bones and de meat and bury him all up together—nobody know who he be."

Sunday, February 28. Left at 8 A. M. by train at Imbibah for [name illegible]. Thence to catacomb by donkey and pyramids of Sakarah. In the train met a Frenchman who is director of the works for building bridges for the upper Egyptian Railway. He said the *gaspillage* here exceeds belief. He has a corvee of 4000 men. The Colonel of Cavalry and the prefect keep back 1000 and charge for them all the same. When he complained they laughed and told him he did not know the ways of the country. They divided the sum paid by the Vice Roy for the labor of these men between themselves. After visiting the very curious village of [name illegible], I went on to Memphis statue of Chereostrees and to the pyramids. My donkey did his best to fall down as he was badly shod. Showers of rain. The Frenchman sought shelter at the house of Mr. Mariette. I kept on to the catacombs where are the tombs of the Athesiest or sacred bulls; went through all the galleries; one tomb in granite polished like glass; twenty-four in all. Some have been taken away. There are some beautifully preserved specimens of columns, figures, sculptures, etc. Some of the female figures have been disfigured. Then called on Mr. Mariette, who is very enthusiastic about Egyptian civilization. After a little chat he sent an aid to show me the tomb of a king, which has just been opened and never before shown. The pictures and sculptures were as fresh as if the painter were still at work.

The desert gives me a sense of awe—for it is composed of ruins crumbled into dust of a great city whose palaces

have never been equalled, but whose history is lost in time.

At the station saw a young pretty Arab girl who joked with the men, old and young about her, like the best of Christians.

Thursday, March 4. Went to a ball at the Vice-Roy's. It was a most gay sight; grounds were splendidly lighted up, grottos, kiosques, etc. Palace very pretty; great crowd, very few ladies. The Vice-Roy received in the room alongside the grand hall. He was very civil to me; pretty fair supper. De Lesseps, Sir John Lawrence, the Duke of Sutherland and lots of English were there; Voisin Bey, in fact all the canal was there; Alexandria in general came out in great force. Left at 2.

Monday, March 8. Left at 8 A. M.; reached Alexandria at 12 o'clock.

Tuesday, March 9. Sailed to-day; wind fair, sea calm, but poor ship.

Friday, March 12. Approaching Messina we saw Etna for awhile, covered with snow, out of which streamed a column of smoke. We arrived at Messina 5.30 P. M., after a hurried dinner we took the boat and went ashore. Visited Cathedral, which is half eastern in its structure, with beautiful columns of red granite. The *portail* curious for its sculptures. Took a boat and back to ship and chaffed the coral men who were just leaving.

Soon after we came to the coast of Calabria, wild and rugged. Made some rough sketches. Of a sudden, just as we were talking of the dismal character of the country, a railway train came in sight bound to Reggio. It seemed strangely different from the scene through which

it passed. Molitto seemed rather a large town and Reggio a prosperous one.

We quitted Messina at a few minutes before 8, and with rather a misty night after midnight saw a lurid spot in the sky which was Stromboli.

Sunday, March 14. Yesterday the *mistral* blew. I amused myself by telling all the stories of storm and shipwreck, or as a Frenchman expressed it this morning, I spread a veritable "panique" through the ship. We were, however, not without a certain danger, as at 10 o'clock some of the officers were for returning and going to Naples. Some one more decided than the rest, counselled delay until midnight when the wind went down. The morning is clear and bright. We lay off Monte Cristo for some time, and are now near Cape Corse.

Monday, March 15. Reached Marseilles and took train to Paris. It was very cold. The mountains and hills are covered with snow. There was a wind ahead so strong that we were eighteen miles behind time at Avignon.

At the end of June, 1870, Mr. Balch took his family from Paris to Spa for the summer, and soon after the Franco-German War broke out. He went to Paris in August for a few days and in September he paid a visit to Sedan. He spent the winter at Wiesbaden, and afterwards made a tour in Italy.

August 12, 1870, Friday. Left Spa and went to Bruxelles with H. G. Chadwick.

August 13. Left Bruxelles, 9 A. M. train with Chadwick. Day pleasant. No people in fields. Here and

there, solitary old woman or a child. Wheat left in rows; ploughs, harrows standing in fields. Factory chimneys not smoking; otherwise scarce a sign of war. Arrived Paris 5.30. Dined Cercle des Chemins de Fer. Sunday, 3 P. M., no news. Breakfasted at Cercle with Cornelis de Witt. He is not discouraged. He says there are four men in France especially detested by the Emperor, Bazaine Changarnier, Trochu, M [name illegible] and on these four men he now depends.

Thursday, September 22, 1870. Left Spa with Edwin, at 7.20 A. M. by railroad to Liège and thence to Libramont. Left Libramont in diligence at 5 P. M. Two farmers from Mons in diligence. Arrived Bouillon 8.30. Lodgings chez Toussaint, 26 rue du Moulin.

Friday, September 23. Whilst walking up the street at Bouillon a heavy large shutter fell between Edwin and myself; escape narrow, miraculously so. Left Bouillon at 7.15 A. M. in an open, rough trap, for battlefield and Sedan. Day bright, but windy. On the road, we met, from time to time, red cross people, ambulances, tourists, etc. At Belgian frontier, were huts of French farmers, escaping from Prussian exactions. At the first place we came to with signs of the battle, La Chapelle, there were graves of francs tireurs. Visited the Ambulance Hollandaise, a church filled with wounded. Thence to Givonne, where we saw marks of cannonade and many graves of horses. Here the Crown Prince of Saxony attacked. Thence to D'égines (?) whence the Bavarians shelled the French on the opposite heights, the shells passing clear over the town of Sedan. Edwin picked up a "giberne." Met a convoy of wounded Saxons,—gave them cigars. Thence to Dr. Frank's hospital, in the Château of Moncalle,

within a lovely park, just by Bazeills. He was very polite, took us to see two rooms of his patients, several severely wounded. He has several ambulances under his care. He walked to our carriage with us. Gave him some fruit and the two latest newspapers. Graves, with inscriptions, of dead officers and soldiers in park. Bazeills was a scene of desolation beyond description. Every house in village burnt to ashes. Some still smoking. Then to Balon: curious effects of shells. Soon after to the Meuse. Then to Sedan. Looked strange to see Prussian sentinels on ramparts at gates. Prussian soldiers and officers all through town. Drove to Hotel Europe. Wretched breakfast, exceptionally dear. "Lapins," which one gentleman said were cats, and beefsteaks which certainly tasted like some horsemeat which I went to eat once in Paris. Then bought some photographs. Then to Kron Asfeld (?) highest work at Sedan, now American Ambulance. Dr. Sims exceedingly polite. He was going to breakfast, and we regretted we had eaten, as he had genuine mutton chops and chickens. Ladies nursing there, one a Miss Pearson, ——— son of Lt., who received sword of Essex [Phrase in part illegible.] She has it now. Action of Phoebe and Essex, 1813. Dr. Sims showed us positions of armies, and Napoleon's headquarters. 3000 French killed, 13,000 wounded. Bavarians had 60,000 on going into action; lost 15,000; Prussian loss not heavy. The French batteries were on heights on one side of town. Prussian on the other. Bullets went over. Two French generals and many other officers killed there. Soldiers beat their guns to pieces. No command, no order. Dr. Sims had two men killed in front of hospital door. Three cannon balls cut holes into wall of room where they were operating. Several

killed just below. Dr. Sims saw men cut slices from horses killed by bombs and eat flesh raw. He says that for some days they all lived on horseflesh. Fare very decent now, but every one of his aids has been taken down sick. Much typhus in Sedan and neighborhood. Dr. Pratt and Dr. May joined us and we walked on ramparts. Sentinel informed us we must clear out as his orders were to fire. Day before yesterday one of the American doctors was fired at by sentinel, who just missed him. In Sedan, met Jack Chadwick in street. Mr. Robert had bought some chassepots and sabres. We did not, on account of difficulty of passing douanes. Carriage could not drive to Château where King and Emperor met, as the Governor had shut up three gates. Drove round fortifications, thence to see where cavalry was beaten back; stench horrible. Thence to visit heights where French were; fields all covered with torn knapsacks, gibernes, all sorts of proofs of slaughter. We picked up a box of chassepot cartridges intact. Lots of others loose on ground. In some places the ground was black with blood, and many new made graves of corpses just buried. Saw whole wagon loaded with knapsacks. Edwin picked up on French heights the knapsack of a Franc tireur, casque, etc. The American doctors said the Chassepot was better than the Zündnadel.

Drove back late in the evening to Bouillon, where we are lodged in a wretched little house, as we could not get in at Hotel de la Poste. Decent, civil, obliging people, who do their best to make us comfortable, but it was not to be done.

Saturday, 24. Visited Château de Bouillon, the *siège* of Godefrey de Bouillon. Subterranean passages, etc.

Left at 11.30 by diligence. Dined at Bertry. Thence to Neufchateau (?). Thence to Langlier. Thence by train to Luxembourg. Delayed at one place for two hours. Heard much rolling noise. Scolded guard and conductor, who said there was no answer from stations. Arrived Luxembourg 8.45 P. M. instead of 6.35 P. M. Hotel de l'Europe, good beds, wretched cuisine, exorbitantly dear.

25 September, Sunday. Luxembourg. Learned this morning that Bazaine had cut off three convoys and cut telegraph wires last night. This was the cause of our delay on the railroad and the noise we heard was the cannonade. Went to see fortifications, etc. in progress of demolition. As soon as they are torn down nice houses are put up, but it seems a pity that such marvellous works of military genius and human labor should be removed, not kept for future generations. Left Luxembourg 12.10, arrived Spa, 9.35. Nice country.

October 15, 1870. From Spa to Cologne.

October 16. To Koblenz. Hotel Anker. Head waiter told me Marie, Tom's nurse, was so furious about war she was ready to bite a German. Enormous number of soldiers at Köln. The same at Koblenz. 14th army corps going to Metz because Frederick Karl has lost so many men by dysentery and typhus. All suburbs of Köln bore proof to how Prussians were getting ready; trees cut down; new earthworks, some finished, some half finished, cannon mounted, cannon covered but ready for ramparts, etc. Went to camp at Koblenz where are the French prisoners.

October 18. Up the Rhine by Steamer *Manheim.* On to Wiesbaden. Hotel Rose.

October 19. Met General L'Hérillier this afternoon

at Kursaal. Very glad to see each other. He was slightly wounded but looks well.

October 22. A day or two ago there was a curious coincidence. As we were in the Kursaal listening to the last piece of music, "Am Schönen Rhein" we could not understand why cannon sounds were brought in to waltzing time. What was more remarkable was the extraordinary resemblance to real cannon. An officer sitting underneath the gallery laughed at the attempt to give an idea of a battle. On coming back from the theatre in the evening we had an explanation. General von Manstein, commanding the Ninth Corps d'armée was buried at the sound of the guns which we heard and mistook for part of the music. He arrived at Gravelotte and the first thing he saw was his only son killed. The shock was so great that he fell senseless and was brought back here, but only to die.

November 4, Friday. Edwin and myself walked over to Mainz. A lovely day. Went via Mosbach and then along the stockades and fortifications some ten English miles. Saw French troops coming by the hundred from Metz, fine healthy looking men. Saw also French soldiers, cavalry of the line, etc., working in fields, digging potatoes, piling wood for German peasants. Came back in railroad with a French General who had served under Bazaine and who was very friendly to him. He said Bazaine never once attempted to cut his way out. That he could have done so easily at any time up to the 25th of October. In the sortie no quarter was given, and even the wounded were bayonetted. Some eight hundred Prussians found in a wood where they had got by mistake were made prisoners. But all the rest on *both sides finished!*

In the spring of 1871 Mr. Balch made a tour of Italy.

February 18, 1871. Venice. Hotel Danieli. Have come south this month, by way of Stuttgart, Ulm, Augsburg, Munich, Insbruck, Bozen, Verona. At Verona saw the carnival. This is their highest feast day. All streets alive, thronged. Sacks of confetti thrown into our carriage. Saw Museum, Tomb of Juliette, amphitheatre, etc. Today visited in Venice, Church of St. Anastia, Cavalli tomb, Pelligrini tomb; Duomo, picture by Titian, tomb Scaligeri. Piazzi di Signori. Place du Marché. Colonne erected by Venetian Republic. Napoleon I. took lion off.

February 19. To San Giorgio, Santa Maria della Salute, Galleria della arti, Rialto, Piazza di San Marco. Received invitation to a ball to-morrow from the Nuova Societa Apollinea at the request of a member, Sigr. Murrarelli Verpariano.

February 20. Did some shopping. Then to Palace of Doges. Gondola to Arsenal. A pleasant young officer, Emilio Algranati, took us around. To Giardini Publici. Then to San Giorgio, Giudecca, Salute and Back at 11. Went to ball with El., who danced six times. Very pretty ball; nice rooms. Back at hotel at 3.30 A. M.

February 21. On to Padua. Left 4.50, arrived 6. Hotel Stella d'Oro; dear and bad.

February 22nd. Padua. Visited Church San Antonio. Young priest showed us about. Gorgeous; many interesting tombs, Contarini, Horace Bembo, Convetu (?) Pompeius. To Bologna in afternoon. Hotel Brun. Took carriage and drove to Campo Santo; first one and origin of others.

February 23. To Florence, Hotel Victoria; dear and disgusting.

February 25. Florence. Got rooms in a villa near Hotel Italie; very nice. Edwin and I went to Cascino and Zoological Gardens

February 26th. Sunday. Drove to Corso in afternoon. All world there in gala; King and suite.

March 2nd. Left Florence 10 A. M. with Elise and Edwin for Rome. Lunch at Foligno. Arrived Rome 8.30, Costanzi's Hotel.

March 3rd. Drove to Porta Pia. Thence to St. John Lateran. Santa Scala crowded with people going up. Thence to Forum Trajan. St. Peters. Capitol. Through statuary. Coliseum in evening by moonlight, magnificent.

Saturday. Up early. Left Costanzi at quarter before 9. Arrived at Naples 5.5. Pleasant Englishman and wife in car. Hotel de Russie. Sat next the Rush's at dinner. In the evening Vesuvius blazed nicely.

Sunday. Elise went to church; Edwin and I to museum. After lunch drove to San Martino and Castel Sant Elmo. Came back by Posilipo and ruins of [name illegible]. After dinner in Rush's parlor.

Monday. 9 A. M. Went to Pompeii in carriage; made thorough visit. Lunched at Sun (Sola) not bad nor dear. Back by Herculaneum. Elise went to bed with a headache.

Wednesday, 8 March. Left 8 A. M. with Rev. Mr. Garland, Dr. LeConte, Mr. Weld, Mr. Rogers, his wife and daughter, Lambert Palmer and Mr. Noyes of the *Juniata*, Edwin and Elise. Railway to Vietri. Carriage to Amalfi and back. Three small horses to each carriage.

Most lovely ride. Scenes most varied and charming at each turn of the road. Lunched at Amalfi. Thence back by same road to Salerno, 7 P. M. Looked bright at distance. Hotel Victoria, clean and comfortable.

March 9. Thursday. Up at six. Lovely morning. Confusion about breakfast, as about yesterday's dinner. Did not go to Cathedral built by Robert Guiscard. By train to Battipaglia. Carriages to Paestum. On way crossed river in most primitive boat. Here brigands stopped diligence from Eboli last week. Saw lady and gentleman on horseback. He had a revolver. She also, I think. They were followed by three servants mounted and armed. We were much impressed by the ruins. So perfect. Standing there after so many centuries when the city which they adorned had crumbled into dust. Lunched in temple of Neptune. Then drove back to Battipaglia. By rail to Naples. Reached 9 P. M. Our trip to Paestum was made more pleasant by Noyes and Palmer.

March 15th. By train to Rome: 1.05 to 9 P. M.

March 16th. Thursday. Went in a carriage to the Campagna to see the meet of fox hunt. Prince Humbert there. Did two or three churches.

March 17th. Friday. Rome. Went to Tilton's studio with Edwin. Good water sketches; Venice, Nile, Egypt, Paestum. Afterwards to St. John Lateran, and to museum, with things from catacombs, mosaics, etc.

While residing at Paris, Mr. Balch wrote *Les Français en Amérique pendant la Guerre de l'Indépendence des États-Unis, 1777-1783*, an account of the part that the French Military expedition under the orders of Count Rochambeau took in the

War of Independence. For this work he consulted many unpublished manuscripts, some of which, like that of Dupetit-Thouars, he collected himself, while others were placed at his disposal by the families of the writers. Returning home in 1873, he published in 1874 a short monograph, *International Courts of Arbitration*, in which, besides giving some account of the *Alabama* arbitration, he discussed and defined the possibilities of settling international disagreements by a resort to Courts of Arbitration.[182] Summing up the results of the Geneva Tribunal, as a precedent, he said:

---

[182] In the *Revue de Droit International et de Législation Comparée*, Brussels, 1899, page 200, there is a *compte rendu* or review of *International Courts of Arbitration*, by Thomas Balch, second edition published by his son THOMAS WILLING BALCH. Philadelphia, 1899, Henry T. Coates and Company.

"L'étude de M. Balch a été publiée pour la première fois, en 1874, dans le *Law Magazine and Review*. Il a été rendu compte ici même de la réimpression de l'intéressante oeuvre en 1895. [Voir *Revue*, tome XXVII., page 612.] * * * Le moment est opportun. La réunion de la Conferénce de la Haye garantit de nouveaux progrès de l'idée de l'arbitrage international. Il était bon de remettre en mémoire le nom d'un des hommes qui ont le plus contribué à prouver que l'arbitrage n'est pas une utopie de rêveur, mais un mode efficace et pratique d'apaisement de bien des conflits.

"Il y a quelque trente ans, le différend de l'*Alabama* avait pris un caractère de grande acuité. La guerre paraissait inévitable. L'attitude du gouvernement anglais semblait écarter tout espoir d'arrangement.

"Le mode le plus usité d'apaisement des conflits internationaux avait jusque-là consisté dans la désignation d'un monarque comme arbitre des prétentions des États en conflit. L'expérience avait révélé les multiples inconvénients de cette pratique. Déjà les États-Unis avaient, quelques années auparavant, rejeté une proposition d'abandonner à un souverain le droit de juger leurs réclamations.

"L'Angleterre et les États-Unis, d'ailleurs, n'étaient pas séparés seulement par des questions de fait. L'arbitre aurait eu à trancher, avant tout, de graves questions de principes. Les États-Unis avaient

"The friends of International Courts of Arbitration may fairly assert that this mode of settling great national questions has been fully and successfully tried, that it may be considered as having thereby passed into and henceforth forming a distinct part of

---

toujours soutenu que dans les guerres maritimes les navires des puissances neutres devaient jouir de tous les privilèges et de toutes les immunités des eaux territoriales. L'Angleterre n'avait point encore adopté ces vues si progressives. Pouvait-on espérer de voir les États-Unis abandonner à un souverain le droit de condamner des règles juridiques qu'ils avaient pratiquées pendant des années et pour la revendication desquelles ils avaient, en définitive, combattu en 1812–15 contre la Grande-Bretagne!

"Tous les esprits larges et pacifiques recherchaient et suggéraient d'autres modes d'apaisement du conflit. C'est alors que divers juristes songèrent à la constitution d'une cour arbitrale. M. Balch eut à ce sujet avec le président Lincoln (1864) une conversation intéressante. Tout en trouvant l'idée bonne et digne d'être émise et discutée, Lincoln pensait qu'elle ne serait pas accueillie à ce moment par l'opinion publique américaine. En fait, l'idée était si impopulaire que plusieurs journaux refusèrent de publier une lettre où M. Balch l'exposait et la défendait. Finalement, toutefois, Horace Greeley consentit à l'insérer dans le *New York Tribune* (mai 1865). M. Balch y proposait que les deux États en litige choisissent chacun un juriste compétent, et que ces deux arbitres se missent d'accord sur le choix d'un troisième. Il montrait combien ce plan était simple et pratique. La voix pacifique de M. Balch ne rencontra point d'écho tout d'abord. Mais deux ans plus tard, quelques publicistes, Laboulaye, Henri Moreau, Holtzendorff, Kapp, discutèrent sa lettre dans des conférences et des articles de revue. La discussion donna de la vigueur à l'idée; elle fit des progrès constants et fut réalisée par le traité de Washington.

"Les règles tracées par ce traité furent vivement et justement critiquées. La réunion de la cour arbitrale à Genève et l'apaisement du conflit n'en furent pas moins un triomphe pour l'idée dé l'arbitrage. Il ne pouvait plus être question désormais d'utopie et de rêverie. Un pas énorme avait été fait, et le nom de M. Balch sera toujours cité avec reconnaissance avec celui de Lorimer dans l'histoire de l'arbitrage international. F. C."

French and German translations of *International Courts of Arbitration* have been printed: *Internationale Schiedsgerichtshöfe*, Philadelphia, 1899, and *Tribunaux Internationaux d'Arbitrage*, Philadelphia, 1900.

that uncertain and shapeless mass of decisions and dicta which we call International Law. Without participating in the visions so grandly developed by Zuinglius, and so fondly cherished by Grotius, of the good time, a good time to be won only by toil and unremitting efforts,—

'Till the war-drum throbb'd no longer, and the battle-flags were furl'd
In the Parliament of man, the Federation of the world.'[183]

we may reasonably expect that through such tribunals, through their proceedings and decisions, and not through empirical codes, we may ultimately arrive at some more tangible and better ordered system of International Law; one to which the assent of civilized peoples may be given greatly to the benefit and peace of mankind."

About this pamphlet Henry Moreau wrote him the following letter in English:—

"PARIS 9 Oct. 1874.
"370 rue St. Honoré.

"MY DEAR BALCH,—Many thanks for your kind souvenir. I perused with the greatest interest and satisfaction your remarkable pamphlet on *International Courts of Arbitration*, and found you have given full evidence of your *paternal right* on this service which ended so happily both for America and England, the quarrels springing from the *Alabama* matter and the San Juan Boundaries. I thank you also for having mentioned my name in such an honorable company, with the publicists who have illustrated the dark points of International Law.

* * * * * * *

"HENRY MOREAU,
"*Avocat à la cour d'Appel.*"

---

[183] Tennyson's *Locksley Hall.*

Mr. Huntington wrote as follows :—

"42 RUE LA BRUYERE, PARIS,

"30th Oct. 1874.

"DEAR MR. BALCH,—Your essay on *International Courts of Arbitration* reached me, per Sauton, two mornings ago, and has been read with great interest. I am glad to see that you are not grown weary of well-doing, but take the success of the Geneva Tribunal—which was partly yours—rather as an encouragement to new effort than as final reward. It seems to me that you have happily chosen your time to redirect public attention to the principle and practicability of International Arbitration as a means of preventing the wars which every *civilized, Christian,* European nation is now exhausting itself in strained preparation of quite other means to urge in the impending future. What is wanted for the general acceptance of your idea is the general presentation of it to the tax-paying, conscripted, rank-and-file-people:—the circulation by the million of brief, intelligible, readable tracts like your essay. For no war can now be carried on without more or less popular assent: but the assent to the brutal exercise of the *ultima ratio regnum* is secured by previous working on the passions of the people, who are assured that there is no other means of settling national differences without loss of national honor and interest. See how the Franco-Prussian war was worked up, in proof: and how these 'Autumn manouvres,' grating and blazing away over the parade grounds of all Europe last month, are gotten up and kept up.

* * * * * * *

"W. H. HUNTINGTON."

On his work in favor of submitting the "Alabama Claims" to International Arbitration, Mr. Herbert Welsh wrote in the Editorial column of *City and State*[184] on June 2nd, 1898, as follows:—

"The late Thomas Balch of Philadelphia, who was perhaps the one man most instrumental in securing arbitration as the means of settling the Alabama Claims, must, viewed from this point, be regarded a hero, surely not less great than Admiral Dewey. The latter, with skill and courage, won a brilliant naval victory for his country and destroyed many ships and men belonging to her enemies; but the former was the unremembered instrument by which peace between the two great English-speaking peoples was maintained when a deadly and destructive war otherwise was certain to occur. It is possible the day may yet dawn when Fame will bestow her favors with a less capricious hand, and when the humane conserver will earn grateful remembrance as well as the successful destroyer. Arbitration of the Alabama Claims, before the fact, and when England and the United States were burning with international hatred, seemed much further beyond the range of possibility than did arbitration of the facts in the case of the 'Maine.' When Mr. Balch visited Mr. Lincoln on this subject in November, 1864, the President observed that 'the idea was a good one, but that in the then existing temper of the American people it was neither possible nor popular.' In fact, as he quaintly expressed it, we were 'not near enough to the millennium for such methods of settling international quarrels.' But yet this international quarrel was so settled, and in no other way.'

[184] *City and State*, published every Thursday. Herbert Welsh, Managing Editor and Publisher, Philadelphia.

Two weeks later, on June 16th, 1898, Mr. Welsh wrote in *City and State*:—

"Some of our readers have been surprised to learn from *City and State* something of the part which the late Thomas Balch played in regard to the arbitration of the Alabama Claims. They did not know that the townsman of ours was at all concerned in bringing about a peaceful settlement of a great international difficulty.

* * * * * * *

"For our own part, while we are fully ready to honor American heroes who are eminent by virtue of military or naval services to their country, we feel with peculiar keenness not only the intrinsic justice, but the future public necessity, of giving as well the meed of permanent praise and recognition to those (all too readily forgotten) who have rendered great service to their native land by some purely peaceful achievement. To those who have studied history in a broad and liberal spirit as its pages have been unfolded within the last three centuries, is it not apparent that the necessity for securing methods and cultivating a spirit whereby the international law court shall take the place of war will more and more assert itself? If this be true, the lovers of peace and the practical workers for securing it are likely in the future to play a still more important part than the steadily advancing one which they have performed in the recent past. To whom, then, could the citizens of Philadelphia—a city whose name is synonymous with brotherly love—more appropriately raise some permanent memorial than to their own townsman, Thomas Balch, whose suggestions and efforts, at a most critical period in our history, led directly to an amicable instead of a bloody settlement of a quarrel between ours and the mother land?"

In *The Record* of Leesburg, Loudon County, Virginia, Mr. Balch's birthplace, there was published on June 29th, 1906, the following article:—

A Virginia Pioneer in the cause of International Arbitration.—Editor *The Record.*

* * * * * * *

It is generally known that Virginia has furnished the nation (using the term to include the Confederacy also) more great leaders in war than any other State. It is not so well known that she has furnished great leaders in the arts of peace, particularly in those arts which seek to render war impossible. The following quotation directs attention to a native of Loudoun whose chief fame rests upon his efforts to secure the establishment of an international court of arbitration. This quotation is from an obituary which was published in the *Magazine of American History*, New York, 1877, by its editor John Austin Stevens, librarian of the New York Historical Society, the part referring to Mr. Balch's suggestion of a court of international arbitration being quoted with approval by John Howard Brown in the recent edition of Lamb's *Biographical Dictionary.*

* * * * * * *

"Mr. Balch still found time for other studies and thought. In 1865 he proposed in a letter to Mr. Greeley, which was published in the *Tribune*, a Court of International Arbitration, as a measure of averting war, which is believed to have been the first step in this direction. In it was laid down the code of rules later observed by the Geneva Tribunal."

The letter referred to by Mr. Stevens was published in the New York *Tribune* of May 13th, 1865. It is too long to quote here in full, but the sections that offer a

solution for a peaceful settlement of the Alabama claims deserve careful study, since the principles laid down in them are fundamentally the same as those that have been adopted as a basis for procedure by the International Tribunal at the Hague. They are as follows:

"Sec. III. That as to such claims, war was a barbarous manner of enforcing them; that the most successful war would after all be a most expensive and unsatisfactory process of litigation; and that the civilized and Christian way of ascertaining their validity and extent should be by arbitration.

"Sec. IV. That the best manner of composing such a Court of Arbitration would be, that each party should select some competent jurist, those two to select an umpire. The claims to be presented, proved and argued before this Court, whose decisions should be final and without appeal."

But the learned editor of the *Magazine of American History* is mistaken in considering this the first step in the direction of a court of international arbitration. Prof. John Bassett Moore in the *History and Digest of the International Arbitrations to which the United States has been a party* (Washington, 1898, vol. 2, page 2109), points out that the Senate of Massachusetts in February, 1832, adopted by a vote of 19 to 5 a resolution that "some mode should be established for the amicable and final adjustment of all international disputes, instead of resort to war." A similar resolution was passed by both houses of the Massachusetts Legislature in 1838, and about the same time "an agitation began for the convoking of a Congress of nations, for the purpose of establishing an international tribunal for the adjustment of differences."

However, the origination of the idea of an international tribunal for settling disputes did not proceed from the Massachusetts Legislature. Its source is lost in the haze of legendary history, its first practical operation being seen in the amphictyonic council of the Greek States. Another plan for international arbitration was the Grand Design of Henry IV. of France, projected by his minister Sully in 1603. But the probable originator of the modern idea of a permanent international tribunal was a Frenchman—Émeric Crucé, in his book, *Le Nouvean Cynée, 1623.*

* * * * * * *

Since Crucé's time the idea has been repeatedly advocated, a notable exponent being William Penn, who proposed a European Diet, Parliament, or Estates in 1693–94. Other advocates of this idea were Bentham, James Mill and John Stuart Mill among Englishmen, Rousseau among Frenchmen, and Leibniz, Kant and the jurist Bluntschli among the Germans. From the last named Thomas Balch derived some of his ideas,[185] as did also the Baroness von Suttner, who has recently received the Nobel Peace Prize of $40,000.

Altho' not the originator of the idea, Thomas Balch won distinction by suggesting in Section IV. of his letter to the *Tribune* a plan which with slight modification resulted in the Geneva Tribunal, a direct forerunner of the present Hague Tribunal. If we admit the claims of Fulton over those of Rumsey as the inventor of the steamboat, on the ground of making it a practical success, we must by the same logic award Thomas Balch

[185] Mr. Balch did not gain some of his ideas for his plan from the works of Bluntschli, but he did consult the writings of Grotius, Sully, Castel de Saint Pierre, Bentham, Kant, and other jurists and publicists.

the honor claimed for him by Mr. Stevens and Mr. Brown, that of having originated the present method of settling disputes between nations by an international court of arbitration.

J. D. RODEFFER.

Library of Congress.

In 1875 Mr. Balch translated for the *Bankers' Magazine* of New York, Walowski's famous paper on the payment of *The French War Fine*.[186] On March 1st, 1875, he became one of the founding members of the Social Art Club of Philadelphia, whose name was changed in 1888 to the Rittenhouse Club. In 1876 he edited the *Journal of Claude Blanchard*, a translation from the original manuscript of one of Rochambeau's officers, and wrote for the *Presbyterian Quarterly Review* an essay on *Calvinism and American Independence*.

In this latter essay he pointed out the important part that the settlers of the Calvinistic faith in the British North American Colonies, especially the descendants of the French Huguenot refugees, contributed to bringing on the War of Independence with Great Britain.

The following year Mr. Balch edited a translation from the original French manuscript of the *Narrative of the Prince de Broglie of a visit to America in 1782*.

---

[186] *Résultats Économiques du payment de la Contribution de Guerre en Allemagne et en France* par L. Walowski, membre de l'Institut, Député de la Seine: Paris, 1874.

In the number of *The Magazine of American History* (New York) for July, 1879, there was published a communication criticizing the accuracy of the preliminary note that Mr. Balch prefixed to the *Narrative of the Prince de Broglie.* In answer to an inquiry on the subject by Mr. Balch's daughter to the Fourth Duc de Broglie[187] in 1885, that gentleman wrote as follows, absolutely sustaining Mr. Balch's statements[188]:—

"Les renseignements donnés par Monsieur votre Père au sujet de ma famille, *sont absolument conformes* à la vérité. Le titre de Prince du Saint Empire Romain avait été donné par l'Impératrice Marie Thérèse au Maréchal de Broglie en 1759, pour être porté par lui et par *tous ses descendants mâles.* C'est en vertu de cette nomination que mon grand-père, Claude Victor de Broglie, portait ce titre, que je l'ai porté moi-même et que tous mes fils le prennent aujourd'hui.

"Le Maréchal de Broglie est bien mort en 1804, très-peu de jours après le refus qu'il avait fait de rentrer en France, sur la proposition du premier Consul.

"Il n'y a donc aucune modification à faire aux faits affirmés par Monsieur votre Père, et toute critique à cet égard est dépourvue de fondement."[188]

---

[187] Albert de Broglie, Fourth Duc de Broglie, a son of the Third Duc, and through his mother a grandson of Madame de Staël, was born at Paris, June 13th, 1821, and died there January 19th, 1901. A statesman and historian, his long life was a busy one. During the Presidency of Marshal MacMahon, he was, from May 1873 until May 1874 and again in 1877, Prime Minister of France. He was a voluminous writer. In 1856, he published *l'Eglise et l'Empire romain au IV^e siècle*, which opened for him in 1862 the portals of *l' Académie Française*. He also wrote *le Secret du Roi*, 1878; *Frêdêric II et Marie Thérèse*, 1883, etc.

[188] This letter of le Duc de Broglie is printed in *The Magazine of American History*, New York, for April, 1886, at page 407.

On February 23rd, 1877, Mr. Balch read before the Philadelphia Social Science Association a paper on *Free Coinage and a Self-Adjusting Ratio.* Mr. Balch—who for a long time, without regard to the rise and the fall of political parties, was a close and careful student of monetary questions, and who enjoyed a long and intimate friendship with Michel Chevalier and knew many other students of monetary matters, such as George Walker and Henri Cernuschi—maintained in that address the advantages of opening the mints freely both to gold and to silver. Mr. Balch was fully cognizant of that unwritten, but infallible monetary law, that when two moneys of unequal value are in circulation side by side, the cheaper or poorer will drive the dearer out of circulation. He was thoroughly familiar with the statements of that law prepared by Nicole Oresme, Bishop of Lisieux in Normandy in 1364 for Charles the Fifth of France, surnamed *the Wise*, by Copernicus of Thorn in 1526 for Sigismund the First of Poland,[189] and by Sir Thomas Gresham in the latter part of the sixteenth century for Elizabeth of England.[190] Mr. Balch wished to have gold and silver pieces

---

[189] *Traictie de la Première Invention des Monnoies de Nicole Oresme, textes Français et Latin d'après les manuscrits de la Bibliothèque Impériale et Traité de la Monnoie de Copernic, texte latin et traduction française, publiés et annotés par M. L. Wolowski, membre de l'Institut.* Paris, Librairie de Guillaumin et C.ie, Rue de Richelieu, 14, 1864.

[190] *Bimetalism* by Henry Dunning MacLeod, London, 1894.

marked with the weight of metal they contained, and to leave the ratio of exchange between the two metals to be settled by the unwritten law of supply and demand, and not by legal enactment. He did not believe in the ratio of 15½ to 1, nor of 16 to 1, nor of any other hard and fast ratio prescribed by legislation, but only in the commercial ratio whatever it might happen to be at the time. He maintained that the ratio between the two metals always had varied and always would vary, but that if the metals were left to themselves, they would promptly adjust their ratio of exchange, and that the variation between them, unhampered by legislative meddling, would be reduced to a minimum. With a total absence of partisan bias, but only with a desire to arrive at a proper solution of a difficult and complex question, Mr. Balch's last piece of work before his death was to begin the translation of Ludwig Bamberger's *Reichsgold*,[191] considered by many competent judges the ablest argument for the single-gold standard.

Mr. Balch died at his home in Philadelphia, on March 29th, 1877. He married on October 5th, 1852, at "Woodfield" in Philadelphia County, Emily Swift, daughter of Joseph Swift and his wife, Eliza Moore Willing, and grand-daughter of Samuel Swift and his wife, Mary, daughter of Lieutenant-

---

[191] *Reichsgold: Studien uber Währung und Wechsel* von Ludwig Bamberger, Leipzig, 1876.

Colonel Joseph Shippen, who served in General Forbes's expedition (1758) that captured Fort Duquesne.[192]

---

[192] Joseph Swift was born December 26th, 1799, at the "Grove" in Philadelphia County and died July 1st, 1882, at Long Branch, New Jersey. He was a Director of The Philadelphia Contributionship (the Hand in Hand), The Philadelphia Saving Fund Society, The Philadelphia Bank, and The Pennsylvania Company for Insurances on Lives and Granting Annuities. He was President of the Board of the Philadelphia Club from April 7th, 1854, to September 16th, 1859. In 1845 he took the first of a number of trips to Europe, travelling in that tour as far as Constantinople. In June, 1851, Prince and Princess Metternich invited him to dinner at Schloss Johannesberg. During the course of the dinner, the Prince sent for a half bottle of the 1842 blue seal Johannesberg, which was brought to him, and he himself poured out the fine wine. Afterwards Prince Metternich sent a bronze statuette of himself to Mr. Swift in recognition of some fine maderia that the latter sent him. Samuel Swift was a son of Joseph Swift (1731–1806) and his wife, Margaret McCall, (1731–1804) and a nephew of John Swift, known as "the Old Collector," who was the Secretary and Treasurer and one of the Managers of the first Philadelphia "Assemblies," which were given in 1748–49. Eliza Moore Willing was a daughter of George Willing and a granddaughter of Thomas Willing, who headed the list of Signers of the Non-Importation Act in 1765, was a Justice of the Supreme Court of the Province of Pennsylvania and as such was the last person to hold a commission under the colonial constitution of Pennsylvania, was President of the Provincial Congress of Pennsylvania which met at Carpenters' Hall July 15th, 1774, was the first President of the Bank of North America, from 1782 to 1791, when he was made President of the First Bank of the United States (1791–1811.) Joseph Shippen was a son of Edward Shippen "of Lancaster," who was mayor of Philadelphia in 1744, one of the first trustees of Princeton University, and a great grandson of Edward Shippen who was named by Penn in the charter of 1701 mayor of Philadelphia.

See *Letters and Papers relating chiefly to the Provincial History of Pennsylvania with some notices of the writers*, by Thomas Balch, Philadelphia, 1855.

Edward Shippen, by Elise Willing Balch in Charles P. Keith's *Provincial Councillors of Pennsylvania*, Philadelphia, 1883.

The English Ancestors of the Shippen Family and Edward Shippen of Philadelphia, by Thomas Willing Balch, Philadelphia, 1904.

The Swift Family of Philadelphia, by Thomas Willing Balch, Philadelphia, 1906.

Issue:

7 I. Elise Willing Balch, born at Philadelphia. She translated the diary of the Prince de Broglie's visit to America in 1782, which was published in the *Magazine of American History* in 1877;[193] wrote the part called *Edward Shippen* in Charles P. Keith's *Provincial Councillors of Pennsylvania*, 1883, and was the chairman of the Grand Opera Committee in Philadelphia from 1898 to 1903.

7 II. Edwin Swift Balch, born at Philadelphia. He lived in Europe as a boy and received his early education in France and Germany.

In 1875 he entered the class of 1878 at Princeton College as a Sophomore. On Sunday afternoon, April 2d, 1876, President James McCosh, while lecturing on the Bible in chapel, made a remark—as is mentioned in the '78 class reports—about "elephants and other natural products of the soil." All the students present, nearly the whole college, smiled and tittered, and some of them literally shook with laughter. Mr. Balch only smiled,[194] but President McCosh happened to look at him and singling him out, in a fit of anger, said: "Mr. Balch, as you sin openly, I will rebuke you openly," whereupon all the undergraduates in the chapel hissed. Two days

---

[193] *Narrative by the Prince de Broglie of a visit to America, 1782*, translated from an unpublished manuscript by Elise Willing Balch: Reprinted from the Magazine of American History, 1877.

[194] See *ante* page 193 how his *bisaïeul*, the Rev. Dr. Balch also laughed at Princeton.

later, Dr. McCosh, in his own house, apologized to Mr. Balch, the latter's father being present. However, having thus incurred the enmity of Dr. McCosh, Mr. Balch left Princeton, the faculty accepting his departure with "regret."[195]

[195] The following two letters from Professor Duffield explain the position and the feeling of the Faculty of Princeton College in this matter.

"PRINCETON, N. J., May 1st, 1876.

"THOMAS BALCH, ESQ.

"MY DEAR SIR:

"Your communication to the Faculty, addressed to me as Secretary, of date Apr. 26th (postmarked 27th) was duly recd., and the first opportunity embraced of submitting it to the Faculty. With regret, shared I am sure by the Faculty generally, your request was complied with, and I enclose you the certificate of your son's honorable dismission.

"With our kindest regards, and best wishes for his future welfare,

"Very truly yours,

"JOHN T. DUFFIELD."

"COLLEGE OF NEW JERSEY.

"PRINCETON, NEW JERSEY, May 1, 1876.

"This is to Certify, that Edwin Swift Balch was admitted to the Sophomore Class of the College of New Jersey at the Examinations in June last without conditions; that he has continued a member of the Class in good standing to the present date; that he passed satisfactorily the examinations of his class at the end of the Second Term, and that he is now honorably dismissed at the request of his father.

"By order of the Faculty,

"JOHN T. DUFFIELD,
Clerk.

"Mr. Balch's grades were as follows:

In Mathematics	84
" Greek	88.5
" Latin	87
" English	96
" Natural History	86
" French	99
" Bible	86
Average grade	88.4

Rank 28th in a class of 90.

Grades are given but twice a year; at the end of the First and Third Terms."

In the fall of 1876, he entered Harvard University as a Junior, and received there the degree of A. B. in June, 1878. Then he studied law in the office of William Henry Rawle, and was admitted to the Philadelphia Bar in 1881. He took much interest in painting and exhibited several times: at the Philadelphia Society of Artists in the Pennsylvania Academy of Fine Arts in 1886; at the Pennsylvania Academy of Fine Arts yearly from 1887 to 1891; and at the Philadelphia Art Club in 1887 and 1890. In 1880 in company with Charles Chauncey Binney of Philadelphia, H. W. Seton-Karr, of England, and the guide Christian Tüffli, he made the first ascent of and christened the Piz Bevers in the Engadine. In July, 1881, with two reindeer hunters, he made the first ascent of the highest Troll of the Troll-tinder in the Romsdal district in Norway. In 1882 he made, in Switzerland, with the guides Franz Burgener and Aloïs Anthamatten, the second ascent of the Nadelhorn and the third ascent of the Portienhorn near Saas with the same guides; and crossed with them also the Rossbodenjoch between the Rauthorn and the Fletschorn, making a variation on the usual route. He ascended also many other peaks and crossed numerous passes. Among these may be mentioned the Piz Morteratsch, the Ortler, the Gross Venediger, the Rympfischorn, the Drei Zinnen and Monte Civetta; the Gepatschjoch, the

Langtauferersjoch, the Ramoljoch, and the Rothmoosjoch with the Tyrolese guide, Joseph Spechtenhauser; the Neues Weissthor, and with Laurent Proment of Courmayeur, the Col du Géant. He has published several papers about mountains.[196]

He has made an exhaustive study of glacières, visiting over forty in America and Europe, more than double the number ever seen by any one else. His observations proved conclusively that all underground ice is formed by the cold of winter alone; and that the heat of summer only helps to melt it. His researches on underground ice he embodied in several papers and a book entitled, *Glacières or Freezing Caverns.*[197]

In *Antarctica* (1902), he christened the eastern and the western lands of the south polar regions

---

[196] 1. *Mountain Exploration: Bulletin of the Geographical Club of Philadelphia*, Vol. I., January, 1893.

2. *The Highest Mountain Ascent and the Effects of Rarefied Air; The Popular Science Monthly*, Vol. XLVI., March, 1895.

3. *Ascents near Saas: Appalachia*, Vol. VIII., November, 1896.

4. *Reminiscences of Tyrol: Appalachia*, Vol. VIII., March, 1898.

5. *The Highest Mountain Ascent: Bulletin of the American Geographical Society*, Vol. XXXVI., February, 1904.

[197] 1. *Ice Caves and the Causes of Subterranean Ice*, Philadelphia, Press of Allen, Lane and Scott, 1896. Reprinted in *The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, Vol. CXLIII., March 1897.

2. *Ice Cave Hunting in Central Europe: Appalachia*, Vol. VIII., July 1897.

3. *Subterranean Ice Deposits in America: The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, Vol. CXLVII., April, 1899.

4. *Glacières or Freezing Caverns*, Philadelphia, Allen, Lane and Scott, 1900.

5. *Evaporation underground: Monthly Weather Review*, December, 1901.

respectively "East Antarctica" and "West Antarctica"; and his map in that book is the first that shows those names.[198]

In an article entitled *Résultats scientifiques de l'expédition antarctique suédoise* in *La Géographie* of December 15th, 1904,[199] Dr. Otto Nordenskjöld, leader of the Swedish Antarctic expedition of 1901–1903, writes as follows à propos of using the name West Antarctica for the western half of the South Polar regions:—

"Ici se pose une question de nomenclature géographique. Il est clair que le complexe de terres antarctiques que nous avons exploré, c'est-à-dire la masse continentale qui comprend la terre de Graham, la terre de Danco, celle à laquelle j'ai donné le nom de Palmer, la terre Louis-Philippe et la terre du Roi Oscar avec les îles voisines telles que les Shetlands du Sud, doit

---

[198] 1. *Antarctica, A History of Antarctic Discovery: The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, Vol. CLI., April, May, June, 1901; Vol. CLII., July, 1901.

2. *Antarctic Exploration: Scientific American Supplement*, July 19, 1902.

3. *Antarctica, Press of Allen, Lane and Scott, Philadelphia*, 1902.

4. *Antarctica: Science*, July 10, 1903.

5. *Antarctica Addenda: The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, February, 1904.

6. *Termination Land: The National Geographic Magazine*, Vol. XV., 1904.

7. *Zum Kontinent des Eisigen Südens:* (A review of Dr. von Drygalski's book.) *Bulletin of the American Geographical Society*, Vol. XXXVI., 1905.

8. *Antarctic Nomenclature: Bulletin of the American Geographical Society*, Vol. XXXVII., 1905.

9. *Wilkes Land: Bulletin of the American Geographical Society*, Vol. XXXVIII., 1906.

[199] *La Géographie: Bulletin de la Société de Géographie*, Paris, December 15th, 1904, pages 353–4.

porter un nom particulier. Pour le désigner, j'ai adopté la dénomination *Antarctis de l'Ouest* proposée par M. Balch. Ce nom me paraît devoir être accepté jusqu'au jour où l'exploration de toute cette région sera achevée."

Dr. Nordenskjöld, in his book, *Antarctica or Two Years amongst the Ice of the South Pole*,[200] further says:—

"Even a fugitive glance at a map of the South Polar regions shows us that all the known land there is grouped about two centres. On the one side we have Victoria Land and Wilkes Land, with their sub-divisions; on the other, the land to the south of South America. It is yet an wholly unsolved problem whether these two regions are connected with each other, but even if this should ever be proved to be the case, they would still, to a certain degree, be independent of each other, because of their being so much more accessible than the land which would in that case connect them. It therefore seems desirable to distinguish between these regions by means of some short name and, after long consideration during lonely hours amid the Polar ice, it seemed to me that the best plan would be to call the former tract East Antarctis, and the latter West Antarctis, following the usual plan of naming places in the several hemispheres in which these regions are situated, although, at the same time, I was quite conscious of the fact that, just in this part of the world, the terms, east and west, are of unusually little significance. I found, on my return, that an American explorer, Mr. E. S.

---

[200] *Antarctica or Two Years amongst the Ice of the South Pole*, by Dr. N. Otto G. Nordenskjöld and Dr. Joh. Gunnar Andersson: London and New York, 1905, page 68.

Balch, had, during our absence, proposed just these very names, only with the difference that he used the English form, Antarctica. Under such circumstances I banish all hesitation and shall, therefore, in the following pages, call the region which was the scene of our labours by the name of West Antarctica."[201]

A paper on *Roman and Pre-Historic Remains in Central Germany* that he contributed to *The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, January, 1903, was reprinted by the German Government for its exhibit at the Saint Louis Exhibition in 1905 under the title: *The Roman Camp Saalburg near Bad Homburg vor der Hoehe.* He has written many other papers on geographical and scientific subjects.[202]

Mr. Balch was elected in 1875 a member of the

[201] Hugh R. Mill in *The Siege of the South Pole* says :—

"The whole question of American enterprise in the Antarctic regions has been discussed by Mr. Balch in his *Antarctica*, a work embodying a great deal of careful research into old records, and to this we are much indebted."

[202] 1. *The French in America during the War of Independence of the United States*, a translation from the French *Les Français en Amérique pendant la Guerre de l'Indépendence des États-Unis*, by Thomas Balch, Vol. II., Philadelphia, Porter and Coates, 1895.

2. *A projected railroad across the Sáhara; Around the World*, Philadelphia, 1894.

3. *Was South America sighted before 1448 : The Journal of School Geography*, Vol. II., 1898.

4. *Ice breakers in Polar exploration : The Journal of the Frenklin Institute*, Vol. CXLIX., 1900.

5. *Tallow Cave, North Dorset, Vt., and Marble Natural Bridge, North Adams, Mass.: The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, March, 1901.

6. *Roman and Prehistoric Remains in Central Germany : The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, Vol. CLV., January, 1903.

7. *About some Important Polar Navigations to High Latitudes :* Translated from the Italian of Dr. Arnaldo Faustini, *The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, June, 1903.

American Whig Society of Princeton University, in 1876 a member of the Appalachian Mountain Club, in 1893 a member of the Philadelphia Club and of the Society of Colonial Wars in the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, in 1895 a member of the Royal Geographical Society, and for the year 1895–96 he was chosen President of the Geographical Club of Philadelphia, of which he was a charter member. In 1897 he was elected a member of the Franklin Institute and was soon appointed to the Library Committee; in 1899 he was elected a member of the American Philosophical Society, in 1900 a corresponding member of the Sociedad Antonio Alzate of Mexico City, and a member of the American Geographical Society, in 1901 a Manager, and member of the Publication Committee, of the Franklin Institute, in 1902 a member of the Council of the Society of Colonial Wars in Pennsylvania, and a corresponding member of the Wyoming Historical and Geological Association of Wilkes-Barré, Pa., and in 1903 a Fellow of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, and a member of the National Geographic Society. To the celebration held by the American Philosophical

---

8. *American Explorers in Africa: Bulletin of the American Geographical Society*, Vol. XXXVI., 1904.

9. *Savage and Civilized Dress: The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, May, 1904.

10. *Comparative Art:* Allen, Lane and Scott, Philadelphia, Pa., 1906.

11. *The Survival of the Shortest and of the Easiest in Language: The Journal of the Franklin Institute*, December, 1906.

Society, April 17th–20th, 1906, in honor of the Bicentenary of the birth of Benjamin Franklin, Mr. Balch was one of the delegates of the American Geographical Society (New York, 1852) and also of the Sociedad Cientifica "Antonio Alzate" (Mexico, 1884).

He was married on October 5th, 1904, at Towanda, Pennsylvania, to Eugenia H. Macfarlane,[203] a daughter of James Macfarlane, a geologist and an authority on coal, and Mary Overton, his wife. She exhibited pictures in the Paris Exposition of 1900 and also several times in the Paris Salon.

7. III. Joseph Swift Balch, born July 5th, 1860, at Paris, France, and died there July 3rd, 1864.

7. IV. Thomas Willing Balch, born at Wiesbaden, Nassau, his certificate of birth being endorsed by William Walton Murphy, Consul of the United States of America for the Duchy of Nassau.[204] He received the A. B. degree at Harvard University in 1890; and studied law with J. Rodman Paul, and at the University of Pennsylvania, where he was a member of the Sharswood Law Club. He was admitted to the Philadelphia Bar June 8th, 1895,

---

[203] Mrs. Balch is a great great granddaughter of Thomas Willing, (see note 191), and of George Clymer, a signer of the Declaration of Independence, a framer of the Constitution of the United States and of the Constitution of Pennsylvania, a member (1786) of the American Philosophical Society, and the first President (1805) of the Pennsylvania Academy of the Fine Arts. George Clymer, whose grandfather emigrated in 1699 from Bristol, England, to Philadelphia, was born in the latter city in 1739, and died in Bucks County, Pennsylvania, in 1813.

[204] Mr. Murphy's Consulate was at Frankfort-on-the-Main.

and received three days later the degree of LL.B., from the University of Pennsylvania. In 1893 he was elected a member of the Philadelphia Club; in April, 1901, a corresponding member of the Wyoming Historical and Geological Society of Wilkes-Barre, Pa.; in May, 1901, a member of the American Philosophical Society; in May, 1903, Recording Secretary and a member of the Council of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania; in March, 1905, an Honorary member of the American Whig Society of Princeton University; in December, 1905, a manager of the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia; on June 4th, 1906, a Director of the Chesapeake and Delaware Canal Company; and in January, 1907, a corresponding member of The Colonial Society of Massachusetts. He ascended the Rympfischorn, the Ortler and numerous peaks and crossed the Col du Géant and other passes in the Alps with François Devouassoud of Chamonix, Laurent Proment of Courmayeur, Eduard Julen of Zermatt and other guides. He has written and published a number of books and articles, mostly on questions of International Law.[205]

---

[205] 1. *Some Facts About Alsace and Lorraine, Philadelphia*, 1895;
2. *Russian Jottings : The Red and Blue*, University of Pennsylvania, May, 1896.
3. *Alpine Experiences : ibid*, February, 1897.
4. *Jean Casimir-Perier : ibid*, April, 1898.
5. *The Brooke Family of Whitchurch, Hampshire, England, together with an Account of Acting Governor Robert Brooke of Maryland and Colonel Ninian Beall of Maryland and some of their descendants*, Philadelphia, 1899;

6. XI. ALEXANDRINE MACOMB BALCH, born in 1828. She married in 1847 the Rev. George D. Cummins, D. D., the first Bishop of the Reformed Episcopal Church of America. He died June 26th, 1876. They had three children.

"Bishop George D. Cummins, of the Reformed Episcopal Church, died Monday afternoon, [June 26, 1876] at his residence in Lutherville, Baltimore County, Md.[206] He was born near Smyrna, Del., December 11th, 1822, and graduated at Dickinson College in 1841. He was for two years a licentiate in the Methodist Church, but in October, 1845, was ordained as a deacon, and in 1847 made a presbyter in the Protestant Episcopal Church. His several charges in that communion were Christ

---

6. *The Alabama Arbitration*, Philadelphia, Allen, Lane and Scott, 1900.

7. *Émeric Crucé*, Philadelphia, Allen, Lane and Scott, 1900.

8. *La Frontière Alasko-Canadienne: La Revue de Droit International*, Brussels, January, 1902.

9. *The Alasko-Canadian Frontier: Journal of the Franklin Institute*, Philadelphia, March, 1902.

10. *The Alaska Frontier*, Philadelphia, Allen, Lane and Scott, 1903.

11. *L'Adjudication de la Question de la Frontière entre l'Alaska et le Canada : La Revue de Droit International*, Brussels, January, 1904.

12. *The Alaska Adjudication: The Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography*, Philadelphia, April, 1904.

13. *The English Ancestors of the Shippen Family and Edward Shippen of Philadelphia: ibid*, October, 1904.

14. *Who saved the Gold Standard?: The Public Ledger*, Philadelphia, October 31st, 1904.

15. *Philadelphia and Algeria: ibid*, April 26th, 1905.

16. *The Morocco Conference: The Evening Post*, New York, January 11th and 24th, 1906.

17. *France in North Africa*, Philadelphia, January, 1906.

18. *The Swift Family of Philadelphia: The Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography*, Philadelphia, April, 1906.

[206] Obituary notice in a newspaper, probably of Baltimore.

Church, Norfolk, Va.; St. James's Church, Richmond; Trinity Church, Washington; St. Peter's, Baltimore, and Trinity, Chicago. In June, 1866, he was elected Assistant Bishop of Kentucky, and held the office till November 10, 1873, when he resigned to aid in organizing the Reformed Episcopal Church. He was afterwards formally deposed. The joint communion question was the immediate occasion of this movement. When the Reformed Episcopal Church was organized in New York, November 15 of that year, the basis of the division from the mother Church was described as being a return to the Prayer-Book of 1785, the abolition of the idea of a priesthood and of a definite and direct Apostolic succession. The new Church also set aside the doctrine that regeneration is inseparably connected with baptism—that the Lord's table is an altar on which the body and blood of Christ are offered anew, and that the presence of Christ at the Lord's Supper is a presence in the elements bread and wine. Dr. Cummins was chosen presiding Bishop of the new Church, and at the same time Dr. Chas. E. Cheney, of Chicago, was made Missionary Bishop of the Northwest. Since that time Bishop Nicholson, of Philadelphia, has been added to the Church. Bishop Cummins had been since 1873 actively engaged in the missionary work. He was below medium size, a fluent and effective speaker and preacher and a man of much tenacity of purpose and energy. The Reformed Episcopal Church has now some fifty parishes and clergymen in the United States and Canada."

6. XII. STEPHEN FITZHUGH BALCH, was born March 14th, 1831, at Frederick, Maryland. During the Civil War he was Assistant Surgeon of the Nineteenth Iowa Infantry.

5. V. George Beall Balch was born August 16th, 1789, at Georgetown, D. C. He was a planter at Moulton, Alabama, and died September 12th, 1831. He married first, his first cousin, Martha Rogers Balch, daughter of (4. VIII.) William Goodwyn Balch (see *ante* page 104). They had two sons:

6. I. Bloomer Balch, who died young;

6. II. George Beall Balch.

6. II. GEORGE BEALL BALCH, was born January 3d, 1821, at Shelbyville, Tennessee. He entered the Navy in 1837 by the appointment of the Secretary of the Navy at the request of Major General Alexander Macomb, Commander-in-Chief of the United States Army. Upon returning from the sea cruise with which a naval career began then, he studied at the Naval Asylum at Philadelphia, the forerunner of the present Naval Academy at Annapolis, and passed number five in a class of thirty-nine. He volunteered for the American Exploring Expedition under Wilkes in 1838, but was not accepted on account of his youth. From 1838 to 1840 he served in the *Cyane*, and during that cruise he saw the bombardment of Beirut by the English, Austrian and Turkish fleets. It took place at dusk, and from the deck of the *Cyane*, that was well out at sea, it was "a grand sight." He was in the Mexican War, taking part in the first attack on Alvarado, November 1st, 1846. He took part in the bombardment of Vera Cruz and was present at the

surrender of that city and the fortress of San Juan d'Ulloa on March 9th, 1847. He served on the *Princeton* of the United States squadron from 1846 to 1849 and was on board of her off the Italian coast during the Revolution of 1848. The *Princeton* was the first propeller ship to enter the Mediterranean Sea. While his ship was cruising in Grecian waters, one evening he was invited along with other officers to take tea by the Rev. Mr. Buell, an American at the Piraus, and met there among the guests, Byron's "Maid of Athens;" she was then Mrs. Black, having married a Scotchman. He was a Lieutenant and Executive Officer on the United States Ship *Plymouth* with Commodore Perry in the Japan Expedition in 1853–54, about which he sent to the writer the following letter:—

"DEAR WILLING:—In compliance with your request for some account of my personal experience in the Expedition to Japan under Commodore Perry, it may be proper to take into consideration the great length of time which has elapsed, and the infirmities of the human memory, but that you may have the benefit of such memories for your forthcoming book, I submit the following views:

"Japan was for two hundred and thirty years a *terra incognita;* but the spirit of the age rebelled against this shutting out of the Nations, and the mystery surrounding Japan was exciting peoples of different parts of the world, who were curious to learn what Japan had to contribute to the betterment of mankind, and at the time of which I write, an effort was made by the United States

to open out that interesting country. It may not be out of the way to contrast the successful efforts of our beloved country, not only in respect to Japan, but as well of Corea, with other and more powerful nations. The United States with a small Navy has been able to bring these countries to the notice of the civilized world, and to me, who was an active participant as a member of the Japan Expedition, it is cause for great wonderment when I regard the results attained by the Perry Expedition to Japan.

"The eighth day of July 1853, was to mark the advent of Commodore Perry's Squadron into Japanese waters. The United States Ship *Mississippi*, the United States Ship *Susquehanna*, the United States Ship *Saratoga*, and the United States Ship *Plymouth* comprised the whole force on the first visit to Japan; it was not of great force, but our Commander-in-Chief was intent on opening out that hitherto unknown country to the world, and the results vindicate the wisdom of his course.

"The day of our arrival was calm, bright and beautiful and nature seemed to sleep quietly in the haze of a July sun, and may we not dwell for a moment on the tremendous issues arising from the visit of the American Squadron! We see Japan throwing off her policy of isolation, and becoming as it were imbued with the spirit of the Western world, and taking example of their resistless energy she has now taken her place, as it were, by tremendous leaps in the circles of the nations of the world. We may well claim for Commodore Perry a great share in these results for Japan.

"A surveying expedition was ordered by the Commodore, each ship of the Squadron furnishing a boat

with sextant, Azimuth Compass, lead line, spy glass, and last but not least, we were armed; this last was on the principle of being ready for any contingency. The survey went on in a prompt and efficient manner, and we were making ready for the grand scene which was to take place, on presenting the President's letter on shore, near where our ships were lying quietly at anchor. I believe it will gratify you if I state that I had charge of the boat of the United States Ship *Plymouth* on the survey above referred to. Another fact, I may mention which will be of great interest to you; I was given a bronze medal by the 'Boston Board of Trade' for my services in the Japan Expedition. Many officers on the Expedition received from that Institution similar marks of distinction; but I mention it because your request is for my personal experiences, and hence will absolve me from the charge of vain glory.

"I remember well the magnificent pageant when the letter of the President was presented to the Japanese Officials to be carried to the Capital City of Yeddo, as it was then called, but now Tokio, and yet it would not have entered into the heart of a man of those days to conceive the grand results arising from the presenting of that letter, for at that time, Japan, hitherto unknown, began to take her place among the nations, and now may well be proud of her wonderful achievements, and the United States may well rejoice in her development as a power in the world. It is only a few years [1889] since the writer of this was invited to be present at the Johns Hopkins University, the occasion being in honor of the granting of a Constitution to Japan. I was requested by Dr. Gilman to make an address on the occasion, and to express my views regarding the Japanese Empire,

and the benefits resulting from the opening of Japan. As modesty forbade my speaking in public, I wrote a letter to Dr. Gilman, which he considered so happy in thought and expression that he read it aloud to the audience, keeping it for the last, as he pronounced it to be the best! The Japanese Minister was much delighted, and very cordial upon making my acquaintance, and invited me to visit him at the Legation in Washington. Dr. Gilman with his usual grace and tact made an interesting address, as did Judge Cooley of Chicago, a well known Constitutional lawyer, also Japanese students of the University. After the meeting was over we were invited to a regular Japanese Tea brewing and drank some of the fine tea.

"It may be proper to state that on fitting out the Expedition, Commodore Perry had provided himself with many inventions which might reasonably be expected to interest the Japanese, and in accordance therewith had taken a complete working model, with poles, wire, etc. to exhibit the wonderful element of electricity. It was remarked during our visit that the Japanese did not seem to express surprise at what was shown them 'till the telegraph was working! I remember the conclusion I reached at the time was that these Japanese partook of some of the traits of our Indians, one of which was, never to express surprise.

"In writing of the Perry Expedition to Japan forty-eight years have passed away and memory fails to retain many an interesting incident, but the results of that Expedition are with us to this day, and we may rejoice that to our beloved country has been vouchsafed the glory of opening an interesting, and at that time, unknown region to the brotherhood of nations,

and furthermore, we may be glad to know that our Japanese neighbors stand for much that is to be admired in their progressive ideas, their genuine hospitality and refinement of manners. And as the years pass by and we have learned more of our Japanese friends we cannot fail to see that Commodore Perry has done a great service to his country and also to Japan.

"In that far off country the name of Perry is a household word, and his countrymen can do no more grateful act than to cherish his memory as a loyal, true American.

"GEO. B. BALCH.

"BALTIMORE, MD.
March 20th, 1902."

In 1859 when Lieutenant Balch was serving on the *Saint Mary's* of the Pacific Squadron, the Secretary of the Navy was anxious for advices from the squadron to include in his annual report. It was necessary to send dispatches from Guayamas to Acapulco, in order to intercept the Pacific passenger steamer *en route* from San Francisco to Panama and to deliver the dispatches to her captain to be forwarded to Washington. For this service Lieutenant Balch and several seaman volunteered. The distance was about nine hundred and fifty miles, down the Mexican coast from Guayamas to Acapulco, through a dangerous section of the Pacific. In an unseaworthy boat only thirteen feet long, sloop-rigged, he met the steamer on the open sea before she reached Acapulco. Four days later he arrived at that port, the steamer having proceeded

REAR-ADMIRAL GEORGE B. BALCH.

on her way to Panama. He managed so well that the dispatches were carried through to Washington in twenty-four days, a marvellous short time then. At Acapulco he concluded it would be foolhardy to attempt to sail back the whole distance in the baffling winds then prevailing. He waited there and induced the commander of the passenger steamer, that touched at that port, to hoist his boat on board and lower it again at Cape San Lucas from which point he thought he could manage to reach the *Saint Mary's* at Guayamas. Before reaching Cape San Lucas the sea became so rough that the waves breaking on board would have smashed his boat lying on the deck; so that he was forced either to take to his boat or lose her. The nearest land was seventy-two miles away. Deciding, without a thought of the danger, he had it launched, and with his brave crew entered it amid the cheers of several hundred people on the steamer they left. That evening of the eight in the boat he and one other alone were able to eat their suppers. They passed through the group of the Tres Marias and were four days in reaching Mazatlan. Owing to adverse winds and currents they were compelled to remain there until a steamer was found to tow them to Guayamas, and Lieutenant Balch reported to Captain Porter of the *Saint Mary's* to his captain's great delight, after an absence of two months, in which he had been given up as lost.

During the Civil War, George B. Balch was at first Executive officer of the United States Ship *Sabine*. While the *Sabine* was *en route* in November, 1861, for the attack on Port Royal, she fell in with the United States Transport *Governor* at night in a stormy sea with four hundred marines on board, under the command of Lieut.-Colonel Reynolds, bound also for the attack that Admiral DuPont intended to make on Port Royal; but the *Governor* was flying the Union down and was in a sinking condition. Lieutenant Balch volunteered, and asked his Captain's permission, to try to save the crew and the marines on the *Governor*. It was an awful night, the sea was raging. He called for volunteers, and many more seamen than he needed responded. In a small boat he went close to the *Governor*, and learnt in spite of the howling of the storm that she had about three hundred and seventy men on board and was slowly sinking. It was by his plan and ingenuity, the Captain of the *Sabine* having nothing to do with the matter except to keep his vessel lying to, that he was able to save all on board the *Governor* except seven marines, who not obeying his orders fell into the sea and were drowned. The transport sank under the stern of the *Sabine*. Afterwards he was given command during the war at first of the United States Ship *Pocahontas*, of the South Atlantic Squadron, and then of the United

States Ship *Pawnee*, of the Atlantic Coast blockading squadron. Admiral Du Pont held him in high esteem, as these two letters show; the first is addressed to the Assistant Secretary of the Navy, Mr. Fox:—

"FLAGSHIP WABASH.

"PORT ROYAL HARBOR, S. C., August 21st, 1862.

"MY DEAR SIR:

* * * * * * *

"I have reports from the Georgetown Division, and the *Pocahontas* is on her last legs; she must go north at once, and from there I regret to lose Balch even for a few days, nor does he want to go. A more devoted officer our Navy does not possess. With the greatest amount of energy and pluck and skill in handling guns, he is always ready, overcomes difficulties, and is ever genial and cheerful. He is a great favorite of mine.

* * * * * * *

"I am yours faithfully,

S. F. DU PONT.

"HON. G. V. FOX,

"Assistant Secretary of the Navy."[207]

"FLAGSHIP WABASH.

"PORT ROYAL HARBOR, S. C., August 21st, 1862.

"SIR: I have received your several reports of the 9th, 12th, and 15th instant, and am gratified at the manner in which you have conducted affairs in the waters of Georgetown. Your reconnaissance up the Black River was conducted not only with your usual spirit and energy, but with skill and judgment, and I have forwarded your interesting report of the same to the honorable Secretary of the Navy.

---

[207] *Official Records of the Union and Confederate Navies in the War of the Rebellion.* Series I., Volume 13, Washington, 1901, page 268.

"You will transmit to Acting Volunteer Lieutenant Baxter, of whose conduct you speak in such high terms in his management of the small prize steamer during the expedition, my warm commendation for his zealous and spirited discharge of duty.

"I regret, however, to learn the helpless condition of the *Pocahontas*. We have no means of repairing her here, and it will not do to send her north later in the season. You will, therefore, on receipt of this, proceed with her to Philadelphia without delay. The *Pembina* takes you this order and your mails, with provisions for the *Gem of the Sea*, and you will leave Acting Volunteer Lieutenant Baxter in charge until I can send a steamer.

"I regret to lose the *Pocahontas* from this station. Please say to her officers and men that I have ever noted the prompt manner in which she has always responded to any call for service.

"With regards to yourself, it is my duty and pleasure to say that you have come up to the highest requirements of the service as a commanding officer, and I trust the Department, which is already informed by me of your merits, will give you a better vessel and send you back to this station.

"Wishing you a safe run home, I am, respectfully, etc.,

"S. F. DU PONT,
"*Rear Admiral.*

"COMMANDER G. B. BALCH, U. S. S. *Pocahontas*, Senior Officer, Georgetown.

"P. S.—I regret to hear of the wound to Mr. Hill, the engineer. If still living, please express my sympathy."[208]

---

[208] *Official Records of the Union and Confederate Navies in the War of the Rebellion.* Series I., Volume 13; Washington, 1901, page 260.

When Commander Balch took his vessel into action, he always went up into the rigging to command the ship. He gave his gunners on the *Pawnee* a great deal of practice, so that they ranked among the best marksmen in the Union Navy, and after he took command of her, the Confederates called the *Pawnee* "Hell and Damnation." He took the *Pawnee* into the fighting on the Stono River, and General Terry in one of his official reports said that the *Pawnee* on one occasion, July 16th, 1863, saved his command. In that action the *Pawnee* was struck forty-six times. In the Stono River, one night the Confederates sent down ten torpedoes against the *Pawnee*. They succeeded in blowing up her launch about the middle of the night. Commander Balch, who was on the forward deck of the *Pawnee*, anxious for the safety of his ship, was deluged with water. On another occasion his executive officer, standing by his side—he was afterwards Admiral Philip and commanded the *Texas* during the war with Spain—was knocked across the deck by a splinter. On December 25th, 1863, he placed the *Pawnee* in the Keowah River in a position from which she enfiladed two Confederate batteries that had opened on the *Marblehead*, demoralized the enemy and caused him to retreat. While in command of the *Pawnee*, Commander Balch took part in the combined operations of the Naval forces under Rear Admiral Dahlgren

and the army under General Foster, in the Stono River Campaign, South Carolina, from July 3d to 11th, 1864, especially in the bombardment of Battery Pringle, on James Island, South Carolina. On February 9th, 1865, Commander Balch having under his command in addition to the *Pawnee*, the *Sonoma* and the *Daffodil*, ascended the Togoda Creek, North Edisto, South Carolina, and, engaging three Confederate batteries of eleven or twelve guns, drove the Confederates from their earth-works. In that action the *Pawnee* was hit ten times and the *Sonoma* and the *Daffodil* each twice. Shortly after this engagement, Admiral Dahlgren, in command of the South Atlantic Blockading Squadron, wrote to Secretary of the Navy Welles of Commander Balch as follows:—

"FLAGSHIP HARVEST MOON.

"GEORGETOWN, S. C., February 27, 1865.

"SIR:

"I take the occasion of Captain Balch's detachment to express to the Department my appreciation of the services of this officer.

"He has held command of the *Pawnee* during the whole period of my command of this squadron, since July, 1863, and always discharged his responsible duties in action and otherwise with alacrity, judgment and success.

"This is not my first acquaintance with Captain Balch, as he sailed on the U. S. ship *Plymouth*, under my command in 1857.

"I desire, therefore, to commend Captain Balch to the notice of the Department for meritorious service in the face of the enemy, and hope that if advancement is extended to any officers beyond the usual course, he may be included in the number.

"I have the honor to be, very respectfully, your obedient servant,

"J. A. DAHLGREN,
"*Rear Admiral.*

"Comd'g South Atlantic Blockading Squadron.
"HON. GIDEON WELLES,
"*Secretary of the Navy.*"[209]

At the end of the Civil War, George B. Balch was still only a Lieutenant; but in 1865, in view of all his meritorious services during that contest, Congress promoted him over the rank of Lieutenant Commander to that of full Commander. In 1866 he was made a Captain. In 1872, he was promoted to the rank of Commodore and given command of the United States Naval Home at Philadelphia. In 1878 he was advanced to the rank of Rear Admiral and from 1879 to 1881 he was the Superintendent in charge of the Naval Academy at Annapolis; and during his term of superintendence there were four Japanese cadets, one of whom, afterwards Admiral Uriu, took part in the battle with the Russians at Tsushima. At Annapolis he was extremely popular with the cadets and at the Commencement Exercises in 1881, as the graduating class came out

[209] *Official Records of the Union and Confederate Navies in the War of the Rebellion.* Series I., Volume 16; Washington, 1903, page 291.

of the Chapel, the cadets, though it was against the rules and the officers tried to stop them, repeatedly cheered for their Admiral. When President Garfield, along side of whom the Admiral was standing, asked the latter, "What are the cadets cheering, Admiral?" the latter had to answer, "I must say, Mister President, they are cheering me." Admiral Balch was then (1881) assigned to the command of the Pacific Squadron until he was retired January 3d, 1883, having then reached the limit of age for active service. During this cruise, his flagship was the *Pensacola*. After his flag had been saluted for the last time in the harbor of Panama, and he had transferred his command to his successor, the latter invited Admiral Balch and his family on board his flagship next day. All the officers came into the cabin to pay their respects for the last time in an official way to their late commander. In leaving the ship he was piped over the side by the Chief Boatswain. As soon as his boat had cleared the side of the vessel, though he was then a retired officer, the sailors of their own account manned the yards and cheered him, and Captain Joseph Fyffe gave him a salute of thirteen guns. His forty-six years' service in the Navy of his country, twenty-two of which were actually at sea, have been characterized in the words that were applied of old to the Chevalier Bayard of *le chevalier sans peur et sans reproche*.

It has always been a characteristic of Admiral Balch, as it was of his old chief, Admiral Dupont, that he has been quick to pay tribute to the good work of his fellow officers, whether of superior or inferior rank, and this won him loving and devoted friends in the service. A striking instance of his unselfish nature is shown by a story told by the late Admiral Edward Y. Macauley as follows:—

"During the course of the Civil War a small number of vessels of war assembled to silence and capture one of the Southern forts. Their commanders met and decided on a plan of action, and orders were given by Lieutenant Macauley, the senior officer. The action was to begin at daybreak, but shortly after dark the *Pawnee* commanded by Lieutenant Balch arrived upon the scene. Lieutenant Macauley at once went on board and reported to Lieutenant Balch as his senior officer. The latter listened attentively, discussed the plan agreed upon, and finally said, 'Lieutenant Macauley, I highly approve of the plan, and shall be pleased to serve under your orders tomorrow,' thus leaving his junior officer in command, and letting him receive the glory of the success." In narrating the incident, Admiral Macauley ended by saying, "No other officer in the whole navy but George Balch would have acted thus."

Resembling in many things his grandfather, Admiral Balch has ever had a cheerful disposi-

tion, laughing often like his *aïeul* in a frank, open way.

Upon the conclusion of his naval career in 1883, he made his home at Baltimore. There in 1884 he cast his first vote for President for Grover Cleveland, for whom he voted again in 1888 and 1892. Both in 1896 and 1900 he voted for William McKinley and against the proposition that the mints of the United States should be opened to the Free Coinage of Silver at the ratio of sixteen to one. In 1902 Admiral Balch became the oldest living officer of the United States Navy.

He married first, Julia Grace Vinsen, daughter of Charles Hungerford Vinsen of Washington, D. C.

They had five children:—

7. I. George Vinsen Balch, born November 11th, 1845, died August 7th, 1902.
7. II. Stephen Bloomer Balch.
7. III. Julia Grace Balch.
7. IV. Margaret Cassandra Balch.
7. V. Harriet Ann Balch.

He married second, Mary Ellen Booth, daughter of James Booth, Chief Justice of Delaware, and grand-daughter of James Booth, also Chief Justice of Delaware.

They had five children:—

7. VI. Mary Ellen Balch, married Frederick Edmund Sears of Boston.
7. VII. Alfred Balch, died young.

7. VIII. Anna Balch, married the Rev. George William Lay.

7. IX. Francis DuPont Balch, who is named after Admiral DuPont. He took a special course of two years in architecture, 1891–'93, at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. He married on April 26, 1905, at New York, Gertrude Leavitt, daughter of Rufus Wheeler Leavitt.

They have a son:

8. Francis Du Pont Balch, named in honor of Admiral Du Pont.

7. X. Amy Rogers Balch, married Malcolm Kenneth Gordon.

5. V. George Beall Balch of Moulton, Alabama, (see *ante*, 5 *V.*, page 345) married second, Anna Beall, who died April 25th, 1850; she was a daughter of Hezekiah Beall. They had two daughters:

6. I. Margaret Balch, who died young.

6. II. Harriet Balch, who was married to Samuel Williamson Nevin, November 27th, 1850, by the Rev. Joshua Petriken, at the home of Mann Randolph Page, of Clark County, Virginia.

They had four children:

7. I. Joseph Pierce Nevin, M. D.

7. II. David Williamson Nevin, member of the Bar of Easton, Pa.

7. III. Anna Mary Nevin.

7. IV. George Balch Nevin, born at Shippensburg, Pa., March 15th, 1859. He composed many songs: "The Hills of God," "At the Cross," "The Minster Song," "The Phantom Horseman" and the duets, "Eventide" and "Twilight." In 1888 he married Lillias C. Dean, daughter of the Rev. William Hawley Dean.[210]

5. VI. Hezekiah James Balch, was born April 16th, 1791, at Georgetown, D. C., and died unmarried March 17th, 1821. He was named after his uncle, the Rev. Hezekiah James Balch, who took a leading part in the Mecklenburg Declaration (1775).

5. VII. Thomas Bloomer Balch was born February 28th, 1793, at Georgetown, D. C. He graduated at Princeton in 1813, where he was a member of the American Whig Society,[211] and was a Presbyterian clergyman of much note. He received in 1860 from Hampden-Sidney College, Virginia, the degree of D. D. For several years he was assistant to his father in the church at Georgetown, and then he accepted a call to the church at Snow Hill, Maryland, the oldest Presbyterian Church in Amer-

---

[210] *The National Cyclopaedia of American Biography*, New York, Volume VII., page 431.

[211] *Catalogue of the American Whig Society Instituted in the College of New Jersey, 1769:* Princeton, N. J., Printed by order of the Society, 1893, page 11.

ica.[212] He frequently wrote for the *Southern Literary Messenger*,[213] *The Christian World*,[214] and published *Christianity and Literature*, 1826;[215] *The Office and Work of a Bishop*, a discourse preached at the installation of the Rev. G. Wilson McPhail as Pastor of the Presbyterian Church of Fredericksburg, Va.,

---

[212] *An Historic Church: Makemie Memorial Presbyterian Church, Snow Hill, Maryland*: Mrs. Mary M. North, Snow Hill, Maryland, 1904.

[213] *Summer in the Blue Ridge*, Volume XV., 1849, page 80; *Byron and Burns*, *ibid.*, page 165; *The Poems of Sir William Jones*, *ibid.*, page 724, etc.

[214] *The Christian World, a monthly publication for all denominations of Christians*, T. H. Stockton—Editor and Proprietor, Philadelphia. To this magazine he contributed, *Pencil Notes*, Volume III., 1843, pages 79–85, *Sketching at Richmond*, *ib.*, pages 106–111, *The Wigwam*, *ib.*, pages 217–226, *Sabbath School Hymn*, *ib.*, pages 234–235, *The Ivy Bridge*, *ib.*, pages 248–256, *The Free Church of Scotland*, *ib.*, pages 256–7, *Wyanoke*, Volume IV., 1844, pages 94–97, *Ford of the Shenandoah*, *ib.*, pages 110–113, *Glenochre*, Volume V., 1845, pages 24–26, *Woburn*, *ib.*, pages 94–98, *Windsor*, *ib.*, pages 99–103, etc.

[215] *Christianity and Literature: in a Series of Discourses.* By T. B. Balch, Pastor of a Presbyterian Church in Snow-Hill, Md., Philadelphia: 1826. The contents of this book is as follows:

1. *The Temptations of Literature:* "Let no man say, when he is tempted, I am tempted of God: for God cannot be tempted with evil, neither tempteth he any man." *James* i. 13.

2. *The Literature of the Scriptures:* "Search the Scriptures." *John* v. 39.

3. *Obstacles to the Piety of Literary Men:* "For the Jews require a sign, and the Greeks seek after wisdom. But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumbling block, and unto the Greeks foolishness; but unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God." 1st *Corinthians*, chap. i. 22, 23, 24.

4. *Christianity Miscellaneously applied:* "Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world and not after Christ." *Colossians*, ii. 8.

5. *The Relation of Christianity to Polite Literature:* "For all the Athenians and strangers which were there, spent their time in nothing else but either to tell or to hear some new thing." *Acts*, xvii. 21.

6. *The superior Value of Christianity to Literature:* "Again, the

June 12th, 1842;[216] *The Ringwood Discourses*, 1850;[217] *Reminiscences of Georgetown, D. C.*, 1859; etc.

He was fond of geography, took a great interest in Liberia, and was an active member of the Colonization Society. Daniel Webster said of Dr. Balch that he was the most learned man he had ever known.

Kingdom of Heaven is like unto a merchant-man seeking goodly pearls; who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it." *Matt.* xiii. 45, 46.

7. *Humility an Ornament to Literary Men:* "Verily I say unto you, Whosoever shall not receive the Kingdom of God as a little child, shall in no wise enter therein." *Luke*, xviii. 17.

8. *The Church a Field for Literary Men:* "For after all these things do the Gentiles seek. But seek ye first the Kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you." *Matt.* vi. 32, 33.

[216] Printed at the office of the *Virginia Herald*, Fredericksburg, 1842.

[217] *The Ringwood Discourses; or Sermons on Various Subjects.* By T. B. Balch, A. M., Author of Discourses on Christianity and Literature. Hagerstown, Md., New York, and Philadelphia. 1850. This book is made up of nine sermons, upon the following subjects:—

1. *The Farmer in Rural Pursuits:* "But Cain was a tiller of the ground." *Genesis* iv. 2.

2. *The Christian Merchant:* "He is a Merchant." *Hosea*, xii. 7.

3. *The Christian Barrister:* "Bring Zenas the lawyer." *Titus*, iii. 13.

4. *Church Extension:* "Enlarge the place of thy tent." *Isa.* liv. 2.

5. *Moses and Goethe:* "Forty years long was I grieved with this generation." *Psalms* xcv. 10.

6. *An Outline of Christian Reading:* "Give attendance to reading." 1 *Timothy* iv. 10.

7. *Mizpah:* "And Mizpah; for he said, the Lord watch between me and thee, when we are absent one from another." *Gen.* xxxi. 49.

8. *The Agency of Providence in small Events:* "Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? and one shall not fall to the ground without your Father." *Matthew* x. 29.

9. *The Patriarch's Vision:* A Discourse delivered at the dedication of the Central Presbyterian Church, Washington City, Sabbath morning, May 31, 1846: "For this is none other but the House of God, and this is the Gate of Heaven." *Gen.* xxviii. 17.

On October 5th, 1873, the Rev. William Brown, D. D. read before the Synod of Virginia the following *Memorial* of Dr. Balch, which was published the same year.[218]

"Thomas Bloomer Balch was born in Georgetown, D. C., February 28th, 1793. * * * He was prepared for college in the school in Georgetown taught by the Rev. David Wiley.

"He was graduated from the College of New Jersey in 1813. He united with the Presbyterian Church of Leesburg, under the pastoral care of the Rev. John Mines, with whom he afterwards studied theology for a year.

"In the fall of 1814 he entered Princeton Seminary where he remained about two years and a half. He was licensed to preach by the Presbytery of Baltimore, October 31st, 1816, and was afterwards ordained by the same Presbytery, December 11th, 1817, as an Evangelist.

"From the spring of 1817, to the fall of 1819, he preached as assistant to his father, who was then pastor of the Church at Georgetown, D. C. He was installed pastor of the Church at Snow Hill, Rehoboth, and Pitts Creek, Md., July 19th, 1820, where he spent nearly ten years in happy and useful labor. In 1824, by the action of the Synod of Philadelphia, he and his Churches were included in the resuscitated Presbytery of Lewes. He continued in Maryland as pastor of those Churches before named until 1829, after which he lived four years in Fairfax County, Va., preaching as he had

---

[218] *Minutes of the Synod of Virginia. From 1866 to 1878.* Wytheville, Virginia, Volume II., page 487.

opportunity. He then removed to Prince William County, Va. and supplied for two years the Churches of Warrenton and Greenwich. He was received from the Lewes Presbytery into the Winchester Presbytery April 28th, 1836.

"For nine months he supplied the Church at Fredericksburg, Va., then Nokesville Church four years, and Greenwich Church (Prince William's), Va., ten years. Mr. Balch was never settled as a pastor after he left Maryland, but preached in many places, and performed a large amount of miscellaneous work.

"He had a fine literary taste, wrote much on many subjects and published several volumes. At the time of his death a series of articles was in the course of publication in one of our religious Journals, under the title of *Letters of an Octogenarian*, containing many interesting reminiscences of deceased Presbyterian Ministers.

"The death of this good man was at Greenwich, Prince William County, which had been his home for many years. He was in the eighty-seventh year of his age. His strength had gradually declined for a long time, and his final illness lasted about three weeks. To the last his mind was clear, and he uttered many expressions of faith and hope up to his last breath.

"For some time before his death he was the oldest living Alumnus of Princeton Seminary.

"He was married August 21st, 1820, to Susan Carter of Fairfax County, Va., the daughter of Charles Carter of Shirley, and who departed this life about six months before the death of her husband. 'They were lovely and pleasant in their lives and in their death they were not divided.'

"Our venerable brother was a man of sincere piety and of excellent theological and literary attainments. His memory was so retentive as to be a perpetual wonder to all who knew him. His sermons were often uncommonly rich and interesting. His disposition was thoroughly amiable and his social qualities were so eminently attractive that his presence was hailed with delight by all classes of society, and those of every age."

At the ordination of Dr. Balch, the ordination sermon was preached by the Rev. Dr. Muir of Alexandria, Virginia. It was entitled:

"*The Call; a Sermon, Preached before the Presbytery of Baltimore, at the Ordination of The Rev. Thomas B. Balch, in Georgetown, D. C., on Thursday, 11th Dec. 1817.*[219] By James Muir, D. D., one of the Ministers of Alexandria. Published by request. With an Appendix by the Rev. James Carnahan, detailing the proceedings on that occasion. [The expense of printing is defrayed by Members of the Presbyterian Church in Georgetown, and the whole proceeds of the sale appropriated as a DONATION to the *Theological Seminary* at Princeton, New Jersey.]

"The sermon was preached on the text of Ephesians 3, 8. 'Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ.' "

The appendix to the sermon is as follows:

"'After the preceding Sermon was delivered, the Rev. Andrew Hunter, who according to appointment pre-

[219] Georgetown, D. C.; Printed by W. A. Rind and Co., 1818.

sided on the occasion, arose and stated to a numerous congregation assembled the proceedings of the Presbytery, preparatory to the solemn transaction on which they were entering. That after a careful examination as to his acquaintance with experimental religion; as to his knowledge of philosophy, theology, ecclesiastical history, the languages in which the holy scriptures were originally written; and as to his knowledge of the constitution, the rules and principles of the government and discipline of the Church; the candidate had been licensed about twelve months ago to preach the Gospel: That having received from the churches a good report, and having by a farther examination given full satisfaction as to his ability to teach, the Presbytery had resolved to ordain and set apart Thomas B. Balch to the work of the Gospel Ministry, with full power to preach and administer the sacraments of the New Testament. The presiding Bishop also stated the nature of the ordinance, and the authority which Christ gave to his Apostles and to their successors to ordain men to the office of the sacred ministry; and presented to the audience an impressive view of the solemnity of the transaction. Then addressing himself to the candidate, he proposed to him the following questions prescribed by the directory of the Presbyterian Church.

'"1st. Do you believe the Scriptures of the Old and New Testament to be the word of God, the only infallible rule of faith and practice?

'"2d. Do you sincerely receive and adopt the confession of faith of this Church, as containing the system of doctrine taught in the Holy Scriptures?

"'3d. Do you approve of the government and discipline of the Presbyterian Church, as prescribed in the form of government and discipline of the Presbyterian Church in these United States?

"'4th. Do you promise subjection to your brethren in the Lord?

"'5th. Have you been induced, as far as you know your own heart, to seek the office of the holy ministry from love to God and a sincere desire to promote his glory in the Gospel of his Son?

"'6th. Do you promise to be zealous and faithful in maintaining the truths of the Gospel and the purity and peace of the Church, whatever persecution or opposition may arise unto you on this account?

"'7th. Do you engage to be faithful and diligent in the exercise of all private and personal duties, which become you as a Christian and a minister of the Gospel; as well as in all relative duties, and the public duties of your office, endeavoring to adorn the profession of the Gospel by your conversation; walking with exemplary piety before the flock over which God shall make you overseer?'

"The candidate having answered these questions in the affirmative, kneeled in a place prepared for the purpose; and the presiding Bishop, by an appropriate and impressive prayer with the laying on of the hands of the Presbytery, according to the Apostolic example, solemnly ordained him to the holy office of the Gospel Ministry. Prayer being ended, he arose from his knees; and the presiding minister first, and afterwards all the

members of the Presbytery, took him by the right hand—saying, 'We give you the right hand of fellowship to take part in this ministry with us.'

"The Rev. Doctor Inglis, who had been appointed to perform this duty, gave a solemn and affectionate charge to the newly ordained Bishop—exhorting him 'before God and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom, to preach the word; to be instant in season and out of season, to reprove, rebuke, exhort, and with all long suffering and doctrine.' Observing that the young man, deeply affected, was ready to sink under the weight and awful responsibility of the office with which he was invested, Dr. Inglis, in a very appropriate and encouraging manner, directed his thoughts to that almighty arm which was pledged for his support; to those divine consolations which he might expect in the faithful discharge of his duty, and to that imperishable crown of glory which the Lord the righteous Judge shall, on the last and great day, bestow on those who have consecrated their lives and their talents to his service and the best interests of men. The whole service was concluded with prayer and singing a hymn.

"We have seldom witnessed a more solemn and interesting transaction. All the exercises of the day were conducted with becoming solemnity; and the congregation, which was numerous and respectable, appeared deeply interested. The audience was forcibly struck and felt a lively sympathy with the unaffected emotions of the venerable father of the young man ordained. When he gave his son the right hand of fellowship, unable to utter a word, the tears that started from his eyes indicated a heart too full for utterance. Mr.

Balch saw his son, in that Church in which he himself had preached above forty years, consecrating himself to the service of the God of his father.

"If the Patriarch Jacob fainted with joy when he heard that his son was governor over all the land of Egypt, what ought to be the feelings of a Christian Parent on seeing a son invested with an office, the faithful discharge of which shall be rewarded with a crown of glory as brilliant as the stars and as durable as eternity."

Dr. Balch died February 14th, 1878, at "Macomb Manse," near Greenwich, Virginia. He married at Salona, Fairfax County, Virginia, Susan Carter, daughter of Charles Beale Carter of "Shirley" on the James River, who was an uncle of General Robert E. Lee, Confederate States Army.[220] Charles

[220] See *Robert E. Lee and the Southern Confederacy 1807–1870*, by Henry Alexander White, New York, 1897, page 16.

"When we trace the Carter line backward from Charles of the fourth generation, we find his father, John Carter, eldest son of the house, becoming the master of Shirley plantation through marriage with the heiress, Elizabeth Hill. This John was son of Robert Carter of Lancaster, familiarly known as 'King Carter' of the realm of the upper Rappahannock river; Robert's father was the emigrant John who sat as a member of the Virginia House of Burgesses as early as 1649. 'King Carter' played his part in the public service as Speaker of the Burgesses, Rector of William and Mary College, and Governor of the Colony of Virginia. A large stone in former time stood at the east end of Christ Church in Lancaster County to speak of him as 'An honourable man, who by noble endowments and pure morals gave lustre to his gentle birth. * * * Possessed of ample wealth, blamelessly acquired, he built and endowed at his own expense this sacred edifice a single monument of his piety toward God. He furnished it richly. Entertaining his friends kindly, he was neither a prodigal nor a parsimonious host.' It was the daughter of this house of Carter who became the mother of Robert E. Lee, and her prayers and tender admonitions were the forces that cast his growing character in that mould of noble self control that made the child the father of the man."

Beale Carter (his sister was General Lee's mother) married his double first cousin, Anne Beale Carter, also a cousin of General Lee.

Dr. and Mrs. Balch had eleven children:—

6. I. Annie Carter Balch.

6. II. Elizabeth Macomb Balch.

6. III. Robert Monroe Balch, Lieutenant-Colonel in the Confederate States Army; he served under General Forrest; he was in the Western Army, and at the fight at Fort Donelson had his horse shot under him, but mounted another.[221]

6. IV. Charles Carter Balch; he was a Captain in the Confederate States Army and served under General Forrest; he was at the battle of Fort Donelson.

6. V. Harriet Balch; died young.

6. VI. Chalmas Page Balch.

6. VII. Linnaeus Balch, died young.

6. VIII. William Cowper Balch, } Twins.
6. IX. Felix Neff Balch, }

6. X. Mary Landon Balch; died in 1899.

6. XI. Julia Ringwood Balch; she died at Washington, August 25th, 1905.

5. IX. Ann Eleanora Balch (see *ante*, page 205) was born at Georgetown, D. C., August 14th, 1799. She married Captain James C. Wilson.

---

[221] "Balch's (R. M.) Cavalry. See Tennessee Troops, Confederate. 18th Battalion." *Miscellaneous Documents of the House of Representatives for the 2d session of the 49th Congress*, Vol. 11, page 904.

5. X. Elizabeth Maria Balch (see *ante*, page 205) was born at Georgetown, D. C., April 15th, 1802. She married the Rev. Septinis Tustin, of the Presbyterian Church, at one time Chaplain of the United States Senate.

5. XI. Jane Whann Balch (see *ante*, page 205) was born at Georgetown, D. C., February 14th, 1805, and died March 5th, 1884. She married the Rev. William Williamson. They lived at Washington, D. C. They had:—

6. I. Jane L. Williamson, who married Samuel Harrison Howell.

4. VII. James Balch (see *ante*, page 104) was born on Deer Creek, Harford County, Maryland, on December 25th, 1750, and died in Sullivan County, Indiana, January 12th, 1821. He was licensed to preach by the Presbytery of Abington in 1787.[222] In 1798, he was still a member of the Presbytery of Abington.[223] But by 1803 he was transferred to the Presbytery of Cumberland.[224] He was one of the first trustees of Greenville College, Tennessee.[225] Over his final resting place in the Presby-

[222] "The Presbytery of Abington report that they had licensed Mr. James Balch to preach the gospel." The Synod of New York and Philadelphia, May, 1787. *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 531.

[223] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 137.

[224] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, 1803, page 32.

[225] *Sketches of North Carolina, Biographical and Historical*, by the Rev. William Henry Foote, New York, 1846, page 314.

terian Cemetery near Graysville, a square pillar of marble was placed with this inscription, "Sacred to the memory of Rev. James Balch, who departed this life January 12th, 1821, aged seventy years and eighteen days." Below is the sentence, "Removed from near the site of Hopewell Church, west of Turman's Creek by a Committee of the Vincennes Presbytery, October 19th, 1880." About 1772 he married Susanna Lavinia Garrison, who was born February 13th, 1758, and died in 1834.

They had ten children:—

5. I. Amos P. Balch.
5. II. Ann Wilkes Balch.
5. III. Martha Balch.
5. IV. Mary Balch.
5. V. Elizabeth R. Balch.
5. VI. Ethelinda Balch.
5. VII. Albinda Bloomer Balch.
5. VIII. Calvin Balch.
5. IX. John C. Balch.
5. X. Jonathan Edward Balch.

3. II. John Balch, (see *ante*, page 103) "of Baltimore County and Province of Maryland, Planter," the second son of Hezekiah Balch and his first wife, Margaret Bloomer, was born in Saint George's Parish, Maryland, January 23rd, 1715–16.[226] He settled on Deer Creek, Harford County, Maryland,

---

[226] *Saint George's Parish Records.*

in 1739.[227] In 1763 he removed to North Carolina. The name of his wife is unknown; they had one son: (4. I.) Hezekiah Balch.

4. I. Hezekiah Balch,[228] was born on Deer Creek, in 1741. He graduated at Princeton College, receiving the A. M. degree in 1766; in the same class was his first cousin, the Rev. Hezekiah James Balch. After graduating from Princeton, Hezekiah Balch studied for the Ministry of the Presbyterian Church. On May 17th, 1769, New Castle Presbytery reported to the Synod that it had licensed to preach as a candidate Hezekiah Balch,[229] and the following year, May 16th, 1770, Hanover Presbytery reported that they had ordained him.[230] He was a representative from Orange Presbytery at the Synod held at Philadelphia in 1774.[231] The following year he represented Donegall Presbytery at the Synod at New York.[232] In 1781, he likewise represented Donegall Presbytery at the Synod at New York.[233] The following year, 1782, the Presby-

[227] October 1st, 1738, sale of land on Deer Creek to John Balch of Baltimore County, *Liber E. I. No. 5*, page 440, and Dec. 14th, 739, *Liber L. G. No. B.*, page 16.

[228] *Princeton College during the Eighteenth Century*, by Samuel Davies Alexander, an alumnus, New York, 1872, page 104.

[229] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 390.

[230] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 401.

[231] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 449.

[232] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 461.

[233] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 489.

tery of Donegall reported to the Synod that they had dismissed the Rev. Hezekiah Balch to join the Presbytery of Hanover.[234]

In 1785, he removed to Tennessee. There he did a great deal for the cause of education, founded Greenville College, of which he was the first President,[235] and was the Pastor of the First Presbyterian Church of Greenville.[236] In 1806, he received the degree of D. D. from Williams College, Massachusetts. He died in 1810. Dr. Sprague gives the following sketch of the Rev. Hezekiah Balch, D. D.:—[237]

"He was admitted as a student of the College of New Jersey, at the recommendation of the Rev. John Rodgers, (afterwards Dr. Rodgers of New York,) and was graduated there in 1766. For a considerable time after his graduation, he was engaged in teaching a school in Fauquier County, Va. He was licensed to preach by the Presbytery of Newcastle between the meetings of Synod in 1768 and 1769. Soon afterwards we find him labouring as a missionary within the bounds of the Presbytery of Hanover, then reaching from the Potomac indefinitely towards the Pacific. For the increase

---

[234] *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, page 493.

[235] Presbytery of Union: Hezekiah Balch, President of Greenville College. *Minutes of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church*, 1789–1820, page 167.

[236] *Historical Sketch of the Presbyterian Churches of Emmittsburg and Piney Creek* (1761–1876), by William Simonton, Pastor, 1876, pages 20–21, 50–51.

[237] *Annals of the American Pulpit; or Commemorative Notices of Distinguished American Clergymen of various Denominations*, by William B. Sprague, D. D., New York, 1858, Vol. III, page 308.

of his usefulness, this Presbytery ordained him as an evangelist, on the 8th of March, 1770. The Synod of New York and Philadelphia, at their next sessions, constituted him and six other ordained ministers, the Presbytery of Orange.

"It was during his ministrations in North Carolina that Mr. Balch first made his acquaintance with the young lady who became his wife. Her name was Hannah Lewis. * * * They had six children,—four sons and two daughters. The eldest daughter became the wife of the Rev. (afterwards Dr.) Robert Henderson. After the death of Mrs. Balch,—about the year 1808,—he was married to Ann Lucky, a native of Pennsylvania, who removed to Tennessee in 1795 or 1796, and who was also a lady of excellent character. Her father was Robert Lucky, a native of New York. She died in Jonesborough, in 1835, aged seventy-two, having had no children.

"Mr. Balch felt encouraged to bestow a portion of his labours on some of the destitute parts of Pennsylvania, and with a view to this, obtained a dismission from Orange Presbytery to join that of Donegal, between the meetings of Synod in 1774 and 1775. For about one year he supplied the Presbyterians in the village of York. After his return to the Presbytery of Hanover, which had ordained him, he received more frequent notices of the growing demands for ministerial services among the numerous Presbyterian settlers in the part of North Carolina, West of the Allegany mountains. Having made no small proof of his ministry, from 1769 to 1784, on the Atlantic slope near their Eastern side, and being urged by the zeal and enterprise of the Gospel pioneer to present himself where most needed, he formed

his determination to cross the mountains, and cast in his lot with the people of God in the West.

"It was not much before the date of the charter of the Presbytery of Abingdon in 1785,—the first on the Western waters, within what is now Tennessee,—in which his name appears with those of two other petitioners and original members, the Rev. Messrs. Samuel Doak and Charles Cummings—that he removed with his family into the vast Western wilderness; where there roamed at large, in untamed ferocity, the Cherokee Indians,—furious with jealousy of the white population, that were then rapidly taking possession of their favourite hunting grounds. Here Mr. Balch, by reason of his age and experience, was called to take part in organizing churches. Among these was the First Presbyterian Church in Greenville, of which, ere long, he became the pastor; and it grew under his ministrations to be the largest in the Valley of the Holston and Tennessee. His most frequent exchanges of labour, as well as his most intimate consultations at this period, were with the Rev. Samuel Doak, who had settled somewhat earlier at Salem Church, Washington County; where he had opened a private classical school, which was the germ of one of the most important institutions that have been established in the South West.

"It was mainly through the combined influence of these two brethren, that Dr. Watts' Version of the Psalms was introduced, instead of the former one by Rouse, into use in the churches in that region. The measure had to encounter violent opposition, and was not a little prejudiced by the indiscreet zeal of some of its advocates. Mr. Balch preached a Sermon on the subject, at the opening of the Presbytery of Abingdon,

in October, 1786, which produced a great effect at the time, and which was published seven years afterwards, under the title—'Gospel Liberty in singing the praises of God, stated, illustrated, and urged.' This sermon, with other concurrent means that were used, wrought a gradual change in public opinion, until the object which the Sermon contemplated was finally accomplished.

"There was one procedure in which Mr. Balch and Mr. Doak were associated, after their removal to Tennessee, which was at once too remarkable and too characteristic to be omitted. By reason of very high waters keeping their brethren of the Presbytery away from them at the time and place of one of their fall sessions, they found themselves alone, except some few elders. The meeting was specially important, as the Presbytery had expected to license a candidate, whose trials had almost been gone through, and whose labours were impatiently called for by deplorable destitutions. After waiting in vain for absent brethren, they united with the elders present in prayer for Divine direction; and when they had held a free and satisfactory consultation, they opened and constituted as a Presbytery; finished the remaining trials of the candidate; licensed him to preach the Gospel, and appointed his labours for the next six months, or in other words, till the next stated sessions of Presbytery. They made a faithful record of their proceedings, and pledged themselves to each other, under consent and order of Presbytery, to attend together the next meeting of Synod; (for it was before the formation of the General Assembly;) submit their Records for review; meet any censure for irregularity; and state what they believed were the justifiable reasons of their procedure. A journey of six hundred miles on

horseback brought them to Philadelphia, seasonably for the meeting of Synod. When the Committee, charged with the review of their Records, were called upon to report, the speaker and his fellow reviewer were thrown into such a convulsive and half suppressed titter, at what they regarded the wild vagrancy of their brethren in the backwoods, that they could scarcely compose themselves sufficiently to make an announcement of the irregularity. But though the Assembly were at first prepared to condemn the procedure, yet, upon hearing Mr. Balch's full and pathetic explanation, they were perfectly satisfied, and dismissed the matter with the most kindly spirit, and without a disapproving word.

"Mr. Balch identified himself with the political troubles growing out of the formation of the State of Franklin. In consequence of this, he fell into a controversy with the Rev. William Graham of Virginia, who addressed a letter to him through the press, which was made the ground of an ecclesiastical process against the writer before the Old Synod; and when the General Assembly was formed, the cause fell under the jurisdiction of the Synod of Virginia.

"About the year 1793, Mr. Balch had conceived, matured, and communicated to some of his friends, the plan of Greenville College. When the Territorial Legislature met in 1794, he applied for a Charter, and the granting of it—by which also he was constituted President and *ex-officio* a Trustee—was the first act of that Body; and he was allowed to have a plat of ground for the College near his own dwelling. When a copy of the Charter was delivered to Mr. Balch, an influential member of the Assembly said to him—'Now, Sir, you will have to travel and collect funds to put the College

in operation, as George Whitefield did for his Orphan House.' Mr. Balch replied that he had indulged no other expectation.

"The next year, (1795,) he visited New England to collect funds for the new institution; and in that visit may be said to have originated a theological controversy which gave a somewhat polemical character to his whole future life. The full history of that controversy is to be gathered only from the Records of the different Ecclesiastical Bodies in which it was carried on; but some of the most prominent facts in connection with it will be found in the subjoined communication from the venerable Dr. Coffin, whose testimony will not be impaired, in the view of any body who knew him, by the fact that he is understood to have sympathized somewhat with Mr. Balch in his theological speculations. As his account, however, terminates with Mr. Balch's being acquitted with an admonition from the General Assembly in 1798, it may not be amiss to state that this was by no means the termination of the controversy. Previous to his trial before the Assembly, a civil suit had been instituted with a view to dispossess him and his adherents of the meeting house; and while this was pending, it was attempted to eject him from the pulpit by force. In the midst of a most tumultuous scene that occurred the Sabbath after his return from the Assembly, he retired with a large part of his congregation to a wide spreading tree, a short distance from the church, and there read the papers relating to his trial and acquittal by the Assembly. He subsequently per: formed Divine service there for several months; and such was his attachment to the spot that he intimated a wish to be buried there, provided it could be done

without impropriety. Though his congregation was now divided into two, the greater part remained with him, and, as might have been expected, regarded both him and his theological system with increased favour. The decision of the law-suit restored the meeting house to him and his congregation, as the ascertained majority,—and in due time they resumed their worship in it.

"In October following his trial before the Assembly, several charges were brought against him, before the Synod of the Carolinas, by a reference from the Union Presbytery,—the most grave of which was that he had acted with duplicity in making certain statements after his return from the General Assembly that were inconsistent with what he had said before that Body. Most of the charges were pronounced unsustained, but the one just mentioned was considered as proved, in consequence of which Mr. Balch was suspended from his office as a minister, until the Presbytery of Union, to which he belonged, having become satisfied of his penitence, should see fit to restore him. At the same time the sentence of suspension from the office of elder and from the Communion of the Church was pronounced upon four of the elders who had appeared against Mr. Balch, 'for the impropriety and irregularity of their course.' Both parties expressed their submission to the judgment of Synod, and received a suitable admonition from the Moderator.

"In 1800, Mr. Balch and several others, were constituted, by their own request, a New Presbytery, by the name of Greenville Presbytery. The same year he preferred a charge before the Synod against the Presbytery of Abingdon for having ordained his successor in the Mount Bethel Church, before they had settled their

pecuniary accounts with himself, and for having ordained a man of questionable orthodoxy.

"The degree of Doctor of Divinity was conferred upon him by Williams College in 1806.

"When the Rev. (afterwards Dr.) Charles Coffin took up his permanent residence in Tennessee, about the beginning of the year 1805, he became associated with Dr. Balch in the labours of both the pulpit and the College. Dr. Balch continued to labour in both relations as much and as long as he was able, though for the last two or three years of his life, his increasing infirmities rendered him incapable of severe or continuous exertion. He died after a brief but most distressing illness in April, 1810.

"It has already been stated that one of Dr. Balch's daughters was married to the Rev. Robert Henderson. She died, in her twenty-fifth year, on the 11th of March, 1795; and, according to the account of her last hours, written by her husband and published in the New York *Missionary Magazine* of 1802, there has rarely been exhibited a more strongly marked scene of Christian triumph. Her father, who arrived just in time to see her die, asked her several questions designed to bring out the state of her mind in regard to his favourite doctrine of 'unconditional submission;' and he expressed himself perfectly satisfied with her answers.

"It is now (1857) several years since the last of Dr. Balch's children deceased. Several of his grandchildren entered the ministry, but not till some time after his death. His adopted son, the nephew and foster-child of his second wife,—Seth J. W. Lucky, was graduated at Greenville College; has been, for several years, on the Bench in Tennessee, first as a Circuit Judge, and now

as a Chancellor, and is not only an exemplary and influential member, but an active and useful elder, of the Presbyterian Church in Jonesboro'. It was in his house that the second Mrs. Balch spent her last years."

"FROM THE REV. CHARLES COFFIN, D. D.,[238]

"PRESIDENT OF GREENVILLE COLLEGE.

"GREENE COUNTY, TENN., March 30, 1850.

"REV. AND DEAR BROTHER: I have been casting about me for some time to see if I could not find some person more competent to do justice to the character of the Rev. Dr. Hezekiah Balch than myself; but time has made such desolating work with his contemporaries that I am almost ready to say that I am the only one left to testify concerning him. I have, therefore, determined to make an effort to comply with your request; though, in doing so, I feel bound to say that I am quite aware that I am undertaking a task of no small delicacy. Dr. Balch, more than almost any other man of his day, was involved in controversy; and was called to answer for alleged theological errors at each of the several Church Courts to which he was amenable. His most vigorous opposers were undoubtedly conscientious and excellent men, and I would not even seem to cast a shade upon their memories. But it is no reflection upon either him or them to admit that both were fallible, and *that* doubtless must appear in what I shall feel obliged to say in performing the service you have allotted to me. I cherish Dr. Balch's memory with affectionate veneration, and am glad that you propose to make him the subject of an enduring

[238] This letter, written at the request of the Rev. Dr. Sprague, is also published in his book.

record. I knew him most intimately, having lived several years under his roof, and my family with me the latter and larger part of the time.

"My first sight of this interesting man was in the summer of 1795, in the town of Newburyport, my native place, where I was then engaged in the study of Theology. The South Western Territory had recently been organized. At his suggestion, the charter of Greenville College had been granted by its first legislative Act, but without any provision of funds to enable him, as the President, to make it useful. After a successful visit to Charleston, S. C., to procure donations and endowments, he passed through the Middle and Eastern States, as far as Portland in Maine; and I afterwards found that both the President and Board of Trustees were well satisfied with the amount that was obtained. I heard him preach twice in different churches, and enjoyed his conversation at my father's house. His personal appearance was prepossessing,—with a dark coloured, lustrous, commanding eye, a full habit and erect frame of body; and his address was animating and full of benignity, both in the house of God and the private circle. His preaching was evangelical, hearty and impressive. The general bearing of his manner fastened itself on my memory as being well designated by the following words in his first sermon:—'I now come to the application, which I ever think to be the life of preaching.' When he called the next day, my father, after making his donation, spread before him on the table Dr. Morse's first large map containing the South Western Territory; thinking to gain from him, as he did, some further knowledge of his country's Geography. I was myself very much in-

terested while the President pointed out the ranges of the mountains, the beautiful valley of his residence, its water courses and fertile grounds; and described the climate as one of the most salubrious and delightful upon earth. The early concern for a College, amid the growing population soon to become a State, appeared to me a noble imitation of the patriotic care which made the founding of Northern Colleges so much a primary object. In about a year from that time, the new State of Tennessee was organized. In the spring of 1799, I was licensed to preach. A providential affliction in my eyes had been severely troublesome to me for two or three preceding years. I had suffered much from the wintry storms and piercing winds of the North, and from the overpowering reflection of the dazzling sunbeams from the snow and ice. A milder climate for the cold season was recommended by physicians. A conviction had likewise fastened upon my mind that some months might usefully be occupied in travelling, and gaining knowledge of the diversified population of our extensive Union, which might be followed with some important advantages through life. My recollections of President Balch were lively and pleasing. I passed the greater part of the subsequent winter preaching in the South, and wrote Mr. Balch a letter, intimating that I had some thoughts of visiting him in the spring. In his answer, he urged me to cross the mountains, and made the following somewhat startling communication:—'Since my return from New England, Sir, I have been cited to ecclesiastical trial for errors imputed to me by my prosecutors, sixteen times before Presbytery; four times before Synod; and once before the General Assembly. I had not far short of

one hundred scholars in the College. But my interruptions and absences to attend my trials arrested the progress of the institution. The students were obliged to go home. Nevertheless, Sir, all that I have suffered has only served to confirm me more and more in the belief that what I have contended for is God's Bible truth, and will stand forever. My prosecutors have never yet taught me the doctrine of fear. Come over, Sir, and I hope God will so order it that you will fall in love with our country.' My heart, I must confess, grew warm towards the man.

"On the 11th of July, 1800, I rode up to his gate; and when he had ascertained my name, he said with tears filling his eyes—'I believe, Sir, there is a God in Heaven who hears prayer.' In subsequent conversations he informed me that, long before his Northern journey, he had felt a confidence that clearer light than he had attained on the cardinal doctrines of grace, as to their agreement and harmony with each other, their fitness to honour God and feed and bless his people, was in all probability to be found somewhere; and that he had often thought he would account it but a small sacrifice to take his staff, and travel on foot to the ends of the earth, to find the man who could so unfold the mind of the Spirit, contained in the Sacred Scriptures, as to pour the desired light into his soul. He said it was impossible for him to travel under the rare advantages of improving conversation with the most enlightened ministers and other Christians, which he enjoyed, while soliciting for the College, without an earnest spirit of theological inquiry. 'This,' said he, 'the great and good Dr. Green of Philadelphia did much to invigorate and direct by his kind, brotherly counsels to

me on my way to the North, for which I have ever been thankful. He told me that I would find, as he did, in the Northern States, a class of ministers, some of whose religious sentiments were considered erroneous, while their main tenets were unquestionably Calvinistic. He advised me by all means to become acquainted with these men. 'I do not myself agree with them,' he said, 'in every thing; but in some things which are questioned, I know they are right. I found reason to esteem them as among the most laborious students, faithful pastors, successful preachers, and instructive writers in all New England.' 'Now,' added Mr. Balch, and often did he take occasion to repeat it in my ears,—'these were the very ministers who most assisted me to obtain donations; and who afforded me, by conversations and books, my principal helps in the investigation of religious truth.' He informed me that he preached, of course, boldly and explicitly, on his return, his most illustrative thoughts on Gospel doctrines, as had ever been his way; keeping nothing back of the whole counsel of God; fully persuaded that he had learned better to understand it by his opportunities of receiving additional light. 'I took pains,' said he, 'to assure ministers and people, privately and publicly, that I believed more firmly, because more intelligently, than ever before, the cardinal doctrines of free and sovereign grace, which I had so long preached; but I blessed God He had led me into a clearer knowledge of them all in their inspired meaning and essential harmony; that I felt myself able to unfold them, and defend them, in a more consistent manner, and to preach the truth on one topic, without taking it back again, when discussing another.'

"As to the views which rendered Dr. Balch obnoxious

to many of his brethren, it is impossible, in so brief a space as is allotted to me in this letter, to go into detail. It will perhaps be sufficient to say that he sympathized with that class of New England divines, who were and still are known as Hopkinsians. His most familiar and favourite sentiment was that all true holiness, both in God and his intelligent creatures, consists in impartial, disinterested good-will, love or benevolence to all beings capable of happiness; and a benevolent complacency in the moral excellence of all who possess this essential qualification for happiness, and for promoting its diffusion. The first impression which his preaching made upon his church and large congregation after his return from the North and East, as I received abundant evidence from many of them, was very generally favourable. But alarms were gradually excited among his people, and in due time, when he thought the case required it, he was heard by his Presbytery,—that of Abingdon; before whom he stated what were his views of Divine truth, which he fully believed were vindicated both by the Bible and the Confession of Faith. So satisfied were the majority of that body that he embraced nothing heretical, or dangerous to the souls of men, that they passed a vote to this effect; and agreed individually to do what they could to quiet any alarms existing among the people.

"But so dissatisfied were the minority with this procedure, and so little did they expect any appeal could serve their cause, that they withdrew from the connection of the Synod and General Assembly, and constituted themselves an independent Presbytery. At their return to order, with due acknowledgment to Synod of the incautious step they had taken, the Presbytery of

Union, composed of Mr. Balch and those ministers of Abingdon Presbytery, who had not taken ground against him, was constituted; and with what spirit, the very name by which they chose every where to be known, sufficiently and very truly indicates. Yet the alarms kept up by the remaining members of the Presbytery of Abingdon, extended to those who had removed from Washington and Greene Counties, to inviting lands below, within the bounds of Union. Yet the better spirit ultimately prevailed. Even the venerable fathers themselves, who saw most to disapprove in Mr. Balch's sentiments, and felt called upon to oppose them most sternly, were too good not to welcome the peaceful gales from Heaven, as they drew near to the promised land of light, love, and concord. They were able and faithful men, who held with intelligence and tenacity the views in which they had been educated; who rendered much important service to the Church in their day; and whom to know was surely to venerate and love. The opposing and the opposed, have, it is believed, already joined together in the never-ending song before the throne,—'Not unto us, but unto thy name be the glory,' Oh God of our salvation!

"In regard to Mr. Balch's most important trial at the bar of the General Assembly, representing the whole Presbyterian Church before its division, I have not one-tenth part of the desirable space for rendering the honour most justly due to the ever present Head of his militant Church; to that faithful and enlightened judicatory which could do nothing against the truth, but for it; and its imperfect yet heroic witness, enjoying the privilege of answering for himself. After my first visit to Mr. Balch and his ministerial brethren in the Presby-

teries of Abingdon and Union, I passed two or three times between Tennessee and my native State, and had opportunities of hearing frequently about the particulars of his trial. I was informed by ministers and others in the Middle States, that when the charges against him had been publicly read, and the testimony heard, and his time for defense was announced, he rose with humble boldness, and nobly exerted his powers to distinguish, explain, and prove from the Bible, what he had been contending for as the truth of God; that he was heard with profound attention by that venerable body, and a large crowd of spectators; and that he was much extolled by persons present for his frankness, intrepidity, perspicuity, and earnestness, combined with the submissive deference due to so respectable and numerous an assembly of ecclesiastical judges. In order to show something of the impression made at the time upon men of improved minds and deep thinking, it may suffice to state one anecdote, out of a number. The celebrated Dr. Rush, in the midst of extensive professional engagements, had received such information of the interesting trial of a Tennessee clergyman, that he chose to take time, and hear the defence. At the close of Mr. Balch's speech, the Assembly adjourned for dinner. The Doctor procured at the door an introduction to him; though he had seen him on his soliciting tour, and given him his patronage by his name and donation. He pressed him to go home and dine with him. Mr. Balch made his arrangements with reference to others, and went with the Doctor. 'Sir,' said the latter, 'when a Gospel minister will come six hundred miles to face his prosecutors, and defend the assailed principles of his religious faith with the zeal and intrepidity which I have wit-

nessed to-day, before the highest tribunal on earth to which he could be cited, my heart cannot but beat warmly in his favour, whether his sentiments and mine are identical or not.' On my first return to the North, I had myself already read in Mr. Balch's papers the substantial history of the trial; but did not omit, while in Philadelphia, to call on the Rev. Dr. Milledoler who was at that time the Recording Clerk of the General Assembly, and, by his indulgence, to read in the folio book of Records the full account, in the corrected Minutes, of the whole trial and its result. Every thing was, as the certified extracts I had read before, attested. During my first visit, after spending a few months with Mr. Balch, and preaching and becoming acquainted in the general neighbourhood, I had got thoroughly to feel that he understood what he contended for; as he did not once, in all our conversations, give and take back any Gospel doctrine about which I found the controversy had been maintained. I began now to think seriously whether it might not be my duty to comply with his oft repeated request, and settle down by him as an instructor in the College, and a preacher in the town and vicinity. Having, from my early attachments, some reluctance on this point, and feeling some sense of obligation not to decide rashly, I became the more inquisitive to learn more distinctly, not merely from Mr. Balch, but from all accessible sources of information, what sentiments were supposed to be erroneous in his preaching; what he had been understood to maintain on the topics discussed, and especially, how the several judicatories that had tried him, had finally pronounced upon his religious views. I was now so happy as to find that it was not less his wish, than my determination, that I

would hear every thing his opposers as well as friends might have to say. I was deeply impressed with the idea that my prospect of usefulness in the whole region, if I should settle in East Tennessee, would greatly depend upon my obtaining a correct knowledge of the minds of the people on the subjects so much debated. Hence I carefully sought and improved opportunities of free and friendly conversation with men of every class; with all the brethren in the ministry, old and young,—whether approving or disapproving Mr. Balch's views; also with his adherents and opponents among the people, and with serious observers in other denominations. After this extended and persevering investigation, I became satisfied that he was a vigorous and earnest defender of the leading doctrines of Hopkinsianism; that he had embraced the system intelligently as well as cordially, and that he had most unflinchingly and minutely defended before each judicatory what he had wittingly and confessedly held, and what he informed them he could not without new light renounce. Imprudences, in several instances, of speech and conduct were confessed; also some injudicious selections of words and phraseologies were reported by witnesses, and charged upon him. In these cases he seemed to have been ingenuous, docile and submissive; though he once or twice declared that he did not appear to have been understood. When the Assembly's Committee brought in their report upon his 'creed,' (See the Digest,) in which they pointed out three particulars as errors held by him, according to their understanding of words ascribed to him by witnesses, and after hearing his defence, he said he felt assured, when he heard them read, that he had never held or asserted them as truths. Hence the

thought immediately struck him,—men appear now to be leaving you; if God should leave you, your condition would indeed be dreadful. 'But,' he added, 'the very next thought that took possession of my soul, and nerved me afresh, was—I will at all events stick to God's truth.' That very evening, a clergyman,—not of the Assembly, who had been a close observer of the whole course of the trial,—one who felt, as he perceived many others did, that the Committee had been led, by words reported as Mr. Balch's, to mistake his real sentiments, as he had unfolded them in his principal address to the Assembly, and in his more private communications to his friends, came to him in much excitement—we may hope with more love for the truth as it is in Jesus, than soundness of practical judgment, and thus addressed him—'Sir, I am afraid you will not get fair treatment. My advice to you is to go to-morrow morning, and tell the Assembly that you have been so misunderstood by their Committee that you do not see much prospect of getting justice from them as a judicatory; and that you therefore appeal from their fallible tribunal to the infallible tribunal of the Lord Jesus Christ.' Mr. Balch had courage enough, and if left to himself, might, in his extremity, have had rashness enough, to have welcomed the suggestion. But from his large and righteous heart instantly burst forth the following Christian reply:—'A schism in the Church, Sir, is a dreadful thing. I should not like to be the guilty cause of any such curse. My shoulders are pretty broad—I trust they will spare my conscience. If they will only do that, Sir, I can bear for the truth's sake whatever burden they may think it their duty to put upon me.' Others of better judgment came to advise him, and to pray with him for the favour-

able interposition of Heaven. At length, Mr. Irwin of Neshaminy, who had, with great vigour and boldness, sustained some of his controverted sentiments before the Assembly, called upon him, and put into his hand a small piece of paper, and asked him to consider its contents, and let him know whether he could, with a clear conscience, make the import of that writing his final answer to the Assembly, and rest the issue of his trial upon it. When he had read it, and felt assured that he correctly understood it, he replied that he readily could adopt it, without the smallest reserve; for it stated the truth of facts and nothing else; but that he had been so misapprehended by the Committee in their adopted report, that he was at a loss to know whether it would probably be accepted. His friend answered him—'I know so much of the minds of the members, that I have no doubt it would; and I entreat you to make use of it.' Accordingly, when the Assembly called for his ultimate answer, he gave it nearly in the exact words of the paper handed him. I cannot tell who wrote it. Mr. Balch thought Mr. Irwin wished him to understand that he did not himself. From Dr. Green's personal friendship and conduct during the trial, he immediately said to him,—'It looks to me as coming from Dr. Green.' 'If so, it comes from a most estimable source,' said Mr. Irwin; 'and that is enough for me to say.' The answer was accepted by such a majority as precluded any need of dividing the house to ascertain it. So soon as the Moderator, the Rev. Dr. John B. Smith, had declared, in the name of the Assembly, their vote of acceptance, and by obvious implication, of acquittal, in favour of Mr. Balch, and given him the admonition agreed upon, and a concluding prayer had been thank-

fully offered, Dr. Green arose with a majestic benignity in his commanding eye and face, and kindly said—'Moderator, Mr. Balch is now in as good and regular standing as any member of this Assembly; and I move you, Sir, that he and the minister and elder in Tennessee, now come forward in the presence of this judicatory and shake hands; in token that they will go home with the full purpose to live in Christian love and peace hereafter.' Mr. Balch immediately stood on his feet, and, with his hand upon his generous and forgiving heart, said,—'Moderator, here is my heart; and here are both my hands,'—extending them earnestly. They did shake hands forthwith, to the general satisfaction of that truly Christian and enlightened Body. Thus amicably and providentially ordered was the most important ecclesiastical trial of Mr. Balch, leaving him, at its termination, in the unrestricted enjoyment of that faith which he had abundantly shown to the Church and the world was dearer to him than any thing else he could call his own. Should it not be considered an enduring honour to the widely extended Presbyterian Church, then an undivided whole, that under so persevering a course of prosecutions, carried through twenty-one trials or parts of trials, Presbyterial, Synodical, and of the highest Court, an upright conscience, even in an imprudent man, was thus safe beneath the outspread wings of its constitutional protection?

"Yes, I must acknowledge that he was an imprudent man. His natural honesty and intrepidity were unsurpassed. All the movements of his soul seemed to be open and direct; but, under excitement, they sometimes savoured strongly of impulsiveness and indiscretion. His intrepidity was a bad counsellor in the mo-

ment of provocation and temptation. I could fill sheets with the details of his noble, self-denying and arduous exertions for the good of his fellow men. But I am sorry to add that even I, and certainly his opponents, if surviving, could fill pages in stating his rash steps, his unwise measures, and indiscreet words, where consummate prudence was demanded. His maxim, in all debates and controversies, was,—'I have no contention with any but about holiness.' When he discovered his error in any thing, he was most ingenious and thorough in repentance, confession, and making amends. As he did not always meet a similar return, he was sometimes thrown off his guard. From much knowledge of his life and conduct, I was obliged to conclude that when the fear of God was suspended in its rule over his lofty and intrepid soul, he feared nothing in the universe; and that of course Satan was at his elbow to take some advantage of him.

"An impressive illustration of the influence of Mr. Balch's piety upon his principal prosecutor may here be stated. When they were about starting to a trial before the Synod of the Carolinas, he proposed to the elder, his neighbour, who was going there to prosecute him, that, for safety and convenience on their long journey, they should travel together. They did so. But rains had raised a particular stream so high that they saw it could not be forded without the swimming of their horses. Mr. Balch then said to his fellow traveller,—'Sir, you and I have families at home, to whom our deaths would be afflictive; we are in the hands of Divine Providence—don't you think we should do well to kneel down here on the bank of this deep and rapid stream, and pray God to help us over in

safety?' 'By all means, Sir,' answered the elder—'please, Mr. Balch, offer a prayer.' He did so. They passed over safely, and travelled on quietly together. This is the elder who shook hands with him before the Assembly; and once did so before the Synod. Soon after I came into the State, when Mr. Balch urged him, for his own satisfaction, to converse with me freely and fully on the disputed sentiments, which had cost him so much in their defence, he replied, and I doubt not candidly,—'Mr. Balch, it is not necessary; now I understand you better than I did. I have no serious objection to what you hold.' And he was not the only opposing elder who gave Mr. Balch substantially the same testimony.

"I must say a word of the important service which Dr. Balch rendered to the cause of liberal education. By his exertions for Greenville College, interrupted, as we have seen, in a most unexampled manner, he provided a commodious two storied College-Hall, a considerable library, a well selected, though small, philosophical apparatus, daily instruction, the best text-books and improvements in teaching within his power to secure. He gave an important impulse to exertions in the same great cause throughout the whole South-western region, where there was before hardly a beginning. Greenville College had at one time students from nine different States and Territories; and a more than usual proportion of them rose to honourable eminence in the different walks of life.

"To all persons who had any familiar and intimate acquaintance with Dr. Balch during his last years, the sunshine of his Heavenly Father's countenance seemed to irradiate his noble soul in a manner altogether un-

common. His numerous citations and trials were disastrous to his temporal interests. Pains of body and anxieties of mind, with irreparable injuries to his constitution, from his many journeys and exposures, were not their only consequences. The many imperious calls to attend trials, mostly at a distance from the whole circle of his home duties, as husband, father, master, pastor, and president, during the most exposed years of his younger children, the arrest given to instruction in the College, when most needed, the failing health of his wife and the increased expenses of his family, caused him to endure trials which touched the sympathies of his worthy opposers, and appeared to all exceedingly rare. Like his several brethren here in the ministry, he then had slaves in his family; who, from the kindness of his treatment, dearly loved him. He wished to do his duty to them. But the greater number were taken from him for family debts. The rest he liberated. One went to Liberia, and became useful there. Under all his afflictions, he so encouraged himself in his God, that, submissive and cheerful, he stood erect and unshaken, with an unbroken fortitude that struck all beholders. Once, late at night, when all were in bed, his large and well filled barn was struck with lightning. A large crop of hay and a valuable horse were consumed with the building. Some of his opposers observed him bathed in tears, and supposed that a troubled conscience was the cause—thinking that he interpreted the lightning's stroke, as they did, to be a token of God's anger against him for his errors and missteps. I was then absent in the counties below. Soon after my return, I heard of the above surmise. Some of the family had given me an account

of the fire, and said they wished I could have witnessed the scene of their family worship the next morning, when Mr. Balch, having read a select portion of Scripture, and sung a few stanzas from Watts, with melting emotions, instead of kneeling, as was common, prostrated himself at his whole length on the floor; and offered what they considered the most admirable and affecting prayer to which they had ever listened. In our conversations before my absence, he had so condescendingly let me into his inmost soul, that I had a strong desire to hear what account he would himself give of his tears and emotions while his barn was burning. Taking opportunity one day when we were alone, I intimated my wish. 'Sir,' said he, with his emotions kindling afresh, 'I was so filled with a sense of God's love, while, in his adorable sovereignty, he was burning down my barn and destroying my property, that I felt it, and still look back upon it, as one of the most favoured scenes of my life.' It then seemed to me useless to ask why he prostrated himself in a family prayer the next morning. Considering the originality of his character, and the strength of his devotional feelings, I concluded, without the shadow of a doubt, that to exalt his God, and abase himself in the dust at his footstool, as unworthy of the love with which he had condescended to refresh him, was the joyful effort of his happy heart. Some years after that, I saw him in distress incomparably more extreme. The wife of his youth lay a corpse in his house. I found him silently and calmly pouring out a copious flood of tears. 'Sir,' said he, when he spoke,—'I have been in many a trying condition, where nothing but absolute submission to the will of

God could reach my necessity; and I am now in one of the most trying in my whole life. But blessed be God, absolute, unconditional submission to his will is plaster sufficient for every sore.'

"Dr. Balch's retirement from his duties in the College was chiefly to the bed of languishment and death. But from that bed, on the lower floor of his log-house, shone forth all but the radiance of Heaven itself. When I first mentioned to him his approaching death, and his entrance into the world of retribution,—'Sir,' said he, 'with such a Redeemer as the Lord Jesus Christ for my dependence, I scorn to be afraid to die.' Not many days afterwards, he resumed his soul-rejoicing theme:—'Sir,' said he,—'if it were not for the infinite atonement of the Lord Jesus Christ, as the dependence of my soul before God, I would not go into eternity for ten thousand worlds. Without this, if I had strength, I would be running through the woods, and tearing the trees for very agony; but with this for my reliance, here I am, Sir, calmly waiting the Mighty Master's call.' In another interview, he said to me, looking up with tears towards Heaven,—'Sir, I cordially submit to the righteous sentence of God's eternal law; the precepts of which I have no apology for breaking. At the same time, I trust I have a little—oh! how little, of that holy disinterested love which makes the life of a justifying faith in Christ; that love, Sir, that will bear the examination and meet the approving smile of the great Judge of quick and dead.' Even in his last will and testament, he gave his soul to his God to be made for Christ's sake, in boundless grace, an eternal vessel of mercy in Heaven, or, in righteous judgment for his sins, a vessel of ever-

lasting wrath in hell; just as seemed good in his sight. I said, 'Mr. Balch, will all who may read your will, understand your unshaken hope of salvation through Christ?' 'Sir,' said he, 'I cannot allow myself to make conditions with God; to Him I cordially submit, without any reserve, for time and for eternity. Let the words stand, Sir; they show the only way in which I mean to die. Those who have heard me insist on unreserved submission, as always involved in saving faith, may learn the importance of it in their own case, when they find how I choose to die.' So, therefore, the words now stand in the Register's office in Greenville.

"Such is, I believe, a faithful, though certainly a very inadequate, miniature of that truly venerable man of God, Hezekiah Balch, D. D. I shall be glad if it answers in any degree the purpose for which you requested it.

"That the Spirit of truth, grace, and holiness may preside over your important studies, and bless your diversified labours, is the fervent prayer, I doubt not of many, besides,

"Dear Sir, your unworthy brother in Christ,

"CHARLES COFFIN."

The Reverend Hezekiah Balch married (see *ante*, page 375) first Hannah Lewis, and second Ann Lucky. He and his first wife had six children, four sons and two daughters. One of the sons:

5. John Tennant Balch, served several terms in the Legislature of Tennessee. Among the latter's children:

6. John Tennant Balch, named after his father, was ordained a Presbyterian clergyman. He was born at Greenville, Tennessee, December 12th, 1809, and died at Meriden, Louisiana, December 12th, 1861. He graduated at Georgetown College, Kentucky, in 1833, and studied the next year at the Princeton Theological Seminary. In 1835 he was elected an Adopted Graduate Member of Whig Hall, at Princeton.[239]

---

[239] *Catalogue of the American Whig Society instituted in the College of New Jersey, 1769.* Published by Order of the Society, 1893, page 72.

In Jackson County, Arkansas, there is a post-office named Balch. It probably owes its name to some descendant of the Rev. Hezekiah Balch.

INDEX.

Alabama Arbitration, The.....286–297, 319–328
Armada, Spanish.....23, 48
Assemblies, The Georgetown..... 206
Assemblies, The Philadelphia.....237–238, 332

Balch Arms.....Frontispiece, 11, 12, 24
Balch Motto; *Cœur et courage font l'ouvrage*...Title page, 12
Balch, Name of 1–4, 8
Balch Family of County Somerset, England.....1–85
Bridgwater Group..... 61
Higham-Horton-Ilminster Group..... 13
North Curry Group..... 46
Wells-Bruton Group..... 83
Balch, Charles, de Stoke Gumber, 1642..... 10
Balch, Edward, of Chyu, 1225..... 8
Balch, George, of Bridgwater,——1678.....11, 62, 75
Balche, George, 1528.....40, 41, 43
Balch, Hatton, of Ling, 1621..... 10
Balche, John, 1528.....40, 41, 43
Balch, John, 1579..... 6, 61
Balche, John, 1604..... 26
Balch, Johanne, of Stapelton, 1327..... 9
Balch, Robert, of Bridgwater, 1631.....11, 62
Balch, Robert, of Hazelbury, 1492..... 9
Balch, Robert, of Wryngton, 1327..... 9
Balch, Roger le..... 5
Balch, Thomas, 1366–7..... 6
Balch, Thomas, of North Curry, 1562.....10, 46
Balch, Thomas, of Wells, 1695.....10, 83
Balch, Captain William, 1560..... 44
Balche, William, of Higham, ——1533.....10, 13, 40
Balche, William, of Higham, 1599 .....43, 44

Balch, Willielmo, of Purye, 1327.....9, 61
Balch, Willielmo, of Thrubbewell, 1327..... 9
Balch, Richard, 1495..... 6
Balisch, Richard, 1259.....8, 46
Balchen, Admiral Sir John..... 6–8
Balch Family of America.....87, *et seq.*
John Balch "of Massachusetts," 1623.....87, 88–93
Balch, F. H..... 92
Balch, Francis Vergnies..... 93
Balch, Galusha B..... 89
Balch, Rev. William.....89, 90
Balch, Rev. Thomas 91, 92
John Balch "of Maryland," 1658 .....87, 94, *et seq.*
Balch, Alexandrine Macomb.....343–344
Balch, Judge Alfred.....206–211
Balch, Captain Charles Carter..... 372
Balch, Edwin Swift.....333–341
Balch, Elise Willing 332, 333
Balch, Elizabeth.....228–229
Balch, Admiral George Beall.....345–360
Balch, Harriet.....205–206
Balch, Hezekiah.....102–103
Balch, Rev. Hezekiah.....375–402
Balch, Rev. Hezekiah James.....104, 105–117
Balch, James, 1714–1779.....103–104
Balch, Rev. James.....104, 110, 111, 373–374
Balch, John.....103, 374, 375
Balch, John Tennant..... 402
Balch, Rev. John Tennant..... 403
Balch, Dr. Lewis.....219–228, 232
Balch, Judge L. P. W.....211–219, 300
Balch, Rev. L. P. W.....219–228
Balch, Robert..... 97
Balch, Lieut.-Colonel Robert Monroe..... 372
Balch, Rev. Stephen Bloomer.....104, 118–*passim*–205, 333
Balch, Captain Thomas, 1685.....97–102
Balch, Thomas, 1821–1877.....232–332
Balch, Rev. Thomas Bloomer.....362–372
Balch, Virginia..... 234

Banks, General N. P..... 286
Beall, Colonel George, 1695–1780.....187, 203
Beall, Colonel George, 1729–1807..... 203
Beall, Colonel Ninian.....94, 203, 342
Bentham, Jeremy.....286, 327
Berryer, Pierre Antoine..... 277
Benson, Rev. Louis F..... iv
Bridge of the Gods, The..... 92
Broglie, Prince Claude Victor de.....328–329, 333
Brooke Family of Hampshire and Maryland.....203–205
Brooke, Robert.....203, 342
Brooke, Colonel Thomas, of Brookfield, Maryland..... 203
Brooke, Major Thomas, 1632–1678..... 203

Cambreling, Stephen..... 235
Carter Family of Shirley, Virginia..... 371
Chevalier, Michel.....277, 330
Cliosophic Society of Princeton University..... 105
Clymer, George..... 341
Cobden, Richard..... 287
Coleridge, Sir John..... 270
Collis, General.....281, 282, 283
Columbia College..... 235
Copernicus..... 330
Corcoran, William W..... 186
Crucé, Éméric.....327, 343
Cummins, Bishop George D.....343, 344
Curtis, George William..... 267

Dahlgren, Admiral.....355, 356, 357
Dayton, William L.....280, 285
Dévouassoud, François..... 342
Dewey, Mrs. B. L..... 107
Duffield, Professor John T..... 334
Du Pont, Admiral.....352, 353, 354

East Antarctica.....337–339
England, Church of.....17, 31, 62, 88, 95, 96
Egypt, Trip to.....298–310

Fish, Secretary 297
Foster, Sir Thomas, Judge Common Pleas 203
Franklin Institute 257, 340
Frelinghuysen, Theodore 217

Gallatin, Albert 178, 190
Garfield, President 358
Graham, Dr. George W 113
Grant, President 297
Greeley, Horace 288, 320, 325
Gresham, Sir Thomas 330
Grotius, Hugo 286, 327
Guizot, Pierre Guillaume 276, 277

Harvard University 89, 91, 93, 335, 341
Hewitt, Abram S 235
Hood, Sir Alexander Acland 74
Huntington, W. H 288, 322

Ilminster Free Grammar School 17, 18, 24, 25, 36, 40, 41
Introduction ..... i–iv
International Courts of Arbitration 319, 322

Japan Expedition 346–350
Jay Family of La Rochelle 228
Jay, John 228
Jefferson, Thomas 177, 178, 189
Johnson, Reverdy 213
Jordan, John W iv

Kant, Emmanuel 286, 327
Keith, Charles P ..... iv, 333
Kern, Dr 280, 291

Laboulaye, Edouard 279
Leach, Miss M. A iv
Lee, General Robert E 371
Leibniz 286, 327
Les Français en Amérique, 1777–1783 318

Lesseps, Ferdinand de.....305, 306, 309
Letter proposing arbitration between America and England.....288–291
L'Hérillier, General.....279, 314
Loomis, J. T..... 124
Liberia.....181, 212, 221
Lincoln, Abraham.....286, 287, 320
Lorimer, James.....291, 292, 294

Macauley, Admiral Edward Y..... 359
Macfarlane, Eugenie H..... 341
Macomb, General Alexander..... 206
Maid of Athens, Byron's..... 346
Makemie, Rev. Francis.....96, 182
Mariette, Monsieur..... 308
McCosh, President James.....333, 334
Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence..106, 107, 112–118
Moreau, Henry.....279, 280, 320, 321
Murphy, Consul W. W..... 341

Nadelhorn, second ascent of the..... 335
Napoleon the Third..... 280
Nordenskjold, Dr. Otto.....337, 338

Oresme, Bishop Nicole..... 330
Oxford University.....6, 16, 49, 59, 60, 61, 203

Parker, George, Mayor of Bridgwater.....99, 102
Perry, Commodore.....346, 347, 350
Philadelphia Club.....332, 340, 342
Philadelphia Cricket Club, 1854.....256, 257
Philosophical Society, American.....340, 341, 342
Pichon, Louis André, French Chargé d'Affaires..... 178
Piz Bevers, first ascent and christening of the..... 335
Portienhorn, third ascent of the..... 335
Presbyterianism 95–*passim*–328,362,365–371,375–*passim*–403
Prévost–Paradol, Lucien Anatole.....277, 278, 279, 294
Princeton University....105, 119, 124, 175, 187, 206, 207, 211
217, 219, 333, 334, 340, 362, 365, 375, 403

Rawle, William Henry..... 385
Rittenhouse Club..... 328
Rochambeau, Count..... 318
Rodeffer, J. D..... 328
Russia and the United States.....178–181

Saint Audries.....12, 64, 73, 74, 88, 100
Saint-Pierre, Castel de.....286, 327
Scotland, Church of..... 96
Seton-Karr, H. W..... 335
Seventy-Six Society 256–257
Shippen Family of Philadelphia.....266, 332
"*Shippen Papers*," The..... 266
Sims, Dr. 312, 313
Soenens, Juge Albert..... 3
Sprague, Dr. William B..... 376
Spechtenhauser, Joseph..... 336
Stanley, Henry M..... 302
Sully, Duc de.....286, 327
Swift, Emily..... 331
Swift Family of Philadelphia.....331–332

Taney, Roger Brooke.....211, 218, 265
Trolltinder, first ascent of the..... 335
Two Sermons on the Certain and Final Perseverance of the Saints.....125–175

Van Buren, Martin..... 207
Vice-Roy of Egypt.....303, 309

Washington, George.....177, 178
Welsh, Herbert.....323, 324
West Antarctica.....337–339
Whig Society, American..119, 207, 211, 219, 340, 342, 362, 403
Willing Family of Philadelphia.....331, 332, 341
Winslow, Dinner to Captain..... 285
Witt, Cornélis de..... 277

Yeaman, George H.....294, 297